



Foreword

Thank you for choosing Hongqi HS7!

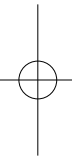
All FAW vehicle models have passed China Compulsion Certification (CCC Certification) and Gulf Cooperation Council Certification (GCC Certification).

Hongqi HS7 sedan carries multiple luxury equipment and advanced technology. To take full advantage of these equipment and technology, FAW recommends you read this manual thoroughly to know Hongqi HS7 sedan quickly and comprehensively.

In addition to introducing the use of the vehicle, this manual explains the driving safety, vehicle maintenance and emergency countermeasures in detail to help you drive this vehicle safely and comfortably, and meanwhile maintain the value of the vehicle to the maximum degree.

The documents provided with the vehicle include this Owner's Manual, Maintenance Manual, which contain the important maintenance information for HS7 Sedan. FAW suggests you keep the documents provided inside the vehicle for reference at any time.

This manual is compiled in accordance with the product situations at the time of printing. It will be modified into a second edition for the subsequent products. FAW will reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice. Thank you for your understanding.



First Automobile Works (FAW)

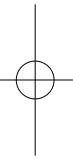


Table of Contents

Pictorial Index	Search by illustration
1 Safety Instructions	One must read through the safety instructions.
2 Instrument Cluster	How to read instruments, various alarm lights and indicators, etc.
3 Operating the Components	The opening/closing of windows and doors, adjustments before driving, etc.
4 Driving	Required operations and advice while driving
5 Audio System	Audio system operation
6 Interior Equipment	Usage of interior equipment, etc.
7 Maintenance	Steps of vehicle maintenance
8 When Failure Arises	Measures for failures or emergencies
9 Vehicle Specifications	Vehicle specifications and customizable functions
10 Additional information	Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China
Other Information	List the abbreviations and other information contained in this manual

1 Safety Instructions

1-1. Safety Instructions

- Safe driving 24
- Seat belts 25
- Airbag 31
- Child safety information 42
- Children restraint device 43
- Install the child restraint device
..... 47
- Cautions on exhaust gas 50

1-2. Immobilizer System

- Engine immobilizer system 51
- Vehicle body immobilizer system
..... 52

2 Instrument Cluster

2. Instrument Cluster

- Combination instrument 52
- Warning lamp 54
- Indicator lamp 56
- Combination instrument
multifunction display 59

3 Operating the Components

3-1. Information on the Key

- Key 70

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

- Doors 73
- Trunk lid 77
- Passive entry & start system*
..... 81

3-3. Adjusting the Seats

- Front seats 82
- Second-row seat 88
- Head restraints 92
- Seat memory 93

3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors

- Steering wheel 94
- Anti-glare inner rear view mirror
..... 96
- Exterior mirrors 97

3-5. Opening and Closing the Windows

- Power windows 100
- Panorama sunroof 102

4 Driving

4-1. Before Driving

- Driving a vehicle 106
- Goods and luggage 112
- Trailer towing 113

4-2. Driving Specifications

- Engine (start) switch 114
- Transmission 117
- Driving mode 122

Air suspension*	126
Turn signal lamp control handle	130
Electronic parking brake (EPB) system.....	131
AUTO HOLD*	132
4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers	
Headlamp switch.....	134
Intelligent high beam control (IHC) system*	136
Fog lamp switch	138
Front windshield wipers and washer	139
Rear windshield wiper and washer	142
4-4. Filling the Fuel	
Opening the fuel tank lid	143
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems	
Constant speed cruise control*	146
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) function*	149
Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC) function *	155
Front and rear parking radar*	162
Rear view camera system*	166
Panoramic image system*	171
Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS)	176
LDW/LKA Lane keeping assist system*	177
Driver Status Monitoring (DSM)	180

Forward collision warning (FCW) system*	181
Autonomous emergency brake (AEB) system*	183
Blind Spot Detection (BSD)*	186
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*	189
Auto Parking Assist (APA) *	191
Car recorder.....	198
Idling start/stop system*	200
Driver assistance system.....	204

4-6. Driving Information

Key points for driving in winter	207
--	-----

5 Audio System

5-1. Basic Operations

Multimedia display	210
Multimedia switch on the steering wheel.....	217
USB port	218

5-2. Settings *

System settings.....	220
Vehicle settings.....	225

5-3. Navigation *

Basic functions.....	233
Using the navigation	235

5-4. Radio

Using the radio.....	240
----------------------	-----

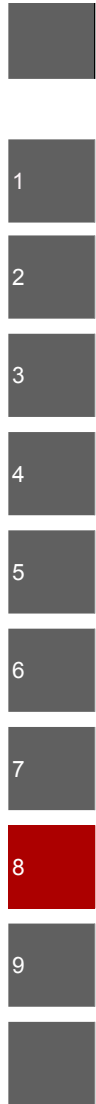


Table of Contents

Index

5-5. Music
 Music play 243

5-6. Video
 Video play 247

5-7. Images
 Image viewing 250

5-8. Hands-free System
 Using the hands-free system
 253

5-9. Bluetooth Telephone
 Using the Bluetooth®
 Tel. 256

5-10. Voice Recognition *
 Using the voice recognition
 function 260

5-11. Browser *
 Via browser 262

5-12. Mobile phone APP*
 Using the mobile phone APP*
 263

5-13. Hongqi Smart Connect*
 Using Hongqi Smart Connect
 266

6	Interior Equipment
---	--------------------

6-1. Using the A/C System
 Fully automatic A/C system
 276
 Fully automatic A/C system -
 Front seat control system..... 277

Fully automatic A/C system -
 Rear seat control system 287
 Rear windshield heating..... 289

6-2. Using the Interior Lamps
 List of interior lamps..... 290

6-3. Using the Storage Units
 List of storage units..... 293

6-4. Other Interior Equipment
 On-board wireless charging 298
 Sun visor 299
 File holder 300
 Vanity mirror..... 301
 Cigarette lighter..... 295
 12V power socket 296
 220V power socket 297
 Rear central armrest 304
 Seat temperature control 306
 Roof grab handle 307
 Coat hook..... 308

7	Maintenance
---	-------------

7-1. Maintenance and Servicing
 Cleaning and protecting vehicle
 exterior trim 310
 Cleaning and protecting vehicle
 interior trim 312

7-2. Maintenance
 Maintenance instructions 314

7-3. Do-it-Yourself Maintenance

Precautions for do-it-yourself maintenance 316
Engine compartment cover 318
Engine compartment..... 319
Battery..... 327
Tire 330
Tire pressure..... 332
Wheel..... 334
A/C filter 335
Battery for the smart key..... 337
Checking and replacing the fuse 339

8 When Failure Arises

8-1. Essential Information

Hazard warning lamps 344
SOS warning 345

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

If the vehicle needs to be towed 346
If any abnormality is found on the vehicle..... 350
If a warning lamp turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 351
In the case of a flat tire..... 357
If the engine cannot be started 365
If the key is lost 366
If the remote key can not function normally 367
If the battery is low 369
If the vehicle is overheating 372
In case of the vehicle stuck..... 374
If you drive on water-covered roads 375

In case of a punctured tire 376
In case of an accident..... 377
Trunk lid emergency open 378

9 Vehicle Specifications

9-1. Specifications

Maintenance data 380
Fuel information 392

10 Additional information

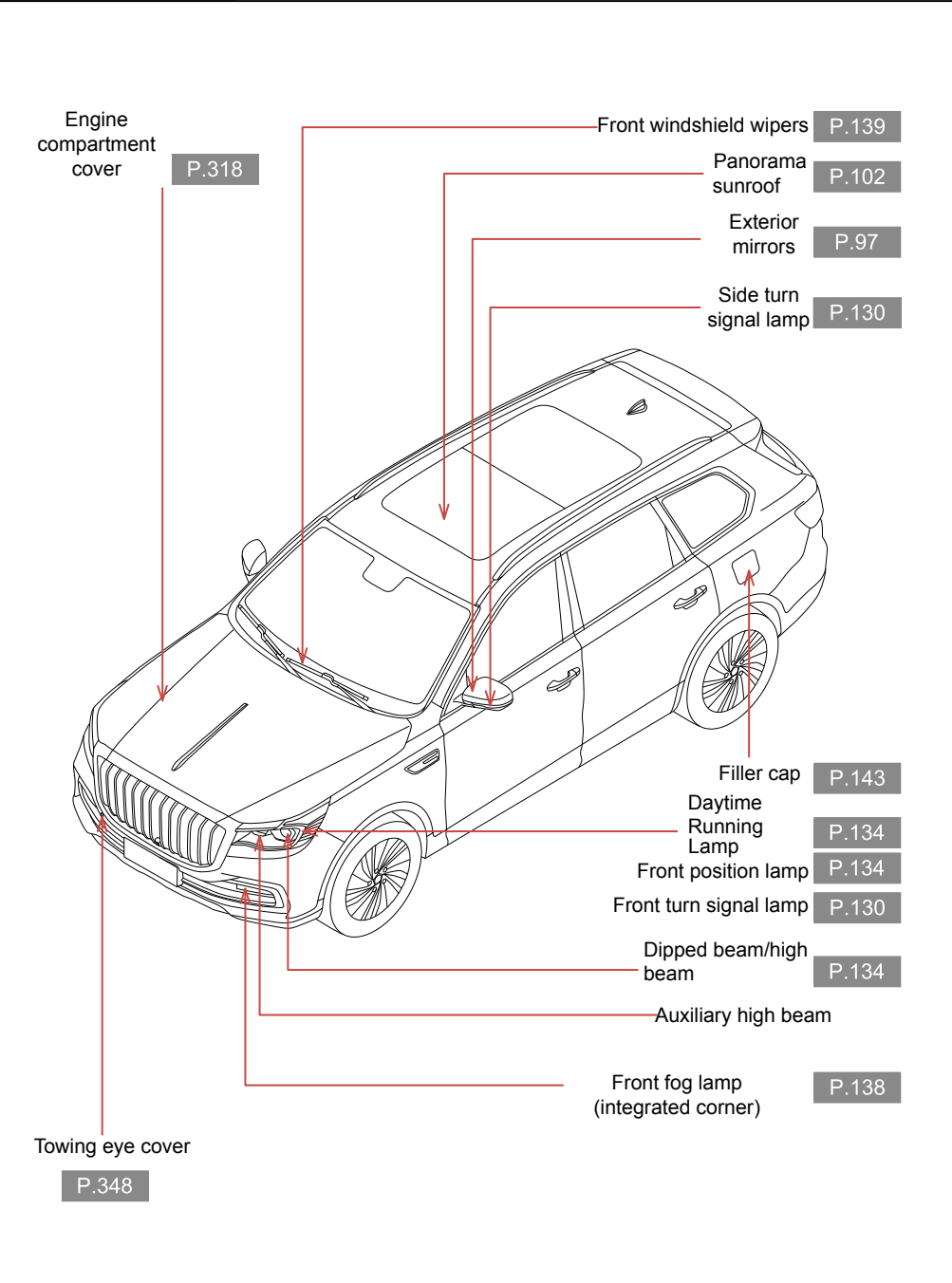
Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China..... 394

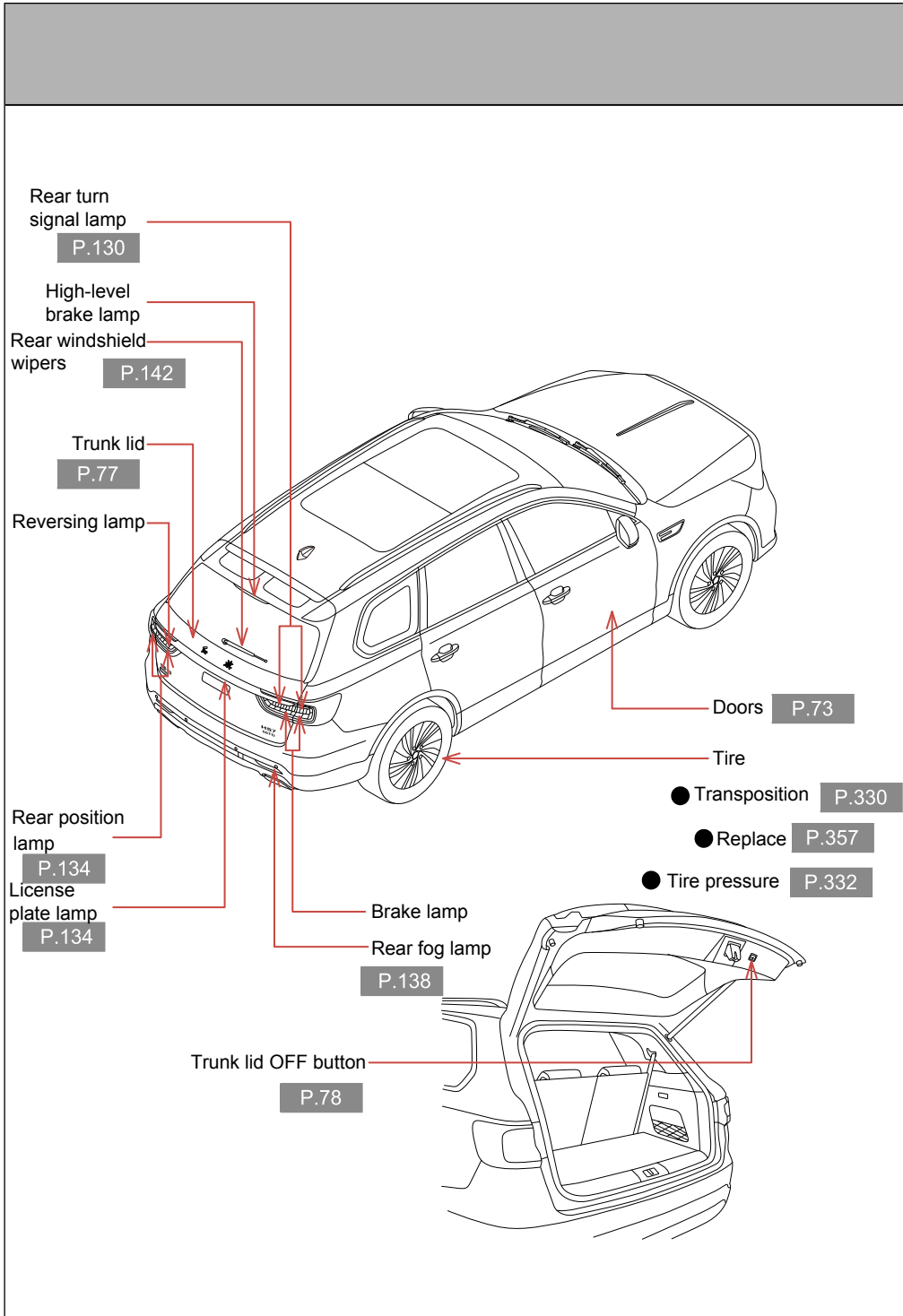
Other Information

List of Abbreviations..... 396



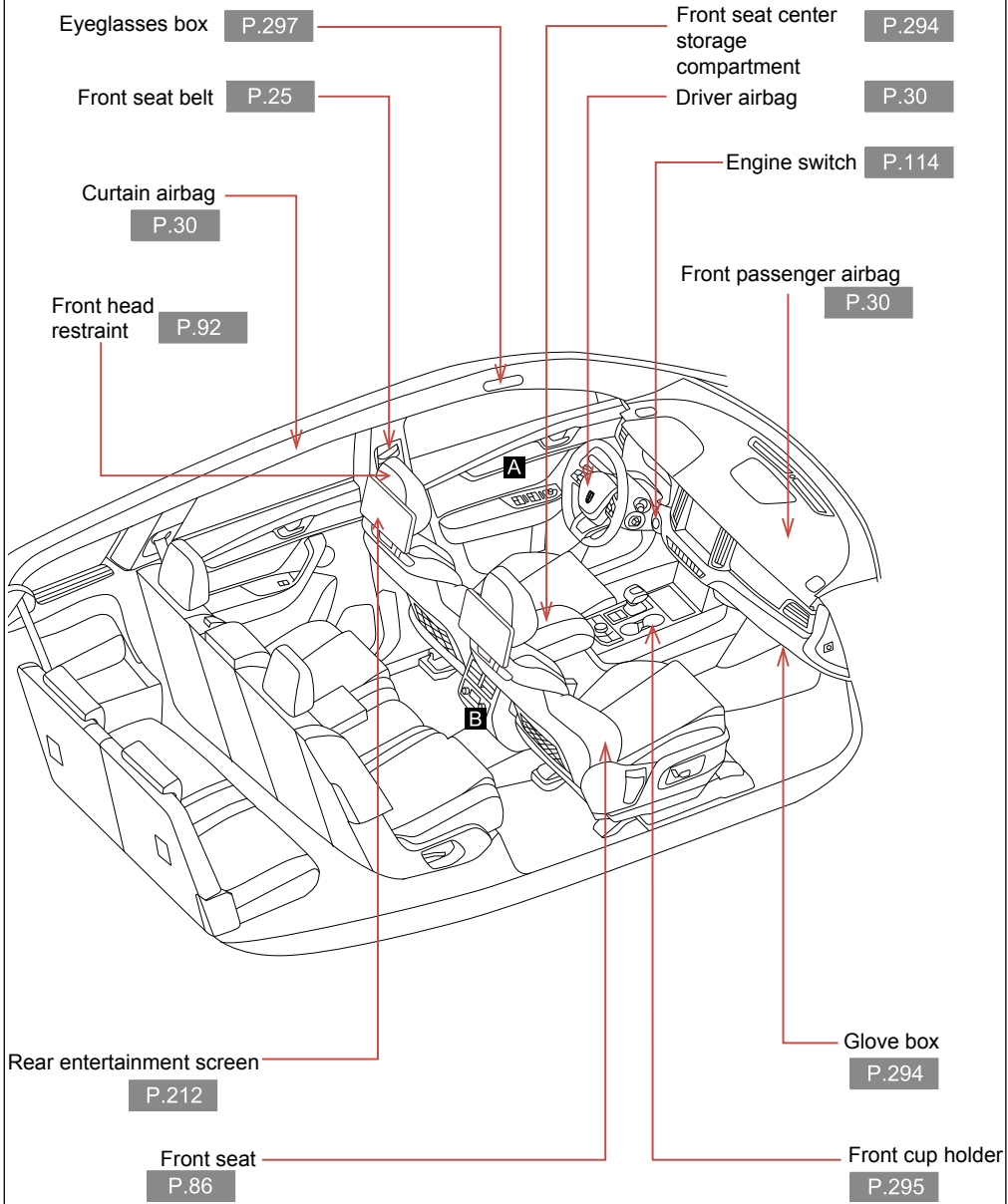
Pictorial Index Exterior

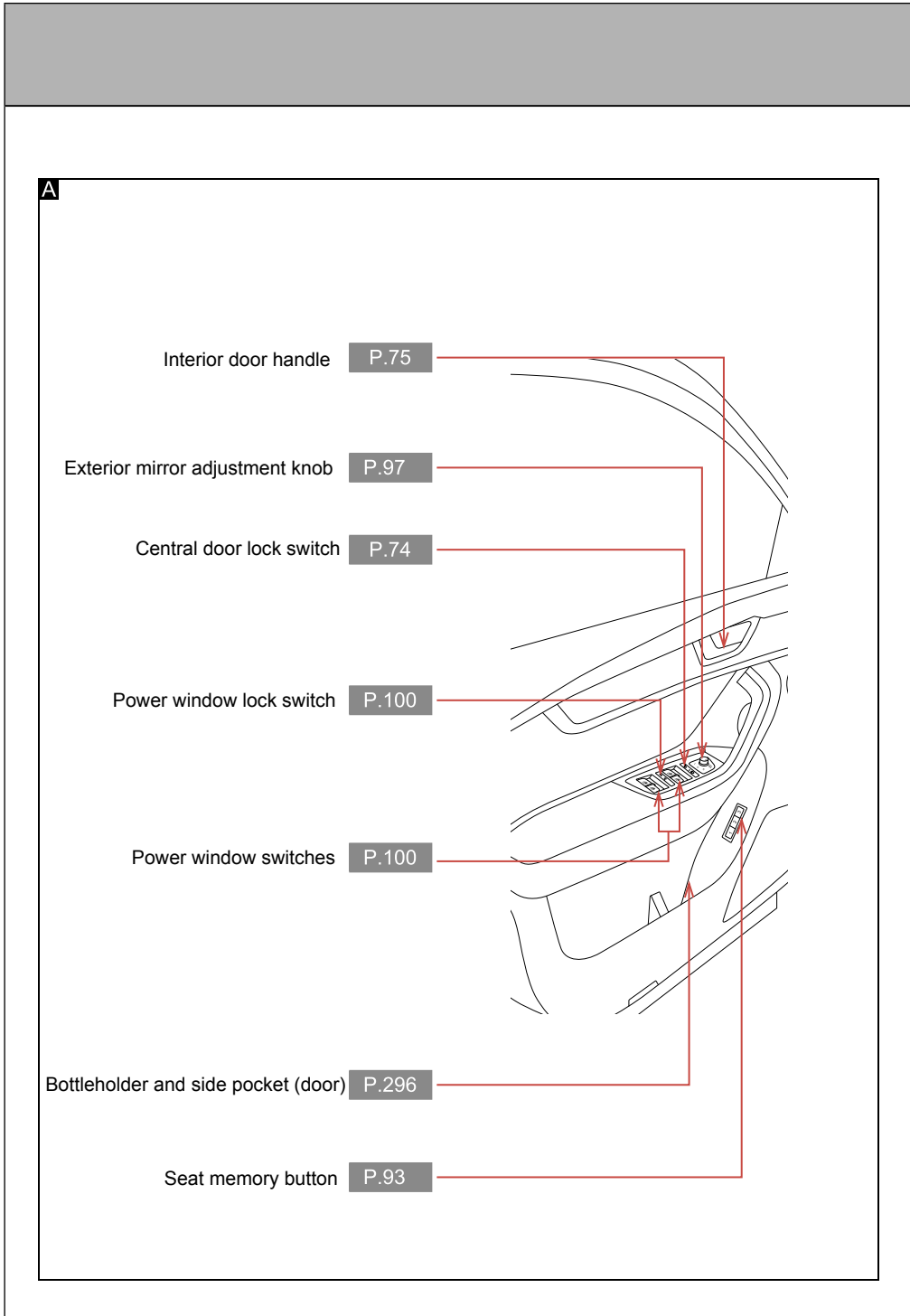




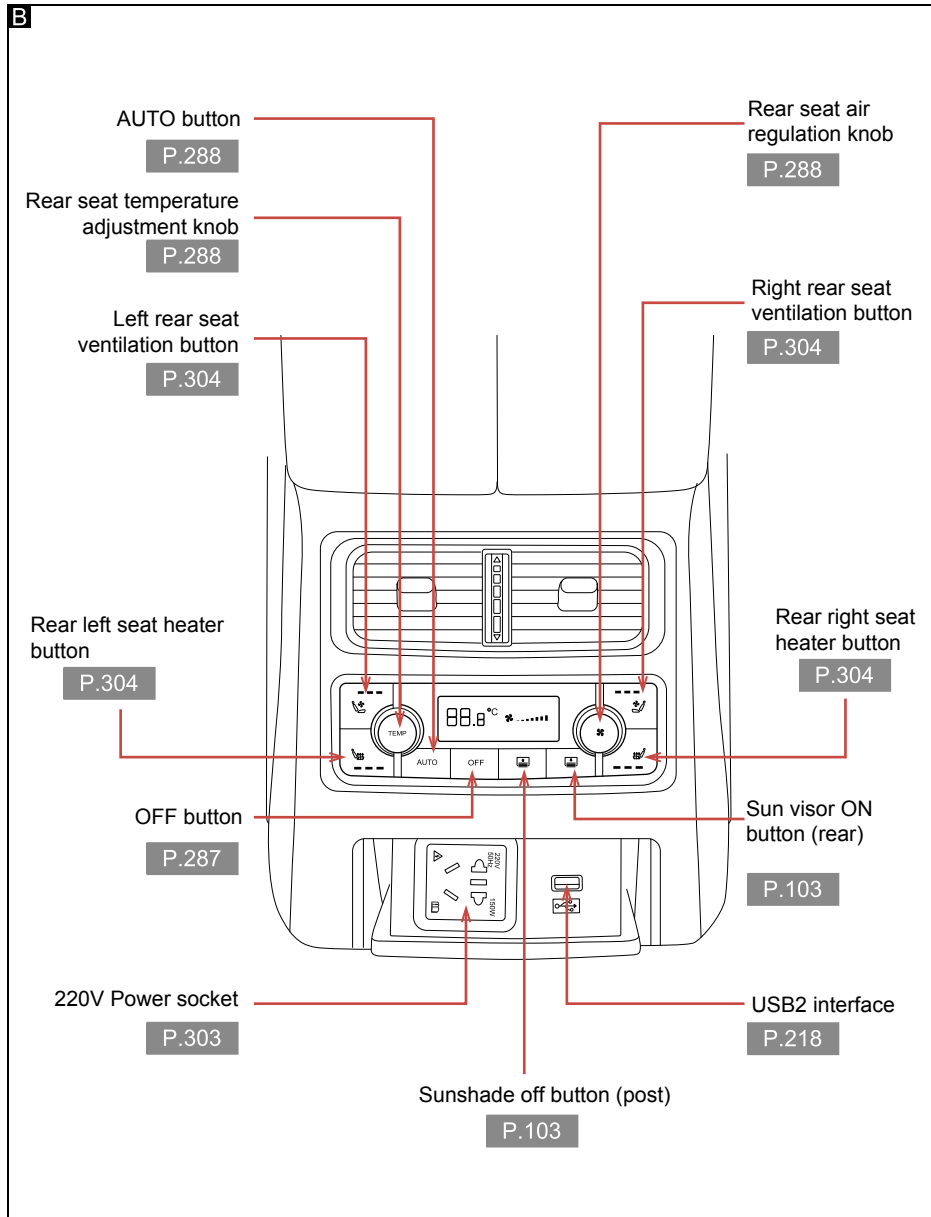
Pictorial Index

Interior

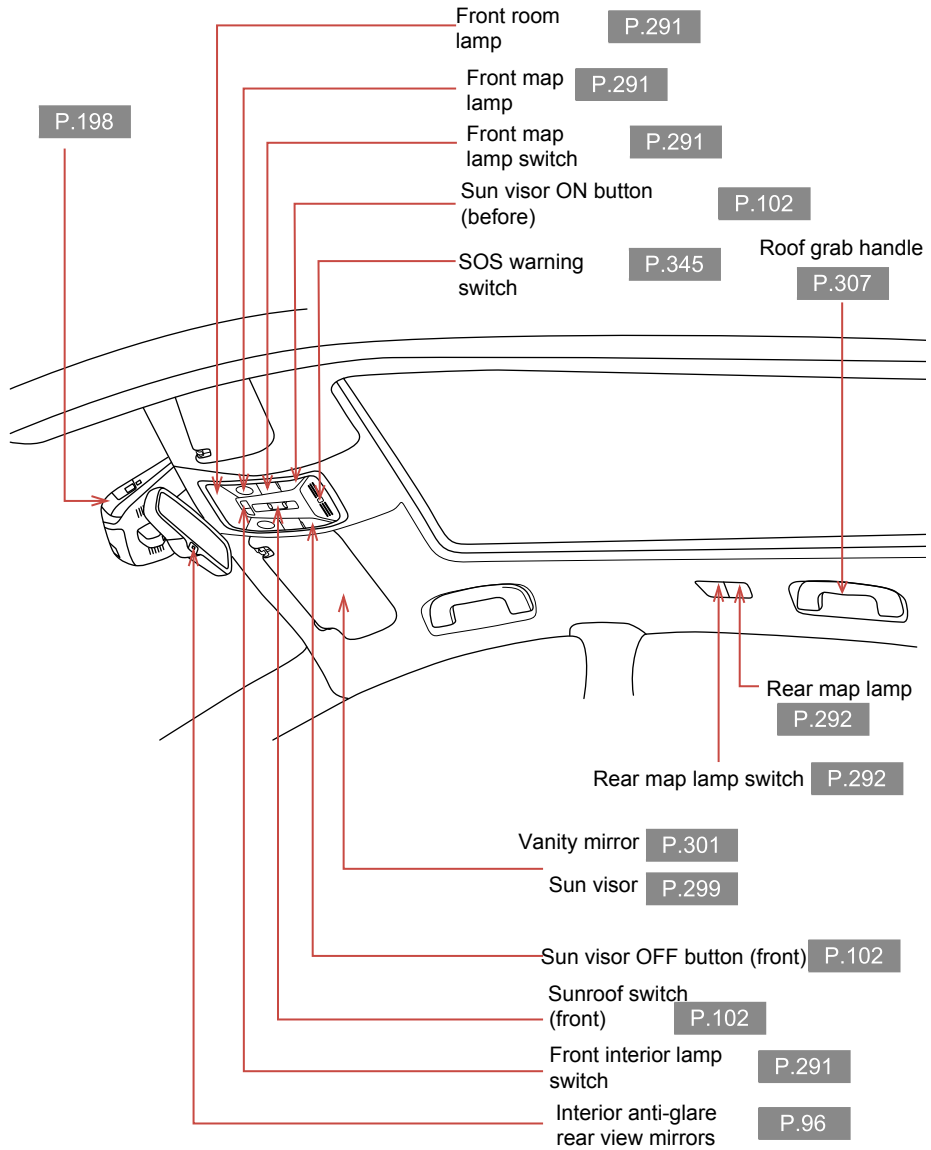




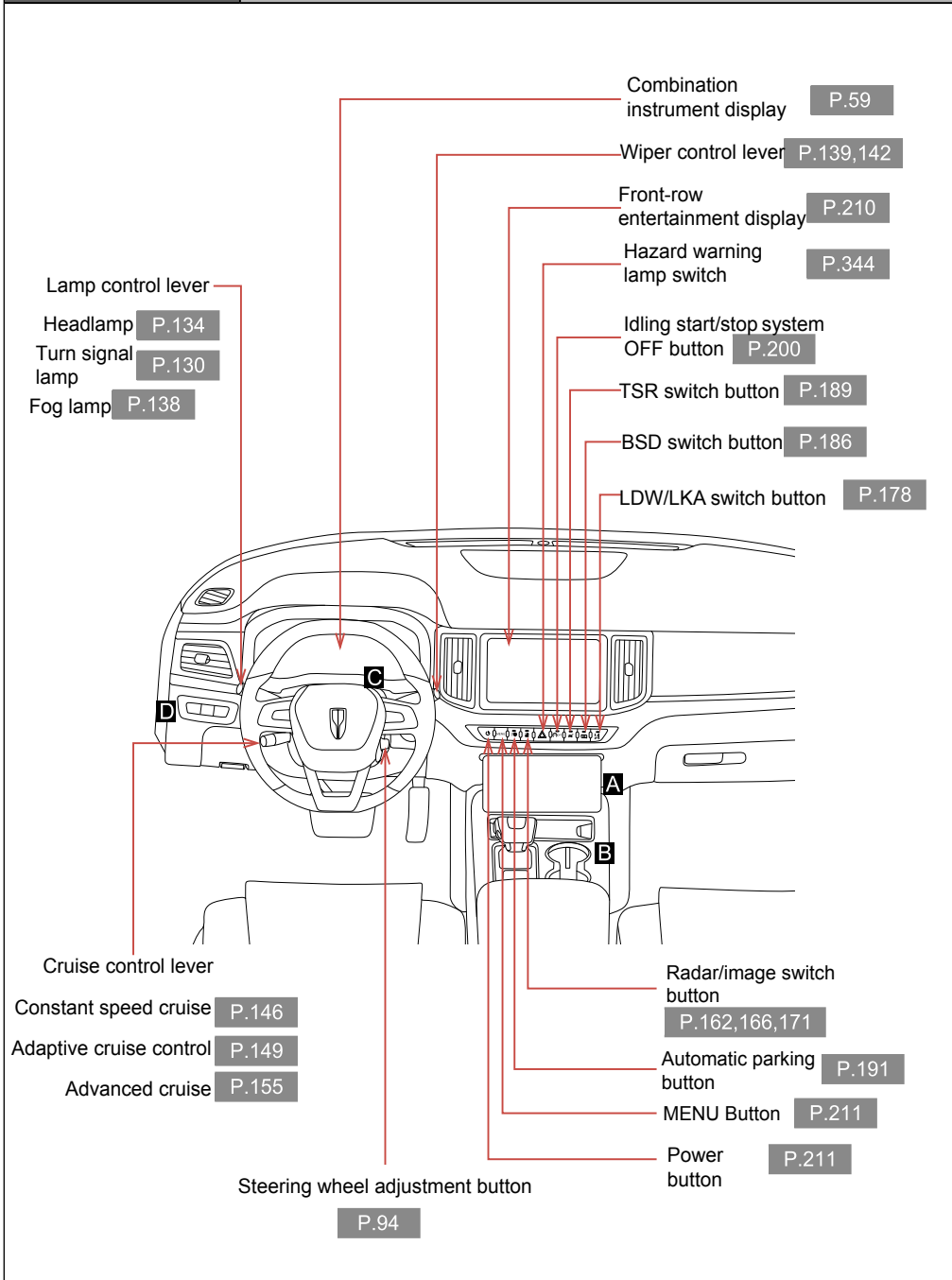
Pictorial Index Interior

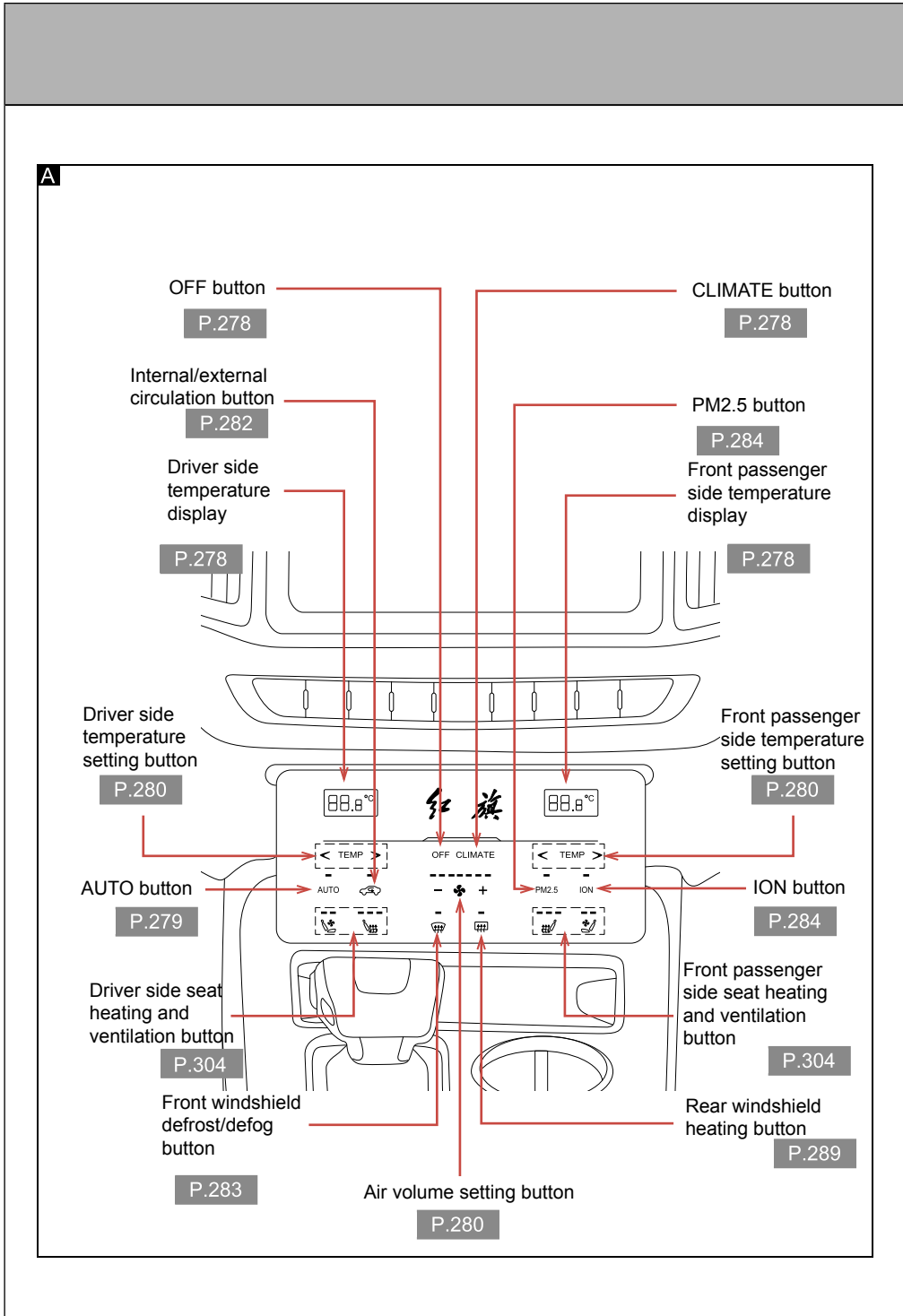


Pictorial Index Interior

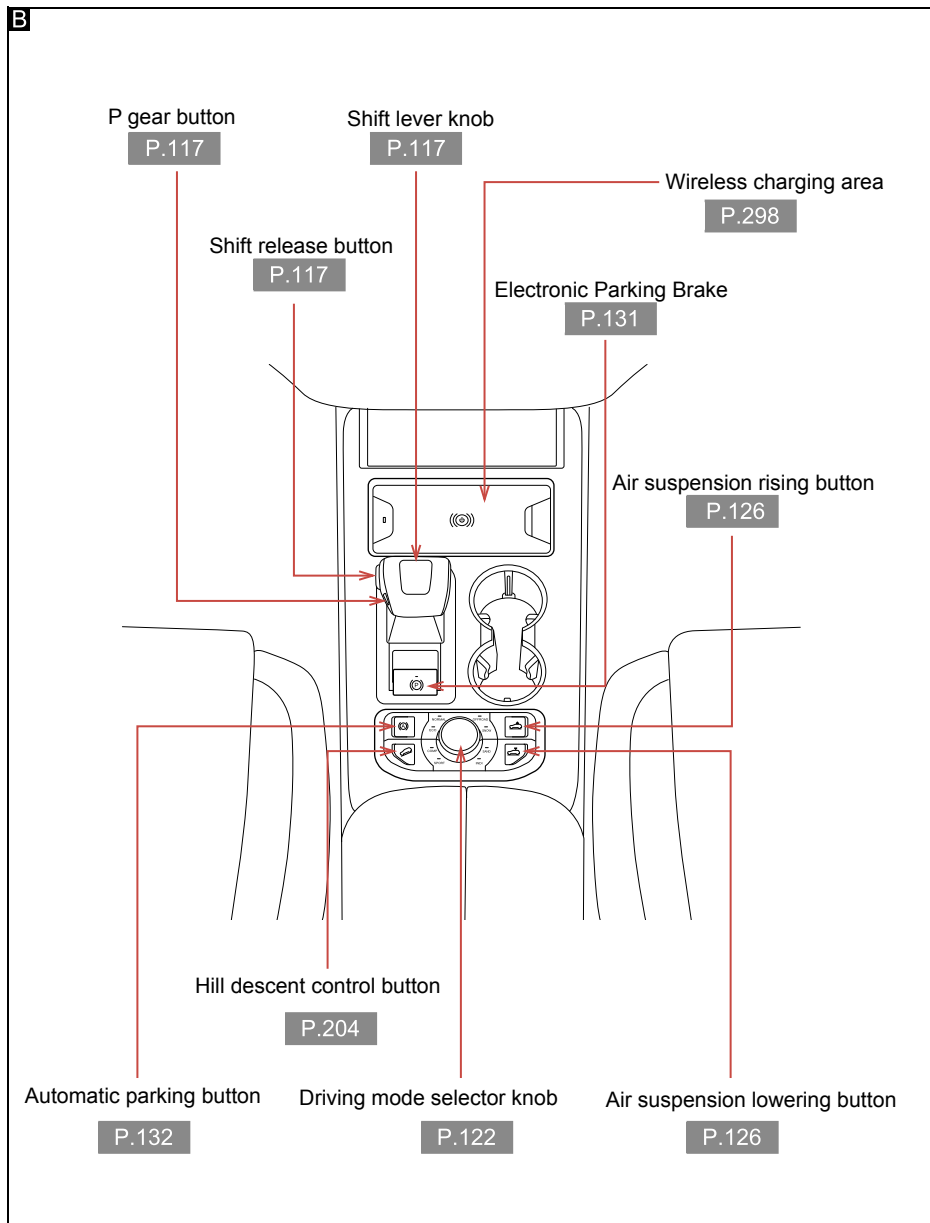


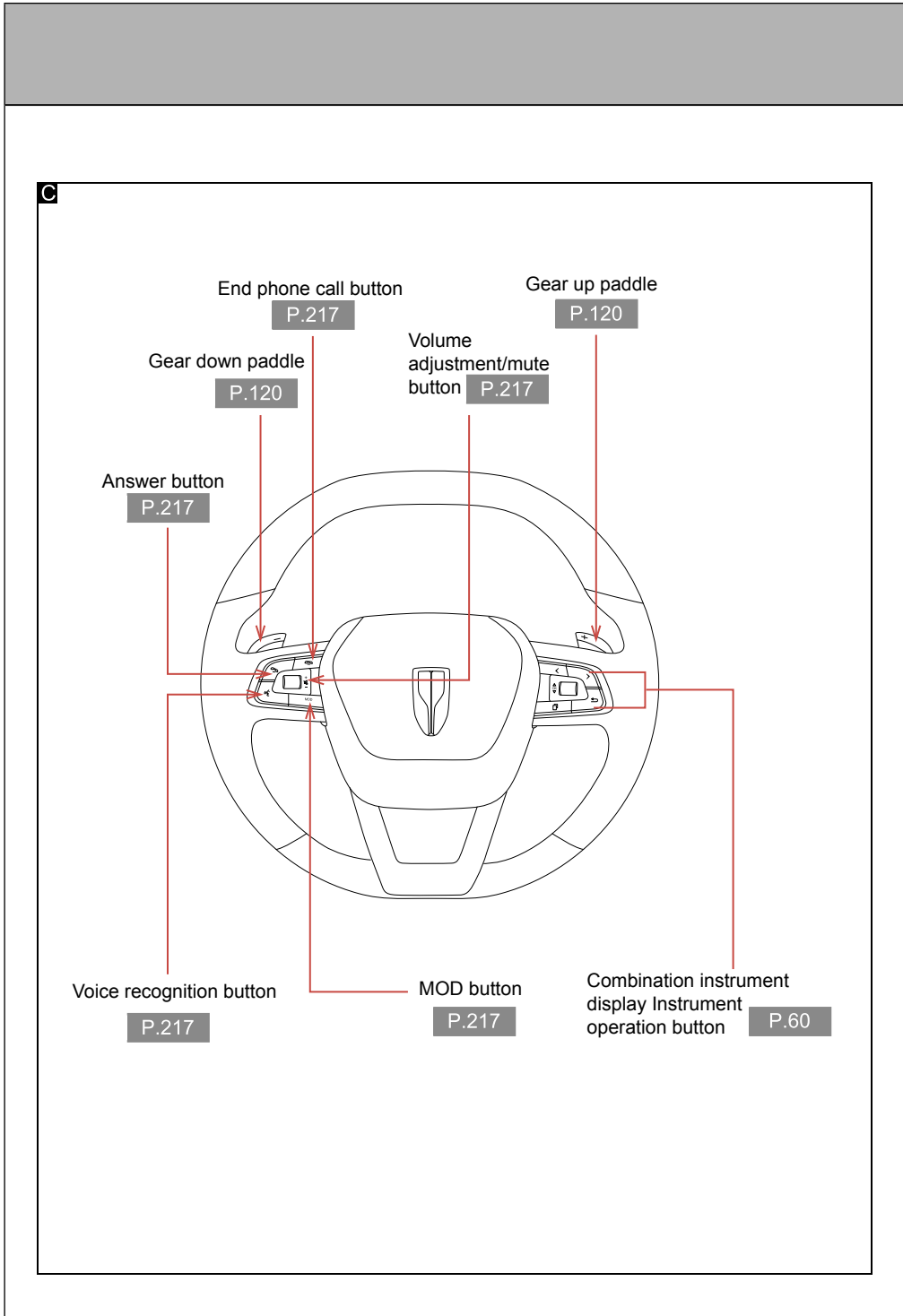
Pictorial Index Instrument Panel





Pictorial Index Instrument Panel





D

Steering wheel heating button

P.94

Mileage setting button

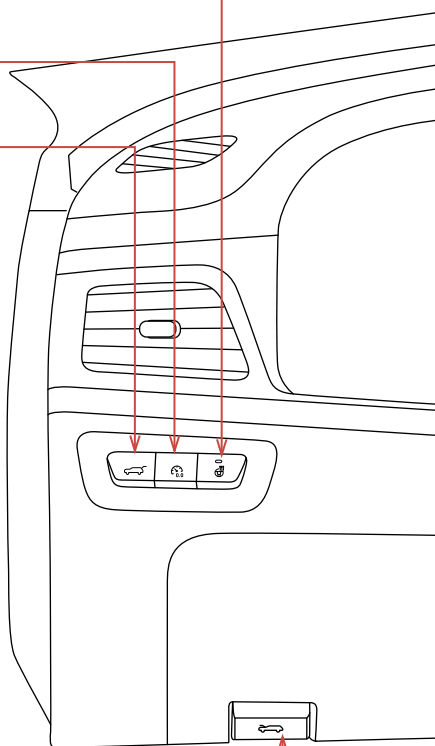
P.60

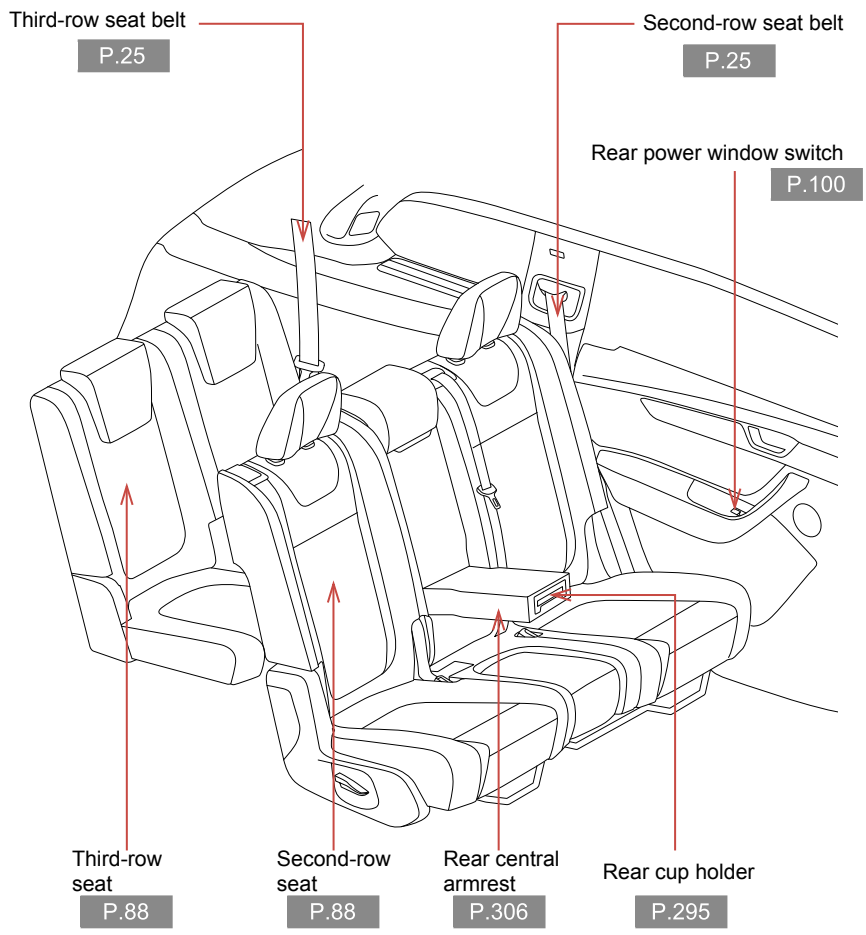
Opening/closing button
inside the trunk lid

P.77

Opening handle of the
engine compartment cover

P.318





For Your Information

Instructions for the User's Manual

Only after getting a driving license can the owner drive this vehicle on road. This manual specifically targets at qualified drivers.

In this manual, "*" means that the configuration and function may vary by and are only available in certain countries, regions, and vehicle models. Please refer to the actual car for specific equipment information.

All specifications provided in this manual are up-to-date as of the time the manual is delivered to print. However, due to FAW's constant efforts in re-modelling and improving, the equipments and performance of subsequent models may vary. Accordingly, contents of this manual will be updated at any time without notice. It's not suggested you compare the contents in other Manual versions with the equipments and performance of the vehicle you purchased, and demand additional gears in light of differences between versions. If you are unclear about the purchased vehicle or the User's Manual, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers.

Accessories, Spare Parts and Modification of the Vehicle

The FAW authorized Hongqi dealers possess advanced tools, equipments and genuine accessories required for providing maintenance and service for your vehicle. We suggest you use the qualified genuine accessories and spare parts.

FAW cannot accept any liability nor can it guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine FAW accessories and spare parts, neither for replacement nor installation involving such parts. In addition, damages or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine FAW spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Do not use products which are not authorized by FAW to modify the vehicle, otherwise it will affect the vehicle's maneuverability, safety and durability, and may even violate local government regulations. Besides, any problems caused by the modification are not covered under warranty.

Read the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Use the diagnostic instrument to connect to the vehicle OBD port. When the ECU information is being read, you can read the vehicle VIN code. You can obtain reading devices from market, which should meet ISO14229, ISO15765, ISO15031, ISO11898 standards.

Install the RF Transmitter System

Installing a RF transmitter system onto a vehicle may affect electronic systems such as:

- Anti-lock braking system
- Cruise control system
- Airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers before you install the RF transmitter system.

Please confirm with FAW authorized Hongqi dealers to learn about preventive measures or special instructions for installing a RF transmitter system.

For details on RF bands, power levels, antenna locations and RF transmitter installation regulations, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers.

Excessive noise may occur when receiving radio frequency from other radio frequency transmitting channels (RF transmitters).

Vehicle Scrapping

Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by FAW authorized Hongqi dealers before you scrap the vehicle. The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in the vehicle contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners intact, it may cause injury or fire, etc.

Vehicle Model Code

This manual introduces the vehicle models CA6471^{*1} and CA6500T1^{*2}.

*1: 5seat model.

*2: 7seat model.

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions while driving

The driver always drive soberly and defensively with full attention.

- Driving under sober state: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol and/or drugs. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgement and reduce coordination, which could result in serious injury or even death.
- Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Pay attention to the moves of other vehicles and pedestrians at any time so as to make timely judgements and prevent accidents.
- Focus on driving: Always concentrate on driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting control buttons, making a phone call, or reading could cause vehicle crash, serious injury or even death.

■ Precautions regarding children's safety

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Never allow children to have or use the key, otherwise they may be able to start the vehicle or operate the shift lever to cause safety hazards.
- Never enable children to play with the doors, windows or other features of the vehicle which may cause injury.
- Make sure the temperature in the vehicle is favourable, because extreme temperatures inside can be fatal to children.

Reading this Manual

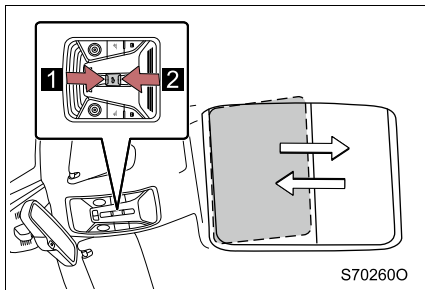
CAUTIONS



Explain warnings which, if not observed, may cause serious injury or even death.

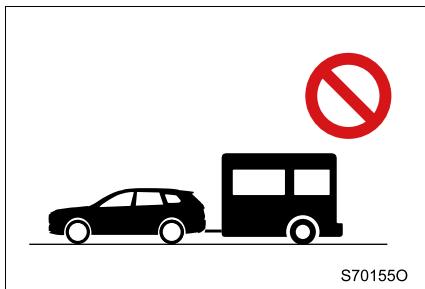
NOTICES


Explain precautions which, if not observed, may cause damages or failures in the vehicle or devices.

Step 1 Represents operation or operating steps following number sequence.

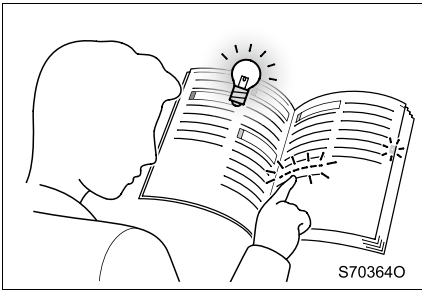


-  Indicates actions (pushing, turning, pressing, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
-  Indicates results of operation (e.g., the sunroof is open).

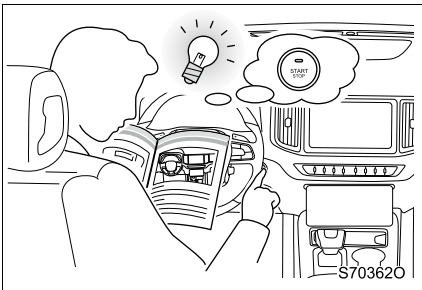


-  Represents "Keep off", "Do not do this", "Please avoid this situation".

How to Search



- Search by title
 - Contents.....P.1



- Search by installation position
 - Pictorial index.....P.6

1-1. Safety Instructions

Safe driving24
Seat belt.....26
Air bag.....32
Child safety information43
Children restraint device44
Install the child restraint device.50
Cautions on exhaust gas58

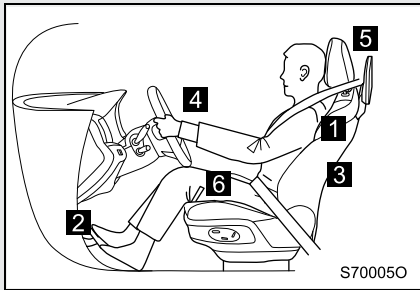
1-2. Immobilizer System

Engine immobilizer system59
Vehicle body immobilizer system
.....60

Safe driving

Adjust the seats, steering wheel and rear-view mirrors to the appropriate position before driving to ensure safety.

■ Correct driving posture



1 Sit upright and lean against the backrest.

2 Adjust the position of the seat backward to ensure that the pedals can be easily depressed.

3 Adjust the backrest of the seat so that you can easily operate all the control switches.

4 Adjust the tilt of the steering wheel so that the airbag is facing your chest.

5 Adjust and lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint flush with the top edge of the passenger's ears.

6 Wear the seat belt correctly.

■ Use the seat belts correctly

Before driving the vehicle, make sure the driver and all the passengers wear seat belts.

Children should use appropriate child restraint devices until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.

■ Adjust the rear-view mirror

By properly adjusting the interior and exterior mirrors to ensure a good view of the rear situation.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ Precautions while driving

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat during driving; otherwise, it may cause a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not put a cushion between your body and the backrest; otherwise, it may be unfavorable to maintain correct posture, reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, and consequently cause severe personal injury or even death.
- Do not place any object under the front seats, or it may become jammed in the seat rails and stop the seats from locking in place properly, which may lead to an accident.
- It is prone to fatigue during long-distance driving and proper rest is necessary. If you feel tired or drowsy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving but take a rest immediately.

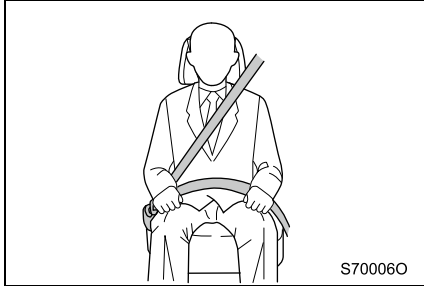
■ Adjust the seat position

- Care should be taken to adjust the seat position to ensure that the seat does not hurt other occupants when moving.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts when adjusting the seats; otherwise, the finger may be jammed in the seat adjustment mechanism.

1-1. Safety Instructions
Safe driving

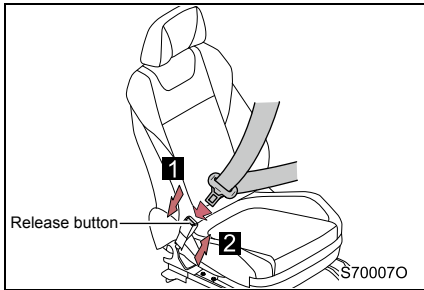
Before driving the vehicle, make sure the driver and all the passengers wear seat belts.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the belt at the shoulder so that it crosses all over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the belt at the lap as low as possible cross the hips.
- Adjust the backrest position, sit upright and lean against the backrest.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

Fasten and release the seat belts



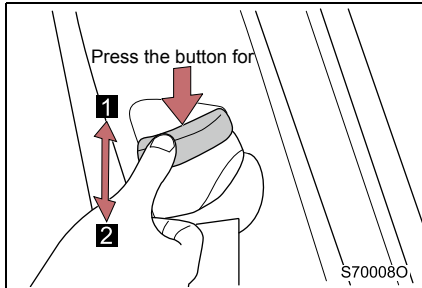
- 1** Fasten the seat belt
Push the latch plate into the buckle until a “click” sound is heard.
- 2** Loosen the seat belt
Press the release button.

NOTICES

If the driver or passengers do not wear the seat belt, the combination instrument will activate an alarm when driving at a certain speed.

1-1. Safety Instructions

Adjust the seat belt height (front seats)

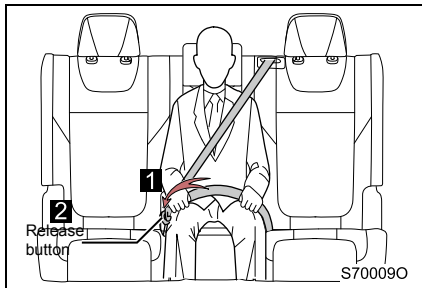


1 Move upward

2 Move downward

Press and hold the adjustment button, and move the height adjuster upward and downward as needed until you hear a “click”.

Second-row central seat belt



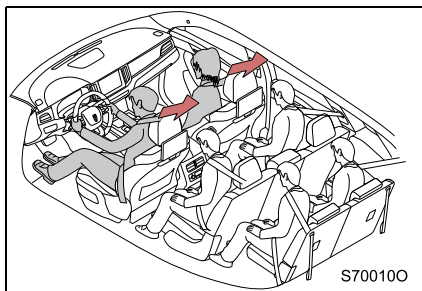
1 Fasten the seat belt

Push the latch plate into the buckle until a “click” sound is heard.

2 Loosen the seat belt

Press the release button.

Seat Belt Pretensioner



When serious head-on collision occurs to the vehicle, the pretensioner can be activated to tighten the belt and reduce the relaxation of the belt, and thus provides better protection for the front passengers.

However, the pretensioners may not be activated in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop and/or on impact. It may also lock the belt if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, smooth motion will allow the belt to extend, so you can move with ease.

■ Use of child seat belt

The seat belts of your vehicle are designed for persons of adult size.

- Children should use appropriate child restraint devices until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, they should also follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage for adults.

■ Replace the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

- The seat belt pretensioner can only be activated once. If the car has endured several collisions, the seat belt pretensioner won't be activated again after its first activation.
- After the pretensioner has been activated by a collision, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to replace the belt in time.

■ Seat belt regulations

If there are seat belt regulations in your country or region, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

NOTICES

■ Keep the seat belts clean

If the seat belt is dirty, the seat belt may be difficult to retract, so it's required to keep the seat belt clean. (See P.230)

CAUTIONS

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not clamp the seat belt, latch plate or buckle in the door, otherwise the belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belt system periodically. Check the seat belt parts for cuts, wearing, and looseness. Do not use a damaged seat belt and replace with a new one. Damaged seat belts cannot offer protection to the passenger, and thus may cause serious injury or death.
- Ensure that the latch plate and buckle are locked tight and the belt is not twisted.
- If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi dealer.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts yourself. Contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi dealer for necessary repair and maintenance. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly, and thus cause serious injury or even death.

1-1. Safety Instructions

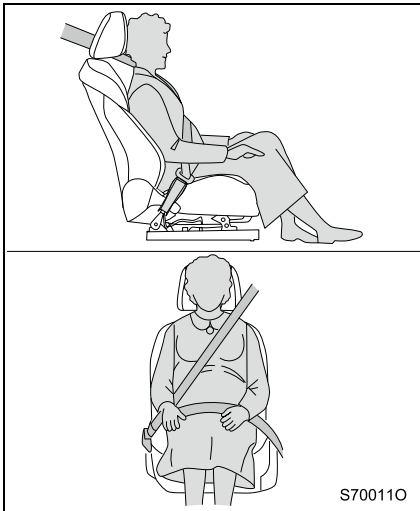
CAUTIONS

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of emergency braking, emergency steering or accidents, please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious injury, even death.

■ **Wear a seat belt**

- Make sure the driver and all the passengers wear seat belts.
- Always wear seat belts correctly.
- Please do not tilt the seat excessively for comfort. Because only when the passengers sit upright and lean against the backrest, the seat belt offers maximum protection.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and stretch over your hips.

■ **Pregnant women**



- Follow doctors' orders and wear the seat belt in a proper way.
- Pregnant women should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other passengers. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. The belt should be kept from the bulge on her abdomen.
- If the seat belt is not correctly tied, pregnant women and fetuses may be hurt severe or even dead at the time of emergency braking or collisions.


■ **Patients**

Follow doctors' orders and wear the seat belt in a proper way.

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Do not let children play with the seat belts. If the seat belt is wrapped around the child's neck, it may cause suffocation or other serious injuries resulting in death.

If this happens and the buckle can not be released, cut the seat belt with scissors.

 **CAUTIONS**

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of emergency braking or accidents, please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious injury, even death.

■ Correctly wear the seat belt

- It is very dangerous for the driver to take a wrong posture or wear a seat belt incorrectly. The seatbelt system does not provide adequate protection due to incorrect position of the seatbelt, which may result in serious personal injury.
- Wearing a seat belt incorrectly is very dangerous. During the collision, a passenger not wearing a seat belt may collide with other people or objects in the vehicle and may even be thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or even death. In the same collision, it will be safer for passengers wearing a seat belt.

■ Do not wear the twisted seat belt

Twisted seat belts are very dangerous. During the collision, the twisted seatbelt will not be able to fully utilize the entire width to absorb the impact force, which allows more force to be exerted on the bone under the seatbelt, and thus cause serious injury or even death.

■ Do not share a seat belt among more than one passenger

It is hazardous for more than one passenger (including children) to share a seat belt. Because the seat belts cannot properly disperse the impact force, the passengers may hit each other and cause serious injury or even death.

■ Adjustable shoulder restraint device (front seats)

Always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be kept away from the neck, but should not slip off the shoulder. Otherwise, it will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt during an accident. In the event of emergency braking, emergency steering, or an accident, it may cause serious injury or death.

■ Do not over-tilt the seat

Please do not tilt the seat excessively for comfort. The seat belt is most effective when the passengers are sitting up straight and leaning against the backrest.

■ Do not drive the vehicle with a damaged seat belt

Using a damaged seat belt is very dangerous. An accident may result in damage to the seat belt. Damaged seat belts can not provide adequate protection during a collision. Before using the seat belt again after an accident, all seat belt systems must be thoroughly checked by the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

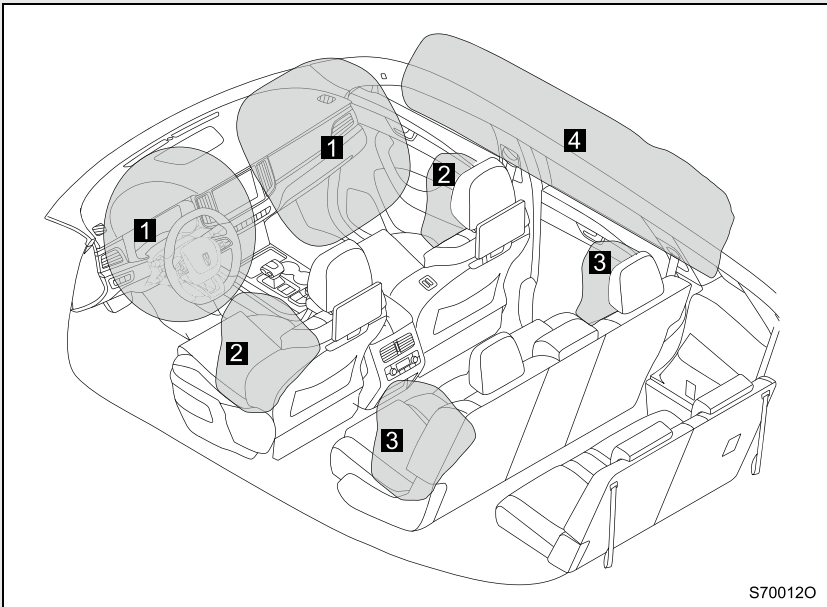
■ Seat Belt Pretensioner

In case of any collision, please immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to check the seat belt pretensioner and airbag. As with the airbag, the seat belt pretensioner and the load limiter can only be used once and must be replaced after being unfolded during collision. If the seat belt pretensioner is not replaced, the risk of serious injury to the passenger will increase when a collision occurs again.

1-1. Safety Instructions

Airbag

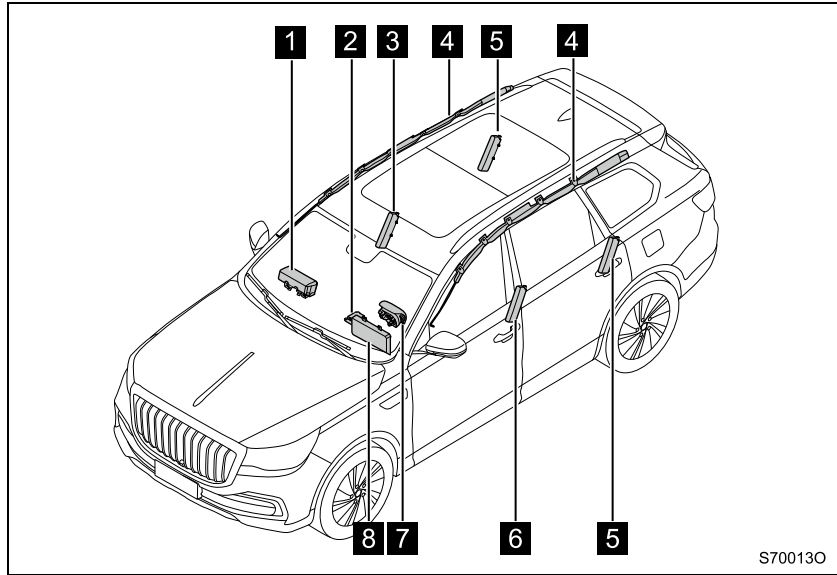
The airbags are the passive safety protection devices to reduce or avoid injury to the passengers when the vehicle is subjected to severe impacts that may cause serious injury to the passengers. When the vehicle is under some serious impacts, the airbag is activated. The vehicle is equipped with multiple airbags. The airbags are used in conjunction with seat belts to reduce the risk of serious injury or death to the passengers in the vehicle. (The shape of the inflated airbag is only for reference).



S700120

- 1** Driver airbag/Front passenger airbag
Help protect the heads and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact of interior components.
- 2** Driver seat airbag/Front passenger seat airbag
Help protect the torso of the front seat passengers.
- 3** Second-row seat airbag*
Help protect the torso of the second-row seat passengers.
- 4** Curtain airbag
Help protect the heads of the outer passengers.

Airbag system components



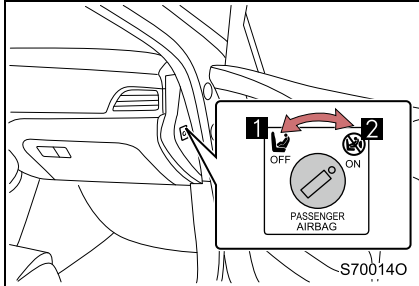
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 Front passenger airbag | 2 Airbag control unit |
| 3 Front passenger seat airbag | 4 Curtain airbag |
| 5 Second-row seat airbag | 6 Driver seat airbag |
| 7 Driver airbag | 8 Airbag fault warning lamp |

The main airbag system components are shown above.

In the event of severe frontal or lateral impact, the airbag system will trigger the airbag gas generator. The chemical reaction in the gas generator quickly makes the airbag filled up with non-toxic gas, so as to avoid injury caused by secondary collision between the driver and car.

1-1. Safety Instructions

Front passenger airbag



You can contact Red Flag dealer authorized by China FAW to close/open the auxiliary airbag.

- 1** Close the airbag.
- 2** Open the airbag



When the auxiliary airbag is closed/opened, the multimedia display will prompt it accordingly.

When it's closed, an icon will be displayed at upper right corner of display.

 **CAUTIONS****■ Precautions for airbags**

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags. Otherwise, it may result in serious injury or even death.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
- The airbag is an auxiliary device for use with the seat belt.
- The driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and may cause serious injury or even death if the driver is too close to the airbag. Since the high risk zone for the unfolding driver airbag is the 0-100 mm segment of the unfolding area, place yourself 200 mm at least from your driver airbag. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 200 mm away, you can change your driving position in several ways:
 - Move your seat backwards as far as you can while still reaching each pedal with ease.
 - Slightly tilt the back of the seat. Many drivers can achieve the 200 mm distance. Even with the driver seat at the most front position, the distance can be obtained simply by tilting the restback backwards slightly. If you cannot see the road conditions clearly in front with the backrest tilting backwards, a hard anti-skid seat cushion can be used to support your body or raise the seat.
 - Adjust the steering wheel and tilt it downward. Thus the airbag points toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

While adjusting the seat as recommended above, make sure that the pedals and steering wheel are under control of the driver, and the instrument panel controls within the driver's reach.

- The airbag system can only provide one-time accident protection. The airbag system should be replaced once triggered.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag system and the pretensioned belt are scrapped.

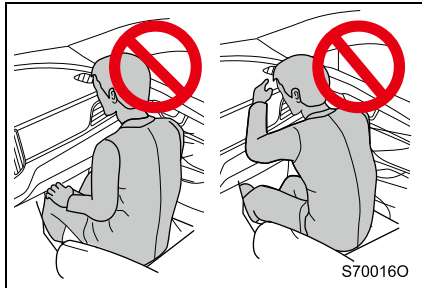
■ Always use a seat belt.

When driving a vehicle equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened. It is extremely dangerous to rely on the airbag alone in accident. Because the airbag alone cannot avoid serious injury. Therefore, always wear a seat belt during a ride.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Precautions for airbags**

- The deployment of the front passenger airbag can generate considerable force, and may cause serious injury or death especially when the front passenger is too close to the airbag. The front passenger seat shall keep away from airbag as far as possible and adjust the backrest for a sit- upright posture.
- Infants with improper sitting posture and improper protection may be hurt seriously or even dead due to air bag unfolding. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child protector. FAW strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The second-row safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat.



- Please do not lean against the edge of the instrument panel, A-pillar, roof side inner rail, doors and edge of the seat; otherwise, the unfolding of the front passenger airbags may cause strong impact on the head and result in serious personal injury or death (especially noticeable for children).



- Do not let children stand in the front of the front passenger airbag.
- Do not let children sit on the legs of front passenger or place items on the legs of front passenger.



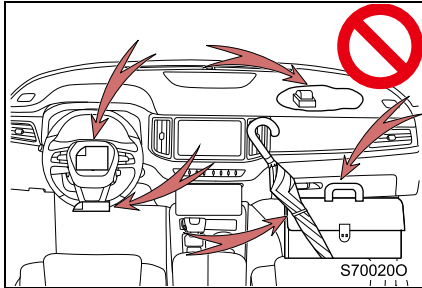
- Do not lean against the door, roof side inner rail or pillars A, B and C.

⚠ CAUTIONS

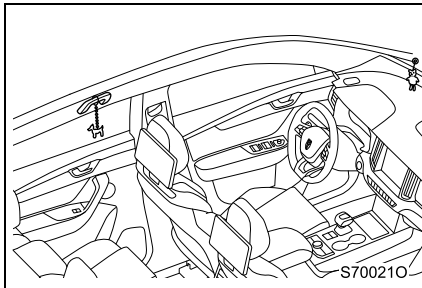
■ Precautions for airbags



- Do not kneel on passenger seat with your face towards the door or do not extend your head or hands from the window.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas around the instrument panel or the driver airbag cover and so on. These items may fly out when the driver, front passenger airbags are deployed..



- Do not attach anything to the areas around the door, windshield glass, door glass, pillar A, pillar B, pillar C, roof side inner rail or roof grip.
- Do not put hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. If the curtain airbags deploy, these items may fly out and cause death or serious injury.

1-1. Safety Instructions

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for airbags

- Do not use seat accessories which may block the unfolding parts of the seat airbags as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the airbag components; otherwise, it may lead to airbag malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the airbags are unfolded (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If it becomes difficult to breathe after the airbags have unfolded, please open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash any residue off your body as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored (the driver airbag cover and instrument panel) are damaged or cracked, please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi dealer for replacement.

■ After the airbag inflates during a collision

After the airbag inflates during a collision, it is necessary to visit the FAW Authorized Hongqi dealer to replace the airbag control unit, and prohibited to continue to use the original part.

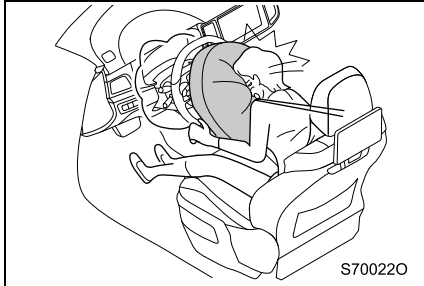
■ Modification and disposal of airbag system components

Do not scrap your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting a FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

Otherwise, the airbags may have a fault or deploy accidentally (inflate), which may result in serious hurt or even death.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the airbags.
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, instrument desk, seats or seat ornaments, pillars A, B and C or roof side inner rails.
- Repair or modification of the front fender, front bumper, or on sides of the passenger compartment.
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille.
- Modification to the vehicle's suspension system.
- Installation of mobile two-way radios.

■ If the airbags deploy (inflate)



- The airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is too close to the airbag.
 - Airbag deployment is accompanied by a ignition noise and smoke, but it will not cause a fire. The people who suffer from respiratory diseases such as asthma may breath with difficulty by inhaling the smog. In this case they shall exit the vehicle immediately. Open windows or doors to breath fresh air in if they cannot get out.
- When the airbag is deployed at an extremely high speed, it may cause slight abrasions, scalds, congestion, etc.
 - Wash with clean water as soon as possible if the residue (gas etc.) splashed into eyes or attached to the skin while the airbag is deployed. People with sensitive skin may have an allergic reaction.
 - The airbag module components (steering wheel, airbag cover and gas generator) as well as the front seats, pillar A and roof side inner rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
 - The windshield may crack.
- ### ■ Factors triggering the airbags
- The triggering range of the airbag in various accident situations cannot be generalized, because the specific conditions vary a lot. For example, the properties of the objects colliding with the vehicle (hardness), the impact angle and the vehicle speed are important factors in airbag triggering.
 - The decisive factor in the airbag triggering is the deceleration curve and pressure curve generated during a collision. The sensors fitted on the vehicle will detect the degree of the collision accident with the electronic control unit and thus trigger the airbags selectively and timely. If the vehicle deceleration value or pressure value generated and measured on collision is lower than the preset reference value within the control unit, the airbag will not be deployed even though the vehicle may have deformed to some degree in the accident.
- ### ■ Operating conditions (Driver airbag/front passenger airbag)
- With the impact exceeding the set critical value in the event of severe head-on collision accidents, the driver/front passenger airbags will be deployed.
 - However, the airbags may not be activated if the vehicle strikes a movable or deformable object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides” or goes under the bottom of a truck, etc.).
 - It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the set threshold, the front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not be activated.

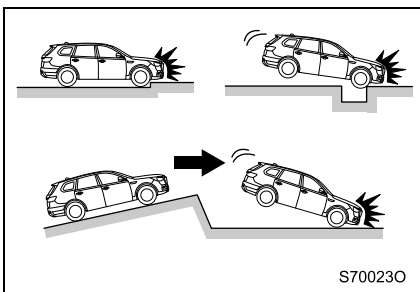
1-1. Safety Instructions

■ Operating conditions (Seat airbags and curtain airbags)

- With the impact exceeding the set critical value in the event of severe side collision, the side airbags and curtain airbags on the collision side will be deployed.
- Seat airbags and curtain airbags may be deployed together with the driver airbag/ front passenger airbag in the event of some special accidents.

■ Situations where an airbag may be deployed (excludes collisions)

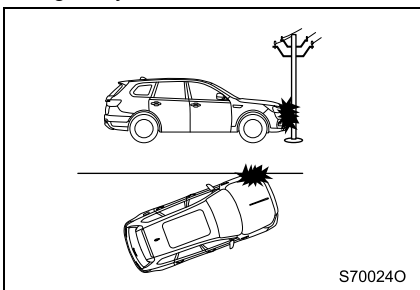
The driver airbag/front passenger airbag may also be deployed if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.



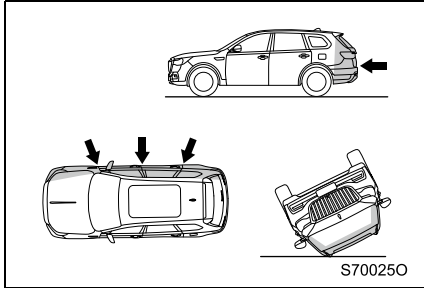
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Fall into or run across a deep pit
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

■ Conditions where airbags may not deploy (driver airbag/front passenger airbag)

When the vehicle collides with a cylindrical object such as a pole or a tree, sustains a rear-end collision, a pileup into the underside of the truck tail or runs into the bottom of the truck, hits a wall or a highway barrier in a non-head-on way, or encounters with a side collision, a rollover, or a low speed frontal collision, the driver airbag / front passenger airbag may not be deployed. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the airbags may occur.



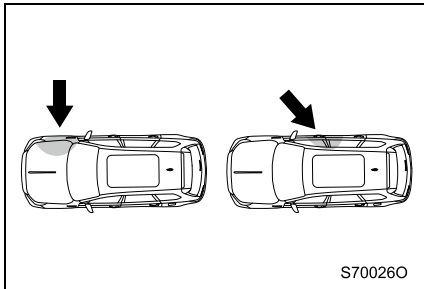
- Colliding with a cylindrical object such as a pole or a tree
- Hitting a wall or a highway barrier in a non-head-on way



- Rear-end collision
- Collision from the side
- Vehicle rollover

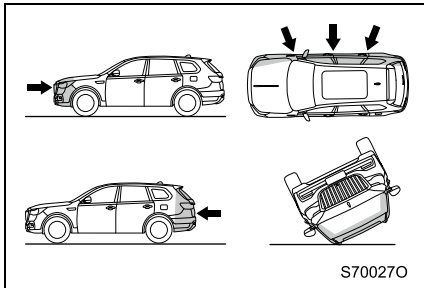
■ **Conditions where airbags may not deploy (seat airbags or curtain airbags)**

The seat airbag and curtain airbag may not be activated if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Side impact at a certain angle to the vehicle

The seat airbags and curtain airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a low-speed head-on or side collision or a rear-end collision, or rolls over.



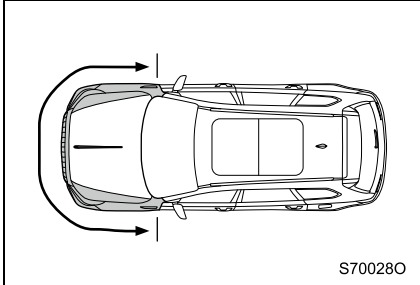
- Low-speed head-on collision
- Low-speed side collision
- Rear-end collision
- Vehicle rollover

1-1. Safety Instructions

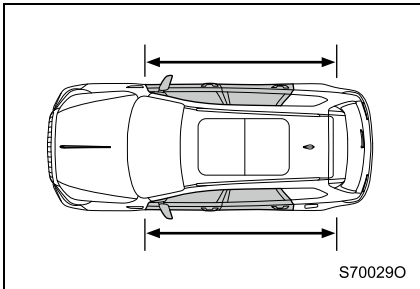
■ When should you contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle needs to be checked and/or repaired. Please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible by then.

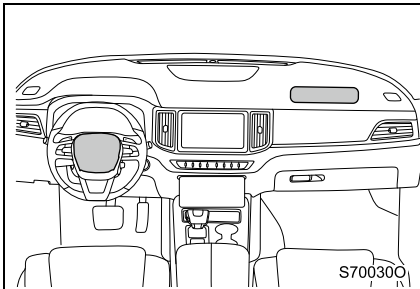
- Any of the airbags has been deployed.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.

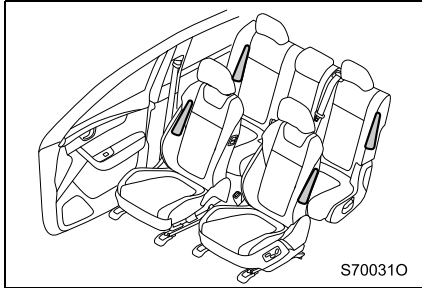


- A part of or around the door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the seat airbags and curtain airbags to inflate.

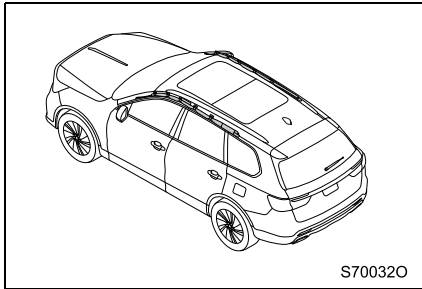


- The instrument panel near the driver airbag cover and the front passenger airbags is scratched, cracked, or damaged in other way.

1-1. Safety Instructions



- The surface of the seats with a airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged in other way.



- The curtain airbag part is scratched; pillar A, B, C and D guard plate is cracked or damaged in other way.

1

Safety Instructions

Child safety information

Observe the following precautions when there is a child in the vehicle.

Children should use appropriate child restraint devices until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.

- It is recommended to seat the child in the second-row seats to prevent them from accidentally hitting the shift lever, wiper switches, etc.
- During driving, apply the rear-door child locks and window lock switch to prevent the child from opening the doors and accidentally operating power windows.
- Do not allow the child to operate equipments (such as power windows, hoods, trunk lids, seats, etc.) that may trap the body.



CAUTIONS

■ **Do not allow the child to carry the vehicle key or play unattended in the vehicle**

- It is very dangerous for the child to play on the folded rear seats. Once the backrest returns to its original position, the child may be trapped in the closed trunk and cannot get out. To avoid this, please ensure the backrest is locked.

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Never allow the child to carry or use the key.

The child can start the vehicle or operate the shift lever. The child may get injured when playing with the windows, sunroof or other equipments. In addition, too high or low temperatures can be fatal to the child.

■ **It is necessary to lock the vehicle and keep the key in a safe place that the child cannot reach**

It is very dangerous to leave the vehicle without locking it or placing the keys in a place accessible to the child. The child entering the open trunk can be unintentionally locked in it. Especially in summer, the child may suffer from heat exhaustion, resulting in brain damage and even death. Whether you have a child or not, you must lock the doors and trunk. In addition, to further ensure safety, please make sure the second-row and third-row seat backrest is locked.

1-1. Safety Instructions

Children restraint device

China FAW strongly recommends that you use child protection devices.

Points to be remembered

It's only allowed for this car to secure the child restraint device to the seats in the second row via ISOFIX rigid anchor. It's strictly forbidden to secure the child seat with a seat belt.

- Please select the appropriate child restraint devices according to their weight and body shape.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint device.
- General installation instructions are provided in this manual.
- FAW recommends you to use the child restraint devices complying with the GB 27887-2011 regulation.

Information on the adaptability of different ISOFIX positions to ISOFIX child restraint systems

The information in the table below shows the suitability of the child restraint system in different seat positions.

Mass group	Size class	Fixture module	ISOFIX position on the vehicle	
			Second-row left seat	Second-row right seat
Portable baby crib	F	ISO/L1	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X
Group 0 : < 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	IUF	IUF
Group 0+ : < 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	IUF	IUF
	D	ISO/R2	IUF	IUF
	Attachment 1	ISO/R3	IUF	IUF
Group I: 9 kg - 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	IUF	IUF
	Attachment 1	ISO/R3	IUF	IUF
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	IUF

The meaning of the letter in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for this mass group.

X: The ISOFIX position is not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

1-1. Safety Instructions

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint device

- The child should use appropriate child restraint systems unless they are grown to fit in the seat belts.
- If the child is too large to use the child restraint system, the child should be seated in the rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt.

CAUTIONS

■ When children are in the vehicle

- Do not let children play with the seat belts. If the seat belt is wrapped around the child's neck, it may cause suffocation or other serious injuries or even death.
- If this happens and the buckle can not be released, cut the seat belt with scissors.

■ When the child restraint device is not in use

- Keep the child restraint device properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint device unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint device, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. If the head restraint is removed when installing the child restraint device, be sure to install it before driving. This will prevent passengers from being injured in the event of an emergency brake or accident.

■ Use the child restraint system

- Using a child restraint system not suitable for your vehicle may not offer proper protection to the infant or child. This may result in serious injury or death (in the event of emergency braking or an accident).

■ Precautions for child restraint device

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and emergency braking, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint device depending on their weight and shape. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint device. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- We strongly recommend you to select the appropriate child restraint system according to the child's shape and install it in the second-row seat. It is forbidden to install the child restraint device in the front passenger seat.
- Vehicle with seat airbags and curtain airbags: Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side inner rails where the seat airbags or curtain airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint device. It is dangerous if the seat airbags and curtain airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- It is necessary to follow the manufacturer's instructions and always ensure that the child restraint is securely fastened.

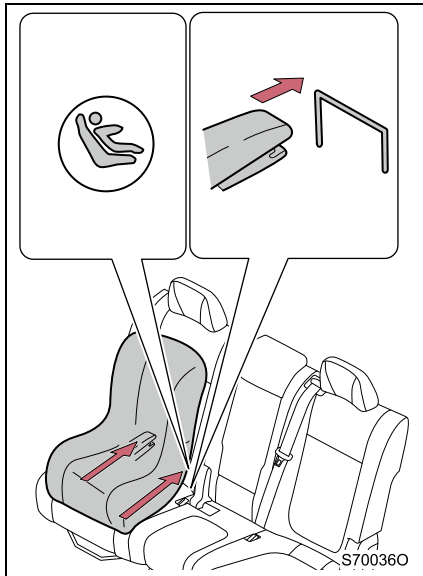
The unsecured child restraint devices are very dangerous. In the event of an emergency brake or collision, the child restraint device will move, causing serious injury or death to the child or other passengers.

1-1. Safety Instructions

Install the child restraint device

Follow the instruction manual provided by the manufacturer. Use ISOFIX rigid anchor to secure the child restraint device to the seat. The top strap should be secured when installing a child restraint device with a top strap.

Installing with the ISOFIX rigid anchor



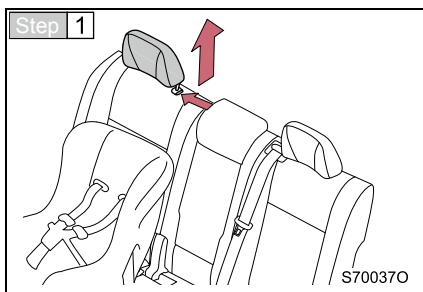
Step 1 Enlarge the clearance slightly between seat cushion and backrest.

Step 2 Insert the striker into the special fixing rod.

If the head restraint hampers the correct installation of the child restraint device, remove it before installing the child restraint device. (See P. 92)

If the child restraint device has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be fixed onto the anchor support.

Child restraint device with a top tether strap



Step 1

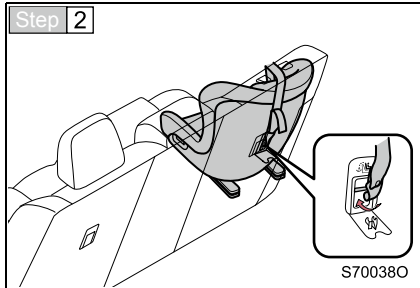
Secure the child restraint device with the ISOFIX rigid anchor.

If the head restraint hampers the correct installation of the child restraint device, remove it before installing the child restraint device. (See P. 92)

1

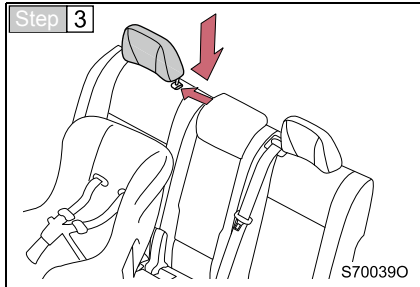
Safety Instructions

1-1. Safety Instructions



Open the anchor support cover, fasten the hook firmly to the anchor support, and fasten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.



Reinstall the head restraint.

CAUTIONS

■ When installing the child restraint device

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, it may result in serious hurt or even death.

- Firmly bind the top tether strap and make sure the seat belt is not twisted.
- Do not tie the top belt to the object other than the fixing anchor bracket.
- Push and pull the child restraint device from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After installing children restrain device, do not adjust the seat. If the seat is adjusted, the safety of the child restraint system should be reconfirmed.
- Follow the instruction manual provided by the child restraint device manufacturer.

■ Correctly fasten a child restraint device to the anchor device

When using the lower anchor devices, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint device. Make sure the child restraint device is securely attached, or it may cause serious injury or even death to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ **When installing the child restraint device**

Please observe installation manual attached to the children restraint device to fix children restraint device in right position. If the children restraint device is not fixed in right position, children or other passengers may be hurt seriously or even dead at the time of emergency brake or an accident.



- There are labels on the both sides of the sun visor on the front passenger seat, reminding you that never place a rear-facing child restraint device on the seat protected by the airbag. Details of the labels are shown in the figure.

Exhaust gas contains substances harmful to human.

 **CAUTIONS**

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the exhaust gas can flow into the vehicle and cause dizziness resulting in accidents or serious harm or even death to human.

■ **Important for driving**

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If the exhaust gas can still be smelled in the vehicle even with a closed trunk lid, open the windows and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible for inspection.

■ **When parking**

- If the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated or a closed place (e.g garage), be sure to turn off the engine.
- Do not allow a long running of the engine.
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust gas does not enter the vehicle.
- Never keep your engine running in any place which has deep snow or where snow is falling. If snow is piled up on a hill surrounding your vehicle while the engine is running, the accumulated exhaust gas may enter into the vehicle.

■ **Exhaust Pipe**

The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, joint damage or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle checked and repaired by the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

1-2. Immobilizer System

Engine immobilizer system

In order to prevent the vehicle from being stolen, the smart key and card card are provided with a built-in password chip. If the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's onboard computer, such key cannot start the engine. Different vehicles register different information in keys.

Never leave the key in the vehicle when leaving the vehicle.

This system helps to prevent vehicle thefts, but it does not prevent all thefts or guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle.

Carrying the registered key, press the engine "START STOP" switch to release the engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause system malfunctions

- Strongly impacted key
- Place the key on the hot area, such as the instrument panel under the blazing sun
- Use magnetic key chain
- Wash the key using ultrasonic cleaner
- The key is close to or against a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

■ If the engine cannot be started with the correct method, the engine immobilizer system may have broken down. Please contact a FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for check.



NOTICES

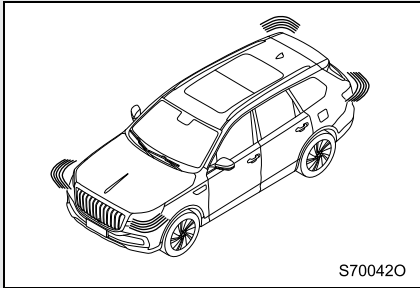
■ Ensure normal operation of the system

Do not retrofit or remove the engine immobilizer system. If it is refitted or removed without permission, normal operation of the system can not be ensured.

1-2. Immobilizer System

Vehicle body immobilizer system

The vehicle body immobilizer system mainly monitors the states of the four doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid. The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lamps when a break in is detected.



When the vehicle body immobilizer system works

Close doors, trunk lid and engine compartment cover after all the driver and passengers exiting the vehicle.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Perform any of the following operations:

- Unlock the doors or trunk lid by passive entry function or wireless control function.
- Start the engine (the alarm will be released or stopped in a few seconds).

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the vehicle theft alarm, make sure nobody, valuables and any other private property is in the vehicle and windows and sunroof are closed before the vehicle is locked.

■ When the battery is disconnected

Be sure to cancel the alarm system.

The alarm may be triggered if the battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

⚠ NOTICES

■ Ensure normal operation of the system

Do not retrofit or remove the engine immobilizer system. If it is refitted or removed without permission, normal operation of the system can not be ensured.

2. Instrument Cluster

Combination instrument	62
Warning lamp	64
Indicator lamp	65
Combination instrument multifunction display	66

2. Instrument Cluster Combination instrument



Due to the different vehicle configurations, the contents displayed also vary.

- 1** Engine tachometer
Displays the revolutions per minute of the engine.
- 2** Tip/alarm icons display area
Shows the vehicle warning lamp and indicator lamp, etc.
- 3** Speedometer
Displays the vehicle speed.
- 4** Fuel gauge
Displays the remaining fuel level.
- 5** Multifunction display
Display the gear, fuel consumption, vehicle speed, range, tire pressure information, date and various warning and prompting message; meanwhile support the quick operation of audio system.
- 6** Engine coolant temperature display area
Displays temperature of the engine coolant.

Adjusting the backlight brightness in the vehicle

The brightness of the backlights can be adjusted in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.223)

■ **Condition for lighting the combination instrument**

The engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- The engine revolution is nearly the maximum if the tachometer is in the red zone. Please control the vehicle speed within a limited range.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone. In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely.

■ **During brightness control**

For the sake of safety, adjust the backlight brightness after the vehicle is stopped, and do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.

2. Instrument Cluster Warning lamp

The warning lamps indicate the current status of the various vehicle systems or the current possible faults in the corresponding system. (See P.351)



Driving recorder SD card
fault warning light



Car recorder fault warning
light



PM2.5 sensor fault
warning lamp



Engine switch fault alarm
lamp



Key battery low warning
lamp



Seat belt reminder lamp



Bulb fault warning lamp



Overflow cleaning fluid
level alarm



Electronic wiper system
fault warning lamp



Battery charging fault
warning lamp



Low fuel level warning
lamp



Engine control system
fault warning lamp



Engine exhaust gas
monitoring system fault
warning lamp



Abnormal engine oil
pressure warning lamp



Engine immobilizer
system fault warning
lamp



Coolant high temperature
warning lamp



Brake system fault
warning lamp



Airbag system fault
warning lamp



EPS system fault warning
lamp



EPS system serious fault
warning lamp



ABS system fault warning
lamp



AUTO HOLD system fault
warning lamp



Transmission system/
electronic shifting system
fault warning lamp



Four-wheel system fault
warning lamp



HBB system fault warning
lamp



Electronic steering
column system fault
warning lamp

2. Instrument Cluster

	EPS system fault warning lamp		Abnormal tire pressure/system fault warning lamp
	FCW system fault warning lamp		AEB system fault warning lamp
	LDW/LKA system fault warning lamp		BSD system fault warning lamp
	HDC system fault warning lamp		Passive start system fault warning lamp
	IFC advanced driver assistance system camera fault warning lamp		TSR system fault warning lamp
	Auto drive lamp/auto wiper function fault warning lamp		ACC system fault warning lamp
	Seat memory function fault warning lamp		SACC system fault warning lamp
	ESC system fault warning lamp		Electronic steering column lock fault warning lamp
	Idle start-stop system fault warning lamp		Air suspension system fault warning lamp
	Air suspension system serious fault warning lamp		Headlight height automatic adjustment system fault warning indicator
	Driving mode selection system fault warning lamp		Brake lining excessive wear alarm

Notes:
There may be a malfunction in a system if the corresponding lamp does not turn on, or if the lamps do not turn off. Contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for vehicle check.

2. Instrument Cluster Indicator lamp

Indicator lamps inform the status of the vehicle's various systems.



Left turn signal indicator lamp



Right steering indicator light



High beam ON indicator lamp



Position lamp ON indicator lamp



Front fog lamp ON indicator lamp



Rear fog lamp ON indicator lamp



Ambient temperature display indicator lamp



ESC system working indicator lamp



ESC system OFF indicator lamp



GPF icing alarm indicator



Maintenance indicator lamp



Door opening indicator lamp



Constant speed cruise ON indicator lamp



Constant speed cruise working indicator lamp



IHC system working indicator lamp



Reverse horizontal prompting indicator lamp



EPB working indicator lamp



AUTO HOLD working indicator lamp



FCW system OFF indicator lamp



FCW system warning indicator lamp



AEB system OFF indicator lamp



AEB system working indicator lamp



























DSM system warning indicator lamp (minor abnormality)



DSM system warning indicator lamp (serious abnormality)

2. Instrument Cluster

	LDW/LKA system ON indicator lamp		LDW/LKA system working indicator lamp
	TSR system smart speed limiting - traffic identification indicator lamp		Active speed limiting warning indicator lamp
	HDC system working indicator lamp (Blinking)		HDC system ON indicator lamp (Normally ON)
	ACC system standby indicator		SACC system steering auxiliary standby indicator
	SACC system ON indicator lamp		SACC system steering assistance ON indicator lamp
	SACC system working indicator lamp		SACC system steering assistance working indicator lamp
	ACC system standby indicator		ACC system ON indicator lamp
	ACC system working indicator lamp		Unknown key indicator lamp
	Idling start/stop system working indicator lamp		Idling start/stop system OFF indicator lamp
	Idle starting&stopping system limit indicator		Air suspension up/down indicator
	Air suspension up/down indicator		Air suspension lifting mode indicator
	Standard driving mode status indicator		i.RFlag driving mode status indicator

2

Instrument Cluster

2. Instrument Cluster



Economic mode indicator lamp



Comfort mode indicator lamp



Sport mode indicator lamp



Snowfield mode indicator lamp



Off-road mode indicator lamp



Sand mode indicator



Custom mode indicator



Driving pattern unable to switch indicator lamp

2. Instrument Cluster

Combination instrument multifunction display

The combination instrument multifunction display provides the driver with various driving related information, including mileage, outside temperature, vehicle status information and gear information.



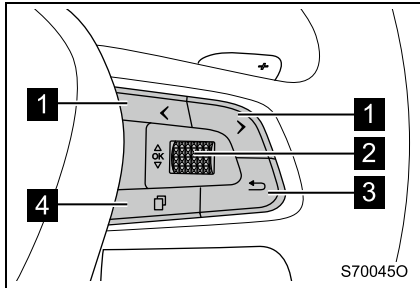
- 1** Multifunction display area
To operate/view the vehicle information, radio, music, phone, navigation, warning information, driver assistance information, Himalaya online, QQ music, and other modules.
- 2** Trip mileage display field
Display the trip mileage information, falling into A and B. Trip A and B can be switched by the mileage setting key. (See P.230)
- 3** Information display area
It displays gear positions, cruise and other information
- 4** Total mileage display area
Displays the total mileage information.

2

Instrument Cluster

2. Instrument Cluster

Display switch



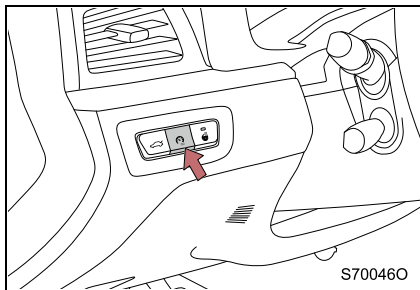
- 1** Left and right selection buttons
Press it shortly to switch the setting interface.
- 2** Roller
Scroll: Scroll up and down to select the switched item.
Short pressing: confirm the selection.
- 3** Return button
Short press to return to the previous interface.
- 4** Menu button
In the music and phone interfaces, short press to return to the menu interface.

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions during driving

Be extra careful while operating the instrument operating buttons on the steering wheel to prevent accidents

Sub-mileage setting



Short pressing the mileage setting key can switch the display of trip A and trip B on the instrument; long pressing will reset the currently displayed trip mileage.

Multifunction display area

By using the left and right buttons on the steering wheel, you can switch between the driving information, radio, music, phone, navigation, warning information, driver assistance information, Himalaya online, and QQ music.



- 1 Multifunction display navigation bar
- 2 Multifunction display information area

Note: if there is no warning message, driving auxiliary function is not active, Himalaya has no tone source output, QQ music has no tone source output, the corresponding module will be hidden in the navigation column.

Vehicle Information



Vehicle information display
Specific operation. Specific operation (see P.62)

Radio



Displays the radio information
Specific operation (see P.65)

Music



Displays the music information
Specific operation (see P.65)

Phone



Displays the phone information
Specific operation (see P.66)

2. Instrument Cluster

Navigation



Displays the navigation information
Specific operation (see P.67)

Warning information



Displays the warning information
Specific operation (see P.67)

Driver assistance information



Displays the driver assistance information
Specific operation (see P.67)

Himalaya online



Displays the Himalaya online
Specific operation (see P.68)

QQ Music



Displays QQ Music
Specific operation (see P.68)

■ Vehicle information

Use the steering wheel trolley to switch short-time average speed, short-time average fuel consumption, long-time average speed, long-time average fuel consumption, instantaneous fuel consumption, driving range, driving mode, tire pressure information, drive mode, air suspension and date.

- Short-time average speed, short-time average fuel consumption



Hold the steering wheel to reset the short-time average speed and short-time average fuel consumption.

Note: Short-time average speed/short-time average fuel consumption: average speed/fuel consumption for this driving cycle. (if the power off time after the last parking does not exceed 2h, the last time information will be accumulated).

- Long-time average speed/long-time average fuel consumption



Hold the steering wheel to reset the long-time average speed and long-time average fuel consumption.

Note: Long-time average speed/fuel consumption: average speed/fuel consumption after the last clearing.

- Instantaneous fuel consumption and driving range



It shows the instantaneous speed and driving range of car under current operating conditions.

- Instantaneous fuel consumption



It displays the driving mode of car under the current road conditions.

2. Instrument Cluster

- Drive mode, tire pressure information



It shows the driving mode and tire pressure information of car under the current road conditions. It will display the corresponding tire and its pressure value in yellow if the pressure of one or several tires is abnormal; the other normal tire pressure values will be displayed in green.

When one or more of the tire position sensors fails, the multifunction display area of the combination instrument displays "---", and the values of the other normal tire positions are displayed normally.

- Air suspension



In the car information interface, the registration of car air suspension under the current road conditions will be displayed on the left of multifunction display area.

- Date



Display the current date.

● Radio



Select the channels in the list of FM, AM and favorite through the steering wheel roller to play.



If the radio is playing, the current play information will be displayed when the radio interface is accessed. Operate the steering wheel trolley, return button or menu button to return to the radio operating interface.

■ Music



Through the steering wheel roller, select the music in the list of favorite, local, USB1, USB2 and Bluetooth to play.



If the music is playing, the current play information will be displayed when the music interface is accessed. Operate the steering wheel trolley, return button or menu button to return to the radio operating interface.

2. Instrument Cluster

■ Phone

After the Bluetooth is connected, the call can be quickly answered/dialed through the phone interface in the multi-function display zone.



Use the steering wheel to make calls, answer calls, view the phone books and call logs, etc.

● Make a call



In the call interface, you can perform hanging up, private answering and muting, etc.

● Answer the phone



In the answering interface, you can perform hanging up, private answering and muting, etc.

● Navigation



When the on-board navigation application is turned on, the navigation status display area displays the current navigation information.

■ Warning information

Where there is warning message, the message will be displayed by the pop-up window. All the current warning messages can be viewed through the warning message interface.



Through the steering wheel roller, the current warning messages can be switched up and down.

■ Driver assistance information



When the driving assistance system is active, the multi-function display zone will display the driving assistance information interface. In the driving assistance information interface, the driving assistance system status and warning can be polled.

2. Instrument Cluster

■ imalaya online



When the Himalayan on-line application is active, the multi-function display zone will display this application interface.

■ QQ Musi



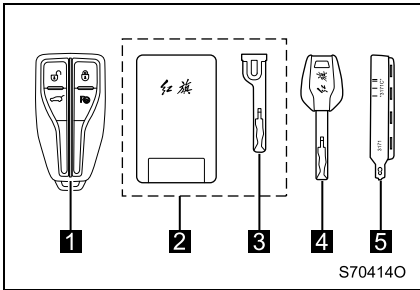
When the QQ music on-line application is active, the multi-function display zone will display this application interface.

3-1. Information on the Key	
Key.....	70
3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid	
Doors	73
Trunk lid	77
Passive entry & start system.....	81
3-3. Adjusting the Seats	
Front seats	86
Second-row seat.....	88
Head restraints.....	92
Seat memory.....	93
3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors	
Steering wheel	94
Anti-glare inner rear view mirror	96
Exterior mirrors	97
3-5. Opening and Closing the Windows	
Power windows	100
Panorama sunroof	102

3-1. Information on the Key Key

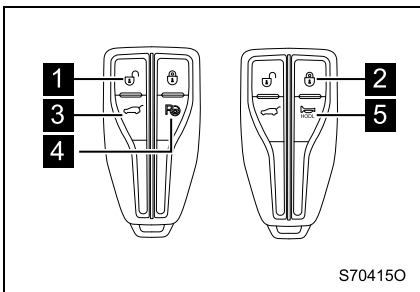
Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys.



- 1** Smart key
 - Operating passive entry & start system (see P.85)
 - Operating the wireless remote control function
- 2** Card key
 - Operating passive entry & start system (see P.81)
- 3** Type A mechanical key*
- 4** Type B mechanical key
- 5** Key number plate

Wireless remote control



- 1** Unlock the doors by pressing the button, while open all the windows and sunroof by pressing and holding the button¹
- 2** Lock the doors by pressing the button, while lock all the windows and sunroof by pressing and holding the button¹
- 3** Press and hold the button to unlock and open the trunk lid
- 4** Remote parking²
- 5** Press the button shortly to trigger the car searching function³

With the vehicle locked, when the seek key is pressed, the seek function will be activated, the turn lamp will blink 3 time while the horn will ring 3 times.

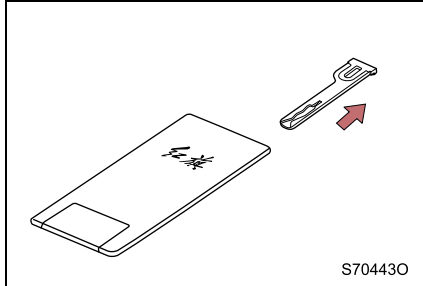
¹: In case of releasing the remote control button during long press, the window will stop moving.

²: Model equipped with automatic parking system.

If the remote control locking button is pressed once within the effective range, and the remote parking button is pressed twice when the car is locked, the car will start; if the above operation is performed again after starting the car, the car will stop.

³: Model not equipped with automatic parking system.

Using the type A mechanical key



Take out the mechanical key as shown in the figure. Put the mechanical key in the card key after using it. Carry the mechanical key together with the card key.

If the battery of the smart key or card key runs out and does not work properly, use the mechanical key.

- **When needing parking service**

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the smart key or card key only.

- **Key number plate**

Keep the key number plate in a safe place, not in the vehicle.

- **When taking an aircraft**

When bringing a smart key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the smart key while inside the aircraft cabin. If the key is put in a bag, make sure that any button will not be pressed unintentionally. Pressing a button may cause the smart key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

- **Key battery level**

- The standard lifecycle of the battery is 1-2 years.
- The battery may run out even if the key is not used. The following symptoms indicate a low level of or zero energy of the key battery. Replace the battery when necessary.
 - The passive entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
 - The detection area becomes smaller.
 - The multifunction display of the combination instrument shows a message of low battery power.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the key within 1 m of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
 - TVs
 - Personal computers
 - Mobile phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
 - The charging cell phone or cordless phones
 - Table lamps
 - Induction cooker

- **Replacing the battery**

(See P.337)

3-1. Information on the Key

NOTICES

■ To prevent damage to the key

- Do not make keys subject to strong shocks or expose the keys to high temperature (such as under direct sunlight) and wet environment.
- Do not wet the key or wash it in an ultrasonic cleaner or other units.
- Do not attach metal or magnetic items to the key, or place the key near such items.
- Do not disassemble the smart key and card key.
- Do not stick labels or other items on the surface of the key.
- Do not place the key near the material that generates magnetic fields, such as a TV, audio system, induction cooker or electronic medical devices (such as a low-frequency medical devices).

■ When carrying the smart key or card key

When carrying the key, a distance of 10 cm or more should be kept from operating electrical appliances. The radio wave emitted by the electrical appliance less than 10cm away from the key can interfere with the key operation and disable the normal work.

- In order to prevent the car from being misidentified by the car if the signal is disturbed by other items, it's recommended that the driver carry the key with him or her.

■ When the passive entry & start system fails or has other key related failures

Please send the vehicle to the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer together with all the keys accompanied with the vehicle.

■ When the key is lost

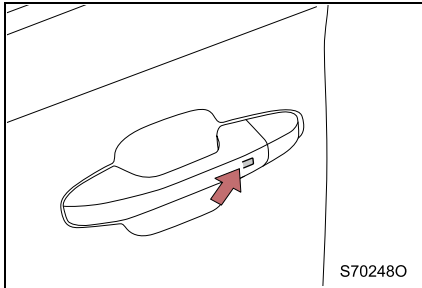
If the key is lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Immediately bring all the other keys to the vehicle to the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid Doors

Unlock and lock the door from the outside of the vehicle

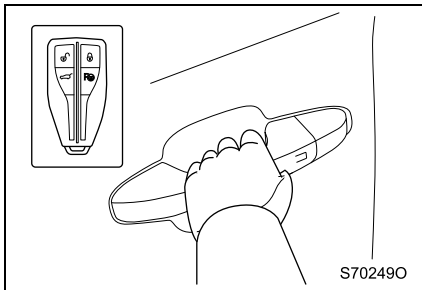
■ Passive entry*

The door can be unlocked and locked through the smart access function so long as the smart key or card key is carried.



Turn off the engine switch, touch the lock sensing area of the door handle to lock the door.

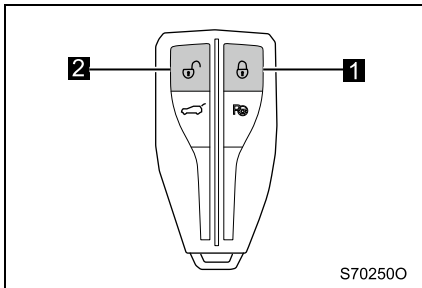
When any one of the doors is not closed, the door cannot be locked by doing so.



Hold the door handle to unlock the door.

When the door is locked by touching the door handle lock sensing area, the door cannot be passively unlocked within 4s, but the remote unlocking function is not affected.

■ Wireless remote control

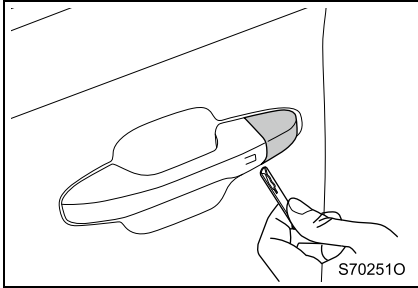


1 Lock all the doors

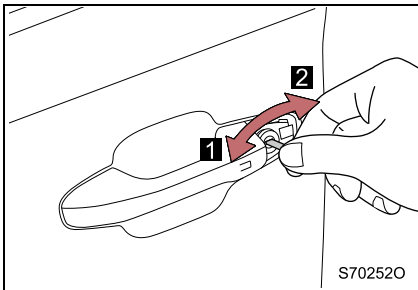
2 Unlock the driver door/all the doors
For the unlock method setting, see P.227.

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

■ Mechanical key



Open the door keyhole cover using the mechanical key.



Lock and unlock the vehicle using the mechanical key.

- 1 Lock all the doors
- 2 Unlock the driver door

■ Operation signals

All the turn signal lamps flashes to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

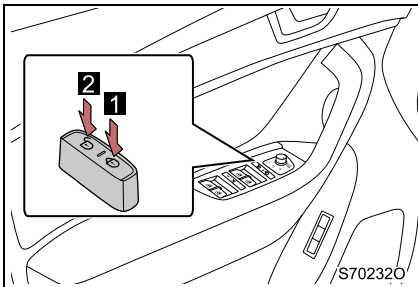
■ Exhausted smart key

If the key battery runs out, replace it with a new one. (See P.337)

Unlock and lock the door from interior

The door can be opened with the central door lock switch on the driver side door.

■ Central door lock switch

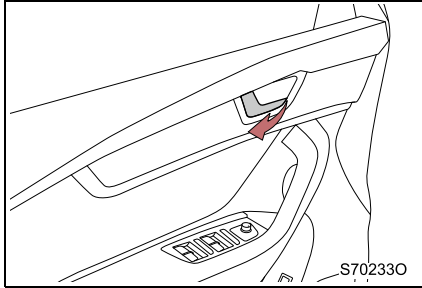


- 1 Lock all the doors
- 2 Unlock all the doors

Note: When the door is not closed, the central door lock switch can only be unlocked and cannot be locked.

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

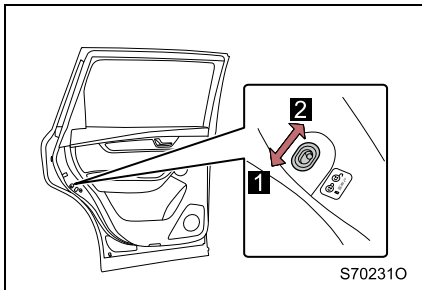
■ Interior door handle



Pull the interior door handle inwardly to open the door.

After locking the door, pull the interior door handle once to unlock the door and pull it again to open the door.

■ Child safety lock on the rear door



The door can not be opened from the inside of the door after the safety lock being activated.

1 Lock

2 Unlock

The activated safety lock can prevent the child from opening the door in the vehicle.

■ Locking at certain speeds

- With all doors closed, one door not locked and the vehicle running, when the speed exceeds 20 km/h, the function of locking at certain speeds will be activated to lock all doors.

■ The conditions affecting the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control

(See P.83)

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

CAUTIONS

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Otherwise, the passenger in the vehicle can be thrown out of the vehicle due to the unintentionally opened door, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all the doors.
- Make sure all the doors are closed properly.
- Do not pull the inside handles of the doors while driving.
Otherwise, the door can be opened and the passenger can be thrown out of the vehicle, leading to serious injury or even death.
- Always set the rear door child safety lock when children are seated in the rear seats.
- When you get out of the vehicle with nobody in it, please carry the keys, close all the windows and sunroof and lock all the doors to prevent others from entering or stealing the vehicle.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Never allow children to have or use the key, otherwise they may be able to start the vehicle or operate the shift lever to cause safety hazards.
- Never enable children to play with the doors, windows or other features of the vehicle which may cause injury.
- Make sure the temperature in the vehicle is favourable, because extreme temperatures inside can be fatal to children.
- Always make sure the surrounding area is safe before opening the vehicle.
It is extremely dangerous to suddenly open the door, because the door may hit the other vehicle or pedestrians passing by resulting in accidents.
- After closing the doors, verify that they are closed tight.
Failure to close the door tight is dangerous. If the vehicle is driven in this case, the door may open unintentionally, causing an accident.

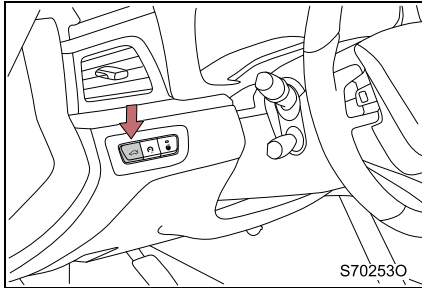
3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

Trunk lid

The trunk lid can be opened using the trunk lid open button, passive entry function, or wireless remote control.

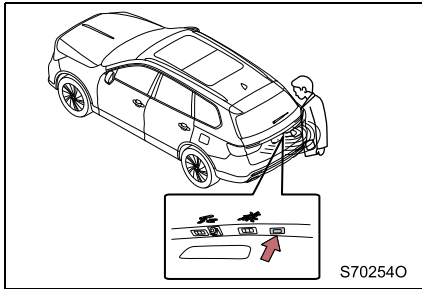
Opening the trunk lid

■ Opening the trunk lid from the inside of vehicle



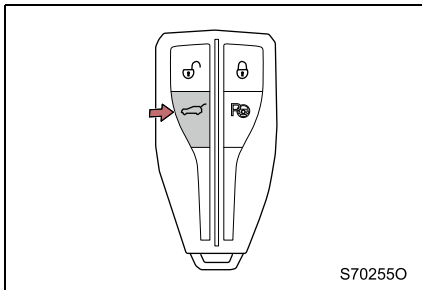
When the vehicle is stationary, press the trunk lid open button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

■ Opening the trunk lid from the outside of vehicle



With the vehicle locked and engine switch in IG -ON position, carry the smart key or card key, press the trunk lid outside opening key to unlock and open the trunk lid; with the vehicle unlocked, pressing the trunk lid outside opening key will unlock and open the trunk lid.

■ Wireless remote control

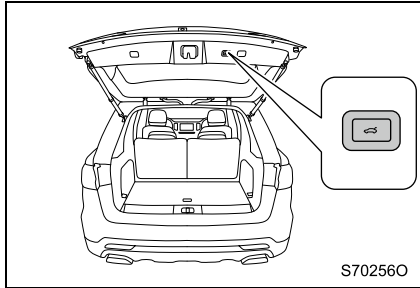


Press and hold the button to unlock and open the trunk lid

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

Closing the trunk lid

- Closing the trunk lid from the outside of vehicle



After pressing the trunk lid closing button, the trunk lid will be automatically closed.

- Closing the trunk lid from the inside of vehicle

If you release the the opening/closing button after pressing and holding the button on the trunk lid, the trunk lid will be automatically closed.

- **Trunk lamp**

The trunk lamp turns on when the trunk lid is opened.

- **Trunk lid position memory**

Open the trunk lid and adjust the trunk lid to a suitable angle (the angle needs to exceed half of maximum opening angle). Press and hold the trunk lid closing button for 3 seconds (seconds). When you hear the prompt voice, release the button and remember its current position as an opening position of trunk lid.

- **Reminder of the key left in trunk**

When you open and close the trunk lid alone from the outside of vehicle with the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and vehicle locked, the reminder function of the approved key left in trunk will be activated (the trunk lid pops open automatically).

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

CAUTIONS

- **Be careful to open and close the trunk lid to avoid being pinched by it.**
- **Before driving**
 - Make sure the trunk lid is completely closed. If the trunk lid is not completely closed, it may open accidentally hitting nearby objects or making the luggage in it thrown out during driving.
 - Do not let children play in the trunk. If the child is accidentally locked in the trunk, he or she may suffer heat stroke, suffocation or other injuries.
 - Do not allow children to open or close the trunk lid. Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unintentionally or cause the closing trunk lid to trap the child's hand, head, or neck.
- **Precautions when driving**

Make sure to close the trunk lid to prevent from belongings dropping off and prevent from the exhaust gas entering into the cabin.
- **When children are inside or around the vehicle**

Never leave the child play in or around the vehicle unattended, especially when the trunk lid is open. The children may enter the trunk and trapped themselves in it. The over high or low temperature in the closed car may cause serious injury or death. Harm or death.
- **Important for driving**

Never seat anyone in the trunk. Otherwise, during emergency braking or a crash, it is likely to cause serious injury or even death.
- **Anti-pinch function**
 - Never try to activate the anti-pinch function intentionally by having any body part pinched.

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

CAUTIONS

■ Using the trunk

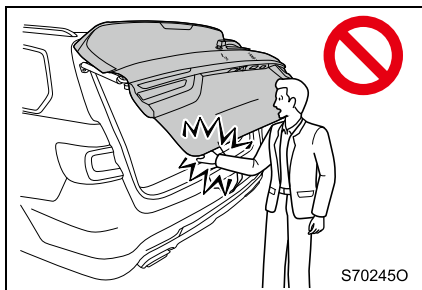
Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, some part of the body may be trapped and cause serious injury.

- Before opening the trunk lid, first remove load on it, such as snow and ice. Otherwise, the trunk lid may suddenly close again.
- When opening or closing trunk lid, please make a thorough check to ensure the peripheral region is safe.
- If there is someone nearby, please ensure their safety and inform them that trunk lid will be opened or closed.
- On a windy day, be careful when opening or closing trunk lid, because it may move suddenly in strong wind.
- Never install any accessories on the trunk lid. Otherwise, the extra weight on the trunk lid may cause the trunk to open and close suddenly.



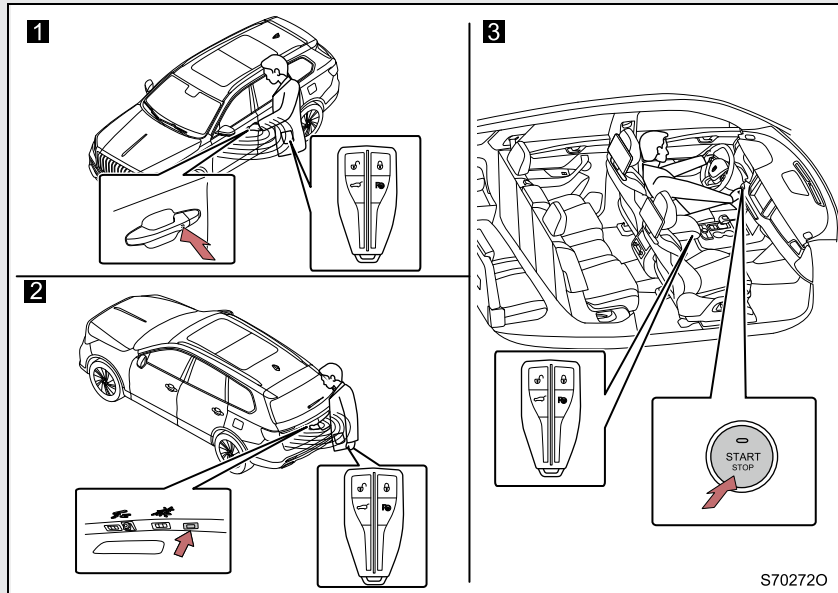
- It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on a slope than that on a flat road. Therefore, be careful to prevent it from being opened or closed automatically. Before using the trunk, please confirm the trunk lid is fully opened and fixed.



- Be careful to close the trunk lid to avoid the finger or other body part being trapped.

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid Passive entry & start system*

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the smart key or card key with yourself (in pocket). (The driver should always carry the key.)

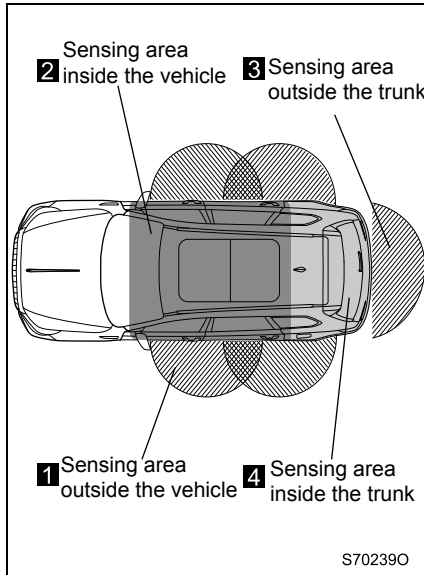


Note: This figure only takes the smart key as an example.

- 1** Lock and unlock the doors. (See P.73)
- 2** Unlock the trunk lid. (See P.230)
- 3** Start the engine. (See P.115)

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

■ Effective range (areas within which the smart key can be detected)



Effective range of the smart key antenna:

Hemispheric area with the antenna as the center and the radius of 1.2m.

1 When locking or unlocking the doors

The smart key can lock or unlock the door when it is in the range of the sensing area outside the vehicle.

2 When starting the engine or changing the engine switch modes

If the smart key is within the range of the sensing area inside the vehicle, the engine can be started or the switch mode of the engine can be switched.

3 When unlocking the trunk

If the smart key is within the sensing area outside the trunk, the trunk can be unlocked.

4 When the smart key is left in the trunk

If the smart key closes the trunk when it is within the sensing area inside the trunk, the alarm function of the key left in the trunk will be activated. (See P.78)

■ Warning and prompting function

The system warning and prompting functions can be achieved via the multifunction display on the combination instrument and the buzzer, hazard warning lamp and engine switch status indicator lamp.

- When any warning lamp is on
Adopt corresponding measures according to the lit-up warning lamp. (See P.351)
- When the warning information is displayed
Adopt corresponding measures according to the warning information displayed on the multifunction display of the combination instrument.

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

■ Conditions affecting operations

The passive entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control from operating properly.

- When the key battery is low.
- When the key battery is depleted.
Replace the battery when necessary. (See P.337)
- Near a TV tower, power plant, filling station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- When carrying portable radio, mobile phone, cordless telephone or other wireless telecom equipments.
- When the key is in contact with, or is covered by metal objects.
- When multiple smart/card keys are in the vicinity.
- When carrying or using the smart key together with the following devices that emit radio waves.
 - Another vehicle's smart key
 - Wireless remote control key that emits radio waves
 - Personal computers
- If sunvisors with metal contents or metal objects are attached to the rear windshield.
- When the following metal objects touch or cover the key.
 - Cards with aluminium foil
 - Cigarette case with aluminium foil on the inside
 - Metallic wallet or bag
 - Coins
 - Metallic hand warmer
 - Media such as CD and DVD
- Another vehicle's smart key (emitting radio waves) is used near the vehicle.
- When the key is near a battery charger or an electronic device.

■ To operate the system properly

- Make sure to carry the key when operating the system. Do not get the key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
- Depending on the specific positions and holding gestures of the key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly.

■ Safety features

- Turn off the engine switches, close all the doors, trunk lids and engine compartment covers. If any valid key is not recognized for a time, the car will be automatically locked.
- When any door, trunk lid or engine compartment cover is not closed, the car will be automatically locked after closing the opened door, trunk lid or engine compartment cover immediately via a smart or remote-control lock.

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

- With remote or smart unlocking, the vehicle can be automatically locked for a while if the door or trunk lid is not opened.
- **When the vehicle is not driven for a long period**
 - To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not place the key too close to the vehicle.
 - When the vehicle is not driven for a long period, it must be locked. Otherwise, the battery may be discharged
- **If the passive entry & start system does not operate properly**
 - Lock and unlock the doors: using the mechanical key. (See P.367)
 - Start the engine. (See P.368)
- **Remarks of passive entry & start function**
 - Even when the key is within the effective range (sensing areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases.
 - The key is too close to the window or the door exterior handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
 - When operating the engine switch, the key is placed on the left rear side of driver's seat or right rear side of front passenger's seat.
 - When the key signal is disturbed by other items, the car can't recognize the key normally.
 - As long as the smart key or card key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by any one. Please keep the key properly.
 - The passive entry may become inoperable if large amount of water splashes on the door handle (such as in a car wash or in heavy rain).
 - If you suddenly approach the car or quickly pull the door handle, the door may not be unlocked. At this time, return the door handle and pull it again.
 - The doors may not be locked in the following situations.
 - The smart key or card key is still in the compartment when pressing the lock sensing area of door handle to lock the door.
 - When locking the doors by carrying the key outside the vehicle without turning off the engine switch.
 - When any one of the doors is not completely closed.
 - When the shift lever is not in "P".

3-2. Opening, Closing and Locking the Doors and Trunk Lid

CAUTIONS

■ Notes regarding the electronic devices interference

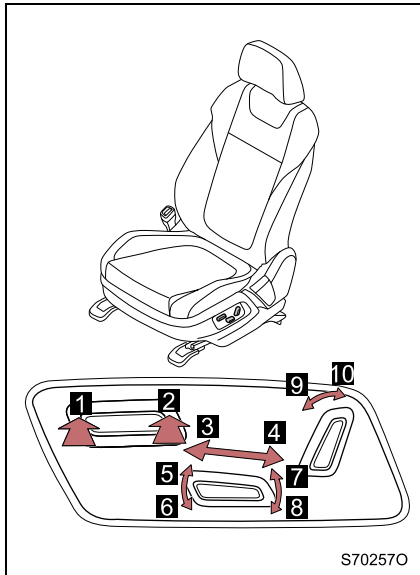
People with implanted pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implanted cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a proper distance from the passive entry & start system antennas.

- The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. For the details of the radio waves frequency and emitting time, please consult the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer. Then consult your doctor about whether it can be normally used.
- People with other electronic medical devices, rather than implanted pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implanted cardioverter defibrillators, should consult the device manufacturer about the effects of radio waves on the device operation.
- Radio waves could have unpredictable effects on the operation of such medical devices.
- For details of the passive entry & start system, please consult the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

3-3. Seat adjustment Front seats

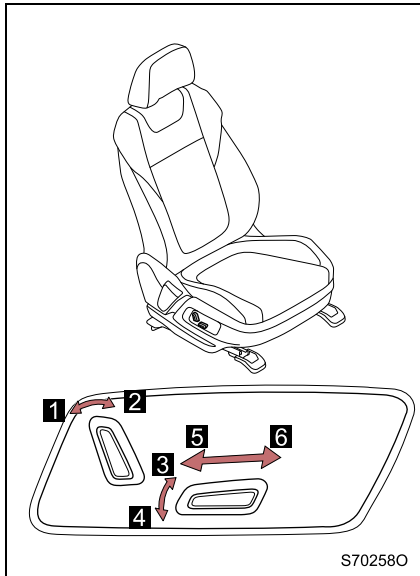
Adjustment steps

► Driver side seat



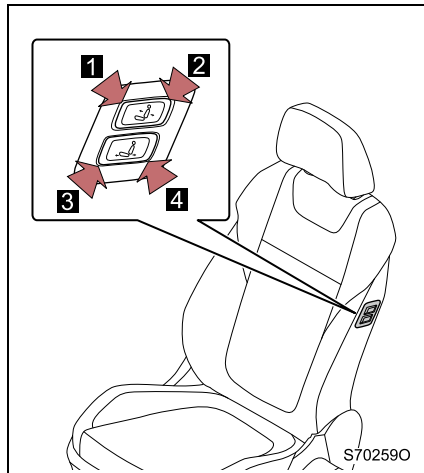
- 1 Lumbar support convexed
- 2 Lumbar support concaved
- 3 Seat moving forward
- 4 Seat moving backward
- 5 Front end of seat going up
- 8 Front end of seat going down
- 7 Seat going up
- 6 Seat going down
- 9 Backrest erecting upright
- 10 Backrest inclining backwards

► Front passenger seat



- 1 Backrest inclining backwards
- 2 Backrest erecting upright
- 3 Seat going up
- 4 Seat going down
- 5 Seat moving backward
- 6 Seat moving forward

- Driver seat (rear empty button) -suitable for operation of passengers in the second row



- 1 Backrest erecting upright
- 2 Backrest inclining backwards
- 3 Seat moving forward
- 4 Seat moving backward

CAUTIONS

■ Seat adjustment

- When the vehicle is moving, do not over-tilt the seat to prevent the body from slipping out of the lap belt. If the seat is over tilted, the lap belt may slide over the hip and directly squeeze the stomach or the shoulder belt may also strike the neck. This increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.
- Do not place your hand under the seat or near the moving part to avoid injury.
- Otherwise the finger or hand may be trapped by the seat mechanism.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure other passengers will not be injured in this process.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat.
- This is very dangerous. It may cause serious injuries once the child's hand or foot is trapped.
- It is necessary to stop the vehicle properly before adjusting the driver seat.
- It is very dangerous to adjust the driver seat while the vehicle is moving. It may cause a loss of vehicle control, resulting in an accident.

■ Seat retrofitting

- Retrofitting or replacing the front seat may damage the airbag components in the seat, resulting in the improper airbag deployment in the event of a collision.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

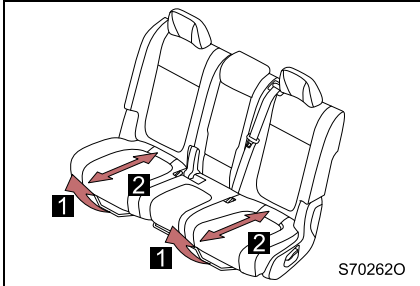
■ Seats under damage

- It is extremely dangerous to drive a vehicle with a damaged seat.
- After a collision, the seat may be damaged even if the seat airbag is not deployed. Therefore you need to contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to check the seat, seat belt pre-tensioner and airbag after each collision.

3-3. Adjusting the Seats

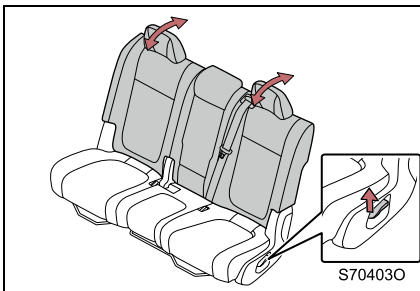
Rear seats

Forward-back adjustment of seats in the second row



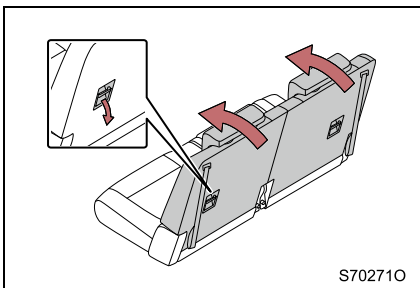
- 1 Pull the left/right forward-back adjusting lever of seats in the second row.
- 2 Move the second row of seats back and forth.

Angle adjustment and folding of seat backs in the second row



Pull the left/right back release handles of seats in the second row, and adjust the angles of seat backs in the second row back and forth.

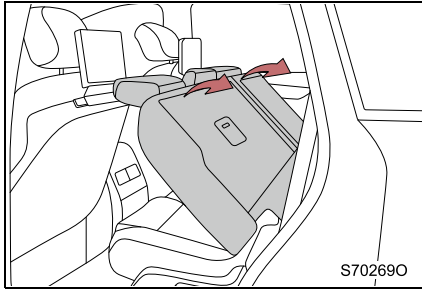
Fold the seat backs in the third row.



Pull the left/right release handles of seats in the third row, and fold the third row of seats.

The backrest is restored to the upright position

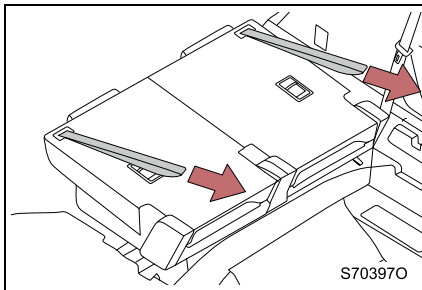
► Second-row seat



Restore the backrest to the vertical position until it clicks, then slightly shake the backrest forward and backward to ensure it is firmly locked.

Check and confirm that all seat belts are properly handled for the passengers.

► Third-row seat

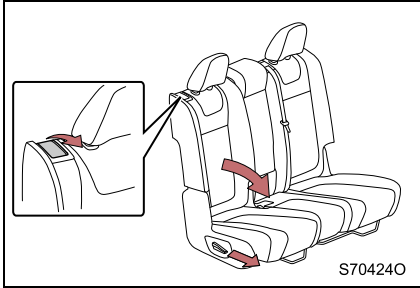


After pulling the seat shoulder straps in the third row, making the seat back return to vertical position and hearing a "click" sound, shake the seat back slightly back and forth to ensure its secure locking.

Check and confirm that all seat belts are properly handled for the passengers.

3-3. Adjusting the Seats

Move the second row of seats to enter the third row of seats*



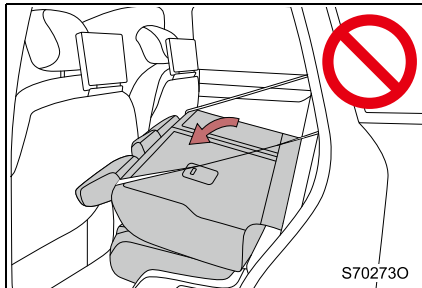
Pull the right shoulder adjusting handle of seats in the second row while folding and moving the right seats forward.

CAUTIONS

■ When folding the rear backrest

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, it may result in serious injury or even death.

- Do not fold the backrest while driving.
- Park the vehicle on a flat surface, move the shift lever to P and apply parking brake.
- Be careful to fold the rear backrest to avoid being trapped.
- Before folding the second row of seat backs, adjust the positions of front seats so that these seats can't obstruct the second row of seat backs when folding the second row of seat backs.



- Before folding down the rear backrest, it's necessary to release the seat belt buckle and restore the seat belts on both sides to the original positions. Otherwise, the seat belt, buckle and backrest may be damaged.

 CAUTIONS

■ **After folding the second row of seat backs**

- Do not allow anyone to sit on the folded backrest or in the trunk while driving.
- Do not allow a child to enter the trunk.

It is very dangerous to leave a child play in a car with a backrest folded. If the child enters the trunk and the backrest raises, the child may be trapped in the trunk, resulting in unexpected conditions.

■ **Secure the objects firmly in the trunk.**

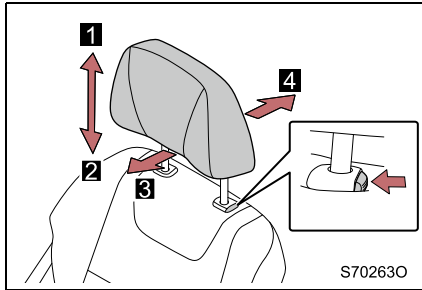
The unsecured objects and luggage can be dangerous while driving. They may move around and hamper the driving operations during an emergency braking or an accidental collision.

■ **After the backrest being restored to the upright position**

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, it may result in serious injury or even death.

- Slightly shake the backrest forward and backward to ensure it is firmly locked into position.
- Check and confirm that the seat belt is not twisted or stuck under the seat.

3-3. Adjusting the Seats Head restraints



1 Upward

2 Downward

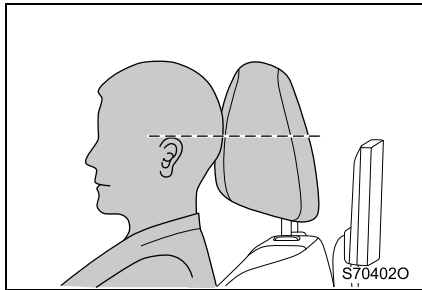
Press and hold the left lock release button while pushing the head restraint downwards.

3 Forward

4 Backward

Press and hold the left lock release button while pulling the head restraint upwards

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraint



When adjusting the head restraint, make sure its centre flushes with ear top.

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for head restraint

Please observe the following cautions about the head restraint. Otherwise it may lead to serious personal injuries, or even death.

- Use the head restraints specially designed for each seat.
- Be sure to adjust the headrest to the correct position.
- After the head restraint is removed, do not drive the vehicle.

Whenever driving the vehicle, the head restraint should be installed properly and adjusted to a suitable position. Driving a vehicle with the head restraint too low or not mounted is very dangerous. The absence of head support can cause injuries to the neck in the event of a collision.

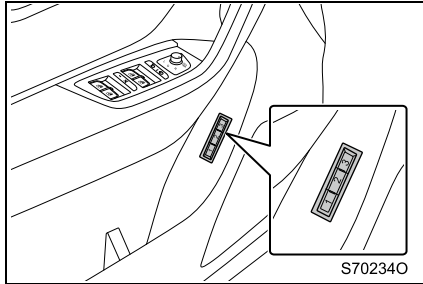
- **The seat head restraints can weaken the whiplash effect on the seat occupant, and reduce the injury on the neck of the driver or the passengers.**

3-3. Adjusting the Seats

Seat memory

It can store the information of seats, steering wheel, and exterior mirrors.

Seat memory setting



Set the memory content: After adjusting the positions of the seats, the steering wheel and the exterior mirrors, press and hold any memory button for at least 3s until the instrument sounds prompt tone, indicating the position information and current key information has been stored in this button.

Call up the memory content: Press the memory button to make the seats, the steering wheel and the exterior mirrors automatically move to the stored positions in this button.

Each key corresponds to three sets of memory positions.

■ Initialization setting

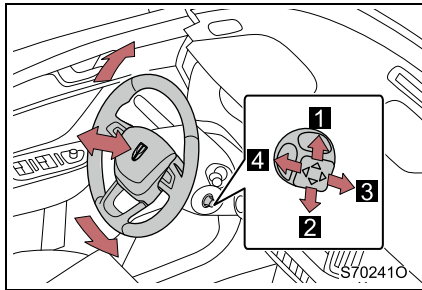
Set the engine switch to IG - ON position and press key 1 and 3 to carry out the initialization setting. After the warning speaker rings once, the initialization succeeds.

3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors

Steering wheel

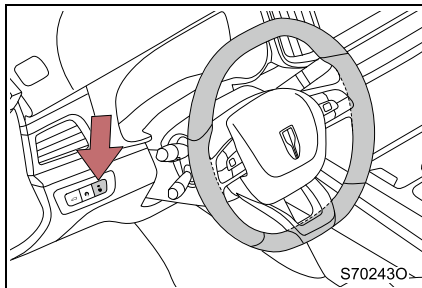
Adjust the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.



- 1 Move upward
- 2 Move downward
- 3 Forward
- 4 Backward

Steering wheel heating *



Touch the heating key on the steering wheel and the indicator lamp will be on, the steering wheel heating function will be enabled; when the key is pressed again, the steering wheel heating function will be disabled.

Seat greeting function

The greeting function consists of automatic back-off and return.

Automatic retreat: after turning off the engine switch, the steering wheel will be automatically pushed to its limit position to facilitate the driver to get off.

Automatic return: after the engine is switched on, the steering wheel automatically return to the position before the automatic back-off.

■ Seat greeting function switch

It can be set to turn on and off the greeting function in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.230)

■ When automatically backing off

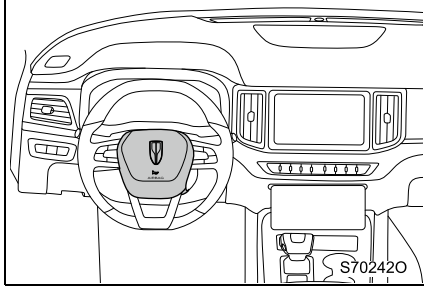
If the driver operates the steering wheel adjustment switch, seat memory button, or engine switch during seat automatic back-off, this back-off will be terminated.

■ When automatically returning

If the driver operates the steering wheel adjustment switch, seat memory button, or engine switch during seat automatic return, this return will be terminated.

3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors

Horn



To sound the horn, press on the horn mark or its surrounding area.

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions when driving

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving. Otherwise, it may cause false driver operations, potentially resulting in an accident and leading to serious or fatal injuries.
- Put hands on 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions on the outer side of the steering wheel rim when driving. Do not put both hands on 12 o'clock position or grip the steering wheel by other gestures. Otherwise, the unfolding of the air bag may result in injury to the arms and/or head of the driver.

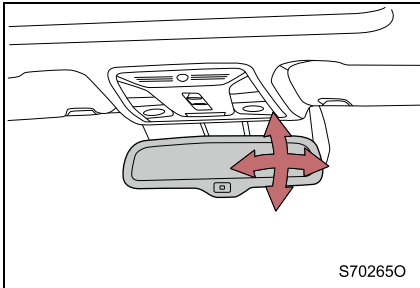
■ When adjusting the steering wheel

Keep the driver's chest at least 200 mm away from the steering wheel; never adjust the steering wheel to face the driver's face. Otherwise, the driver airbag will not provide effective protection in the event of an accident.

3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors

Anti-glare rear view mirror

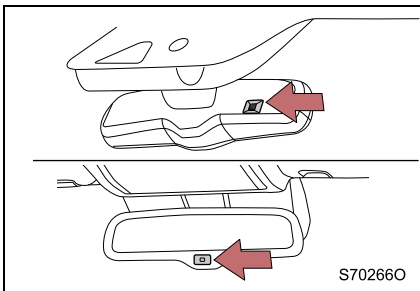
Adjusting the interior rear-view mirror



According to the driving posture, the interior rear-view mirror can be adjusted upwards, downwards, leftwards and rightwards.

The driver must adjust the mirror to a suitable position so that a good rear view can be achieved through the rear windshield.

Glare-proof function



The interior rearview mirrors have an automatic anti-glare function that detects the light intensity of cars behind your car via front and rear sensors and automatically reduces the reflection.

CAUTIONS

■ When driving

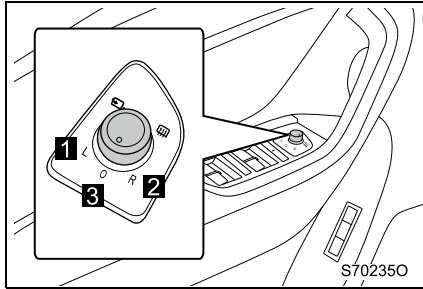
- Never adjust the position of the interior rear-view mirror when driving. Otherwise, accidents may occur due to false operations, resulting in serious injuries or even death.
- If objects stacked on the rear seat is higher than the backrest, the vision in the interior mirror can be blocked, potentially resulting in traffic accidents. Therefore, the height of the stacked objects should not exceed the backrest

3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

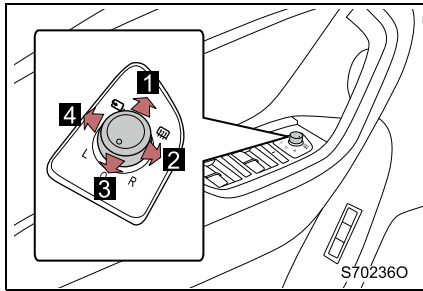
Adjusting the exterior rear-view mirrors

The exterior rear-view mirror angles can be adjusted when the engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode.



Rotate the adjustment knob to select the rear-view mirror to be adjusted.

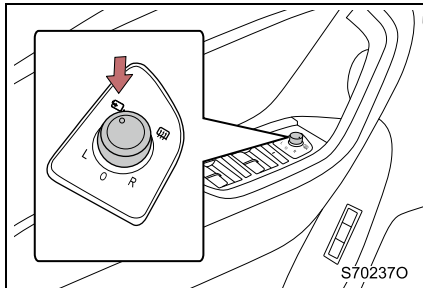
- 1** Left
- 2** Right
- 3** Close adjustment functions



Adjust the rear-view mirror

- 1** Upward
- 2** Rightward
- 3** Downward
- 4** Leftward

Fold the exterior mirrors



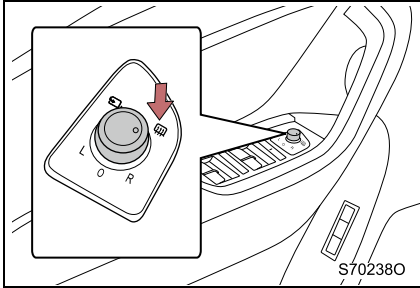
As the figure shows, rotate the adjustment knob to the mirror-folding position to fold the mirror, and rotate the knob to other positions to return the mirror to the original position.

When the car is locked, the exterior rearview mirror will automatically retract; when the engine switch is switched to "IG-ON" mode, the exterior rearview mirror will automatically extend.

The exterior rearview mirror auto folding on/off can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.227)

3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors

Exterior rearview mirror's heating



When the mirror fogs up, rotate the adjustment knob to the position with a heating label to heat the mirror.

If it is not manually turned off, the heater will automatically turn off after 10 minutes.

■ Adjusting conditions of rear view mirror angle

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode and the vehicle is in parking status.

■ Operating conditions for the exterior rear-view mirror folding and heating

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ Activating electric mode in cold weather

The exterior rear-view mirrors can freeze in cold weather. In such case, the mirrors may fail to be automatically folded and unfolded in the electric mode. In this case, remove the ice and snow from the exterior rear-view mirrors first and then manually operate the mirrors.

■ Exterior rear-view mirror memory

The exterior rear-view mirror memory activates in conjunction with the seat memory. (See P.93)

■ Automatic adjustment function of the right rear-view mirror

The driver can adjust the right mirror to a proper angle at the R gear, and store it as the target turning down position.

Selecting Reverse (R) gear causes the right exterior mirror to turn down, providing a reversing view for the driver. When the lever is moved from R, the mirror returns to the previous position.

It can be set to turn on and off the automatic adjustment function of the right rear-view mirror in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.230)

3-4. Adjusting the Steering Wheel and Rear-view Mirrors

CAUTIONS

■ When Driving

Observe the following precautions while driving. Otherwise, it may cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle and accidents to occur, resulting in serious injuries or even death.

- Always watch the surroundings before changing lanes.
It is very dangerous to change the lane without considering the actual distance to the vehicle in the exterior mirror. As the actual distance to the object is smaller than the one you see through the mirror, it may cause serious accidents.
- Do not drive when the exterior mirror is folded. Before driving, ensure to return the exterior mirror to the unfolded position.

■ When the exterior mirror moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to trap the hand with the moving mirror.

■ When the exterior mirror heaters are operating

- Do not touch the exterior mirror surface, as the mirror may become very hot and cause a scald.
- When heating is not required, turn the rear-view mirror adjustment knob to the OFF position.

■ Precautions while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

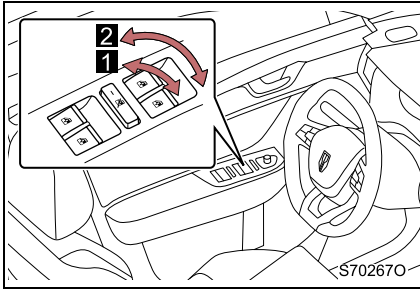
3-5. Opening and Closing the Windows

Power windows

Opening and closing the power window

■ Power window switch on the driver side

The power window switch on the driver side regulates other windows



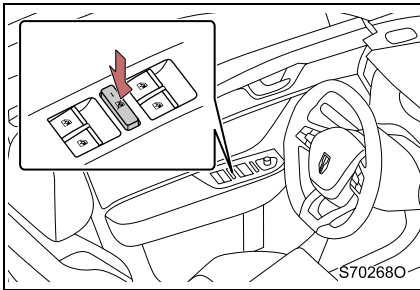
1 Manual UP/DOWN

Pull/press the level 1 on the corresponding window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/down manually.

2 AUTO UP/DOWN

Pull/press the level 2 on the corresponding window switch (release after pulling/pressing), the window will move up/down automatically.

Power window lock switch



Press this switch to disable the power window switches for rear passengers.

The power window switches on driver and front passenger sides are not regulated by the lock switch.

■ Operating condition for power windows

The engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

■ Operating power windows after turning off the engine

Within a certain period after the engine switch is turned off, the power windows can still be operated.

■ Initialisation

When the automatic up/down function fails, the window needs to be initialised. The initialisation method is as follows:

- After continuing to pull up and down the lift switch of each window, the window will automatically complete the movement to top and bottom dead centers, and then rise to the top dead center for continuous operation, thus the initialization can be completed. Don't loosen the window lift switch during the whole process, and know that the initialization is completed.

Please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer if necessary.

3-5. Opening and Closing the Windows

■ **Anti-pinch function**

When the power window is operated to rise and is interfered by obstacles, the power window will automatically move down.

■ **Remote elevating**

When all the doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" position, press and hold the lock button on the smart key within the effective range to close all the windows.

■ **Smart elevating**

When all the doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" position and a smart key or card key carried with you, you can close all the windows by touching and holding the lock induction area of the door handle.

■ **Mechanical key window riser**

When all the doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" position, you can close all the windows by locking the door with the mechanical key and holding the motion.

CAUTIONS

■ **Observe the following precautions when closing windows to avoid serious injury or even death:**

- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies pinched when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.

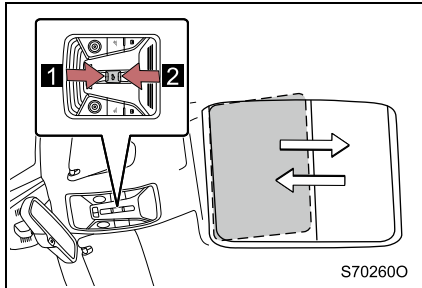
■ **Anti-pinch function**

- Never try to activate the anti-pinch function intentionally by having any body part pinched.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if something gets pinched (4 mm) just before the window fully closes.
- The initialisation is required if the power window or anti-pinch function is inoperable.

3-5. Opening and Closing the Windows Panorama sunroof*

The sunroof switch can be used to open and close the sunroof.

Opening and closing operations



1 Opening

Press the switch when the sunroof is closed, the rear part of the sunroof is tilted up and the sunshade curtain opens partially.

Press the switch when the sunroof is at a tilt-up position, the sunroof opens synchronously with the sunshade curtain.

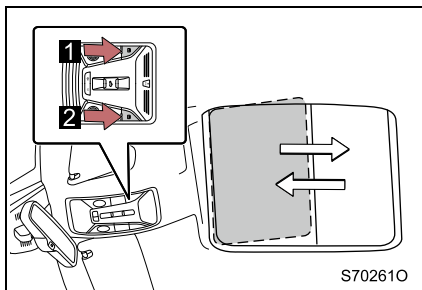
2 Closing

Press the switch when the sunroof is open, the sunroof closes.

Note: When the sunroof is opening or closing automatically, pressing the sunroof switch will stop the movement.

Press and hold the sunroof switch to manually open and close the sunroof, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

Electric sunshade curtain



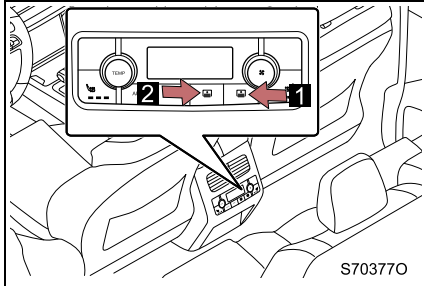
1 Opening

Press the sunshade curtain opening button to fully open the sunshade curtain.

2 Closing

Press the sunshade curtain closing button to fully close the sunshade curtain.

- ▶ Rear control button -suitable for rear passenger operation



1 Opening

Press the sunshade curtain opening button to fully open the sunshade curtain.

2 Closing

Press the sunshade curtain closing button to fully close the sunshade curtain.

Note: When the sunshade curtain is opening or closing automatically, pressing the sunshade curtain button will stop the movement.
Press and hold the sunshade curtain button to manually open and close the blind, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

■ **Operating condition for sunroof**

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ **Initialisation**

- Sunroof initialisation

When the sunroof is at incorrect positions, or the sunroof automatic function is invalid, or the conjunction function of the panorama sunroof and the sunshade curtain is valid, initialisation is needed. The initialisation steps are as follows: set the engine start switch to "IG-ON" mode and fully close the sunroof, then press and hold the sunroof switch forward and release the switch as the sunroof knocks the mechanism blocking point; immediately re-press and hold the switch until the sunroof completes the tilt-up opening, slide opening and slide closing. The initialisation is completed.

- Sunshade curtain initialisation

When the sunshade curtain is at incorrect positions, or the sunshade curtain automatic function is invalid, initialisation is needed. The initialisation steps are as follows: set the engine start switch to "IG-ON" mode and fully open the sunshade curtain, then press and hold the sunshade curtain opening button and release the switch as the sunshade curtain knocks the mechanism blocking point; immediately re-press the switch to allow the blind to perform forward closing and backward opening, and release the switch as the blind stops. The initialisation is completed.

■ **Anti-pinch function**

If the sunroof/sunshade curtain encounters obstacles during closing, the sunroof/sunshade curtain will automatically return to a safe position.

■ **Closing the sunroof with remote control**

When all the doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" position, press and hold the lock button on the smart key within the effective range to close the sunroof.

3-5. Opening and closing the windows

■ Closing the sunroof with the smart key

When all the doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" position and a smart key or card key carried with you, you can close the sunroof by touching and holding the lock sensing area of the door handle.

■ Closing the sunroof with the mechanical key

When all the doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" position, you can close the sunroof by locking the door with the mechanical key and holding the motion.

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions when opening the sunroof

Observe the following precautions when opening the sunroof to avoid serious injury:

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.

■ Precautions when closing the sunroof

Observe the following precautions when closing the sunroof to avoid serious injury:

- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies pinched when the sunroof is being closed.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

■ During the initialisation

- If the sunroof switch is released during initialisation, then this initialisation operation fails and a new initialisation operation is needed.
- Confirm all functions of the sunroof after initialization.
- If unable to finish the initialisation, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

■ Anti-pinch function

- Never try to activate the anti-pinch function intentionally by having any body part pinched.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if something gets pinched just before the sunroof fully closes.

4-1. Before Driving		
Driving a vehicle.....	106	
Goods and luggage.....	112	
Trailer towing	113	
4-2. Driving Specifications		
Engine (start) switch	114	
Transmission.....	117	
Driving mode.....	122	
Air suspension*	126	
Turn signal lamp control handle	130	
Electronic parking brake (EPB) system.....	131	
AUTO HOLD	132	
4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers		
Headlamp switch.....	134	
Intelligent high beam control (IHC) system*	136	
Fog lamp switch	138	
Rear windshield wipers and washer	139	
Rear windshield wiper and washer	142	
4-4. Filling the Fuel		
Opening the fuel tank lid	143	
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems		
Constant speed cruise control*	146	
		Adaptive cruise control (ACC) function*
		149
		Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC) function*.....
		155
		Front and rear parking radar*
		162
		Rear view camera system*
		166
		Panoramic image system*
		171
		Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS).....
		176
		LDW/LKA Lane keeping assist system*
		177
		Forward collision warning (FCW) system*
		181
		Autonomous emergency brake (AEB) system*
		183
		Blind Spot Detection (BSD)*
		186
		Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*
		189
		Auto Parking Assist (APA)*
		191
		Car recorder*
		198
		Idling start/stop system*
		200
		Driver assistance system*
		204
	4-6. Driving Information	
	Key points for driving in winter *	207

4-1. Before Driving

Driving a vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving

■ Starting the engine (See P.115)

■ Driving

Step 1 Depress the brake pedal to shift the shift lever to D. (See P.117)

Step 2 Release the electronic parking brake. (See P.131)

Step 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

Step 1 When the shift lever is at D, depress the brake pedal.

Step 2 When necessary, apply the electronic parking brake. (See P.131)
When parking intended for a long time, always shift the shift lever to P or N. (See P.117)

■ Parking

Step 1 When the shift lever is at D, depress the brake pedal.

Step 2 Change the shift lever to P. (See P.117)

Step 3 Turn on EPB. (See P.131)

Step 4 Press the engine switch to turn off the engine.

Step 5 Lock the door and make sure to carry the key with you.

Moving off on a steep uphill

If the uphill is too steep, EPB slope assist would not apply. The following procedures should be observed:

Step 1 Depress the brake pedal firmly and change the shift lever to D.
Make sure the gear indicator displays D.

Step 2 Release the electronic parking brake.

Step 3 Release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

■ **Moving off on a steep uphill**

The Hill-start Assist Control System (HHC) will be automatically activated to prevent the car from sliding. (See P.230)

■ **ESS emergency brake reminder function**

When the speed reaches the designed speed, if emergency braking is applied, the brake lamp flashes quickly to remind the rear vehicle until the brake pedal is released.

■ **Driving in the rain**

- When it rains, please drive carefully because of poor visibility, foggy windows and slippery roads.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an express way in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, hampering the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Running in your new vehicle**

In order to prolong the service life of the vehicle, it is recommended that you observe the following precautions:

- Within the initial 1,000 km:
 - Avoid sudden stops.
 - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
 - Avoid sudden acceleration.
 - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
 - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Driving your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant regulations of the country and make sure of the availability of the correct fuel.

4-1. Before Driving

CAUTIONS

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle stops with the engine operating. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ Precautions during driving

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the locations of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
 - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in serious injury or death.
- Drive with caution when reversing although the vehicle is equipped with reversing camera system and parking radar system.
- When reversing, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Even if you move the vehicle slightly, you must maintain the correct driving posture in order to accurately depress the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. In case of emergency, the response may be delayed if your left foot is used to step on the brake pedal, potentially resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
- The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot, and may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not move the vehicle backward when the shift lever is in the forward gear or the P gear or forward when the shift lever is in Gear R or P, otherwise it may cause accidents or damage to the vehicle.
- If exhaust gas is smelt inside the vehicle, open the windows.
- Large amounts of exhaust gas in the vehicle can result in a serious health hazard, and even cause an accident.
- Do not change the shift lever to P, R or N while the vehicle is running, otherwise it will seriously damage the transmission and may cause the vehicle out of control. Do not change the shift lever to N while the vehicle is running, otherwise the engine braking function may not work properly, resulting in accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving.
 - If the engine is not running, the steering and brake boosters will not work normally.
- Please use the engine brake (downshift) function to maintain a safe vehicle speed when going down a steep slope.
 - Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness.
- When the vehicle is parked on an inclined road surface, please confirm that the slope is suitable for the EPB function, otherwise please depress the brake pedal and apply the electronic parking brake to prevent the vehicle from moving forward or backward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the interior or exterior rear-view mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in serious injury or death.

 **CAUTIONS**
■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire spinning and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- The sudden changes in engine speed (e.g., engine braking caused by a downshift) may cause the vehicle to spin, thus causing an accident.
- After driving past a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brake is functioning properly. Wet brake linings may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brake linings on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may also be affected, resulting in an accident.

■ When operating the shift lever

Be careful not to operate the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not run the engine at high speeds.
If the vehicle is in a gear other than P or N, the vehicle may suddenly speed up unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine on for a long time.
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check if exhaust gas enters the interior of the vehicle.
- Make sure the electronic parking brake functions normally. Otherwise always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the engine is operating to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle creeping.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, lighters, sprayers or soft drink cans in the vehicle at high temperature, otherwise the following accidents may occur.
 - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
 - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
 - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electronic components.
- Always apply the electronic parking brake, change the shift lever to P, turn off the engine, and lock the vehicle.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is operating or immediately after turning the engine off. Doing so may cause burns.
- Never keep your engine running in any place which has deep snow or where snow is falling.
- If the vehicle gets stuck in snow pack while the engine is operating, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle. This may lead to a serious health hazard.
- Avoid engine idling at a high speed.
- Running the engine at a high speed when the vehicle is stopped may lead to overheating of the exhaust system, thus leading to a fire if there are inflammable material near the vehicle.

4-1. Before Driving



CAUTIONS

■ Exhaust gas

- Exhaust gas contains colorless, odorless, hazardous carbon monoxide (CO). Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to a serious health hazard or even death.
- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle. This may lead to serious health hazard or even death.
- The exhaust system should be checked from time to time. If there are small holes or cracks due to corrosion, damaged joints or abnormal exhaust noise, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for check and repair.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally change the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle, which may lead to serious health hazard or even death.

■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
- Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side.
- The parking brake may not be able to firmly stop the vehicle.
- If the brake assist function does not operate properly, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid long downhill or sharp turns.
- In this case, depressing the brake pedal requires more force than usual. The braking distance may also increase. Braking distance may also increase.
- Do not depress the brake pedal repeatedly if the engine stalls. Each time the brake pedal is depressed, some pressure for brake assistance will be consumed.


NOTICES
■ While driving

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time; otherwise it will restrict the engine output.
- Do not simultaneously depress accelerator pedal and the brake pedal to stop the vehicle on a slope.

■ When parking

Always change the shift lever to P when parking the vehicle for a long time. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to creep or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and keep it in the utmost positions for a long time, otherwise the power steering system will be damaged.
- When driving on a bumpy road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Please hold on to the steering wheel and slowly depress the brake pedal to reduce the speed of the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace the flat tire with a new one.

- When encountering flooded roads

Please do not drive on roads with deep water, otherwise the vehicle may suffer the following serious damages.

- Engine stalling
- Short circuit in electrical components.
- Engine damage caused by water immersion.

Please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible to have your vehicle checked for the following items when water goes into your vehicle after driving on roads with water.

- Brake function.
- Engine oil and transmission oil.
- Wheel hub bearing, propshaft, drive shaft and suspension.

4-1. Before Driving

Goods and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions for goods and luggage.

- Try your best to store the goods and luggage in the trunk.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Place the weight in the front of the vehicle as much as possible to help maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

CAUTIONS

■ Items that must not be carried in the trunk

The following items may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- A container containing petrol.
- Aerosol cans.

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions to avoid serious injury or even death:

- Do not put goods or luggage in the following positions, otherwise the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal may not work normally due to the goods jamming, and they may block the driver's view or hit the driver or passengers, thus causing an accident.
 - At the feet of the driver
 - Front passenger seat or rear seat (when stacking items)
 - Instrument panel
- Secure all items in the passenger compartment, as they may move and injure someone in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Do not store poorly sealed liquid containers in the trunk.

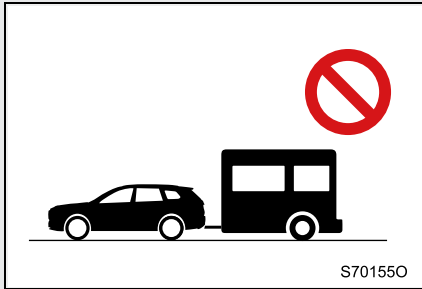
■ Load and distribution

- Don't overload the car.
- Ensure to arrange the cargo uniform

Improper prevention can cause poor steering or brake control performance, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

4-1. Before Driving Trailer towing

FAW recommends you not to tow the trailer by your vehicle, neither install towing device or tow wheel chair, small motorcycle and bicycles via towing device. Your vehicle is not designed as a towing trailer, or the carrier installing the towing device.



4-2. Driving Specifications

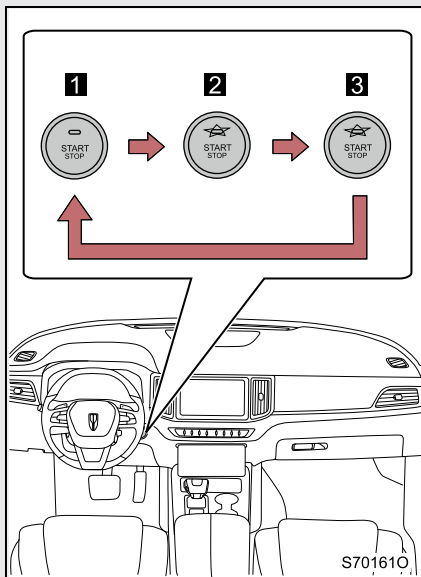
Engine (start) switch

Start the engine or switch the engine (start) switch mode when carrying the smart key or card key with you.

- Switch the engine (start) switch mode.

When the brake pedal is released, the switch mode can be switched by pressing the engine (start) switch.

(Each time the switch is pressed, the mode will be switched accordingly)



1 OFF Mode^{*1}

Lamp horns, position lamps and hazard warning lamps can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components (e.g. audio system) can be used.

The engine (start) switch indicator lamp turns yellow.

3 IGNITION ON Mode

All electronic components can be used.

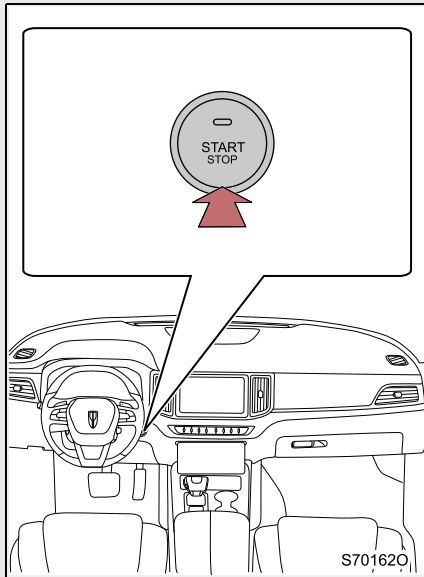
The engine (start) switch indicator lamp turns yellow.

*1: Before turning off the engine, the shift lever should be at P.

- Starting the engine

Step 1 Check and confirm that the shift lever is at P or N, and the electronic parking brake has been applied.

Step 2 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.



Press the engine (starting) switch to start the engine (the engine (starting) switch indicator turns green).

The engine can be started in any mode of the engine (start) switch.

- Shut down the engine

Step 1 Stop the vehicle completely.

Step 2 Change the shift lever to P.

Step 3 Apply the parking brake. (See P.131)

Step 4 Press the engine (start) switch to stop the engine and the switch indicator lamp goes out.

- If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may have not been deactivated. (See P.49)

- When the engine "START STOP" switch indicator flashes**

There may be a problem with the system. Please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for a check of the vehicle.

- Key battery energy loss**

(See P.71)

4-2. Driving Specifications

- **When the key battery is low**
(See P.368)
- **Conditions affecting operation**
(See P.83)

CAUTIONS

■ **When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. When starting the engine under any circumstances, do not depress the accelerator pedal, otherwise it may cause accidents, causing serious injuries or even death.

■ **Precautions when driving**

When driving the vehicle, if you want to forcibly shut down the engine in case of emergency, press and hold the engine switch until the engine is shut down.

Do not touch the engine switch while driving unless in an emergency. If the engine stops while driving, this could lead to an accident.

NOTICES

■ **To prevent the battery depletion**

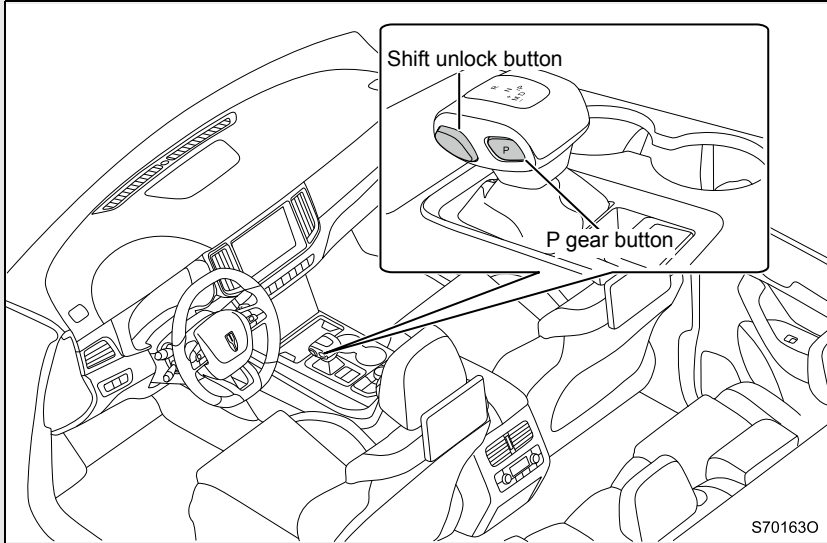
- Do not place the engine switch in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode for a long time without the engine running.
- When the driver leaves the vehicle, he/she should lock the vehicle and carry the key with him. Do not leave the smart key or card key in the vehicle to prevent the continuous operating of passive entry and the starting system, resulting in insufficient battery power.

■ **When starting the engine**

- Do not make the cold engine run at high speeds.
- If the engine is difficult to start or flames out frequently, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer to check the vehicle immediately.

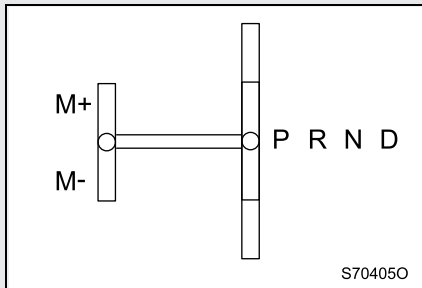
4-2. Driving Specifications Transmission

Select a gear position appropriate for driving conditions.



Gently operate the shift lever and ensure correct shifting.
Release the gear lever to reset each time after the gear shift.

- Move the shift lever.



The right rail is in auto mode and has two sections of travel in front and back directions.

The left rail is in manual mode and has one section of travel in front and back directions.

Move the shift lever left and right to switch between these two modes. Switch to manual mode only when the gear is in D position.

4-2. Driving Specifications

■ Gear switch

After starting the engine, operate as follows.

- P switched to D: Press the brake pedal, press the release button, and operate the shift lever down to the first or second stroke.
- P to N: depress the brake pedal, press the unlocking button and operate the gear lever upward to the first section of travel.
- P to R: depress the brake pedal, press the unlocking button and operate the gear lever upward to the second section of travel.
- N to D: with the vehicle still, operate the gear lever downward to the first or second section of travel *.
- N to R: with the vehicle still, press the unlocking button and operate the gear lever upward to the first or second section of travel *.

*: if the stop time in N gear is more than 1s, depress the brake pedal to shift the gear; if the stop time in N gear is less than 1, the brake pedal need not be depressed.

- D switched to N: Operate the shift lever up to the first stroke.
- It can't be switched when the car speed is greater than 60km/h (km/h).
- D to R: depress the brake pedal until the vehicle becomes still, press the unlocking button and operate the gear lever upward to the second section of travel.
- D switched to M: Operate the shift lever to left to the left track.
- M switched to D: Operate the shift lever to right to the right track.
- R to N: Operate the shift lever down to the first stroke.
- R to D: depress the brake pedal until the vehicle becomes still and operate the gear lever upward to the second section of travel.
- N/D/R to P: depress the brake pedal until the vehicle becomes still and press P key. When selecting a gear, ensure the gear displayed on the instrument cluster is the required one.

■ Gear functions

Gear position	Function
P	Parking
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Driving
M+	Manually up-shifting
M-	Manually down-shifting

Shift descriptions

- ▶ P (parking) gear
P gear can lock the transmission and prevent the wheel spinning.

 CAUTIONS

■ **When operating the shift lever for the first time**
The car adopts an electronic shifting mechanism, which needs to be operated according to the gear position information indicated on the multi-function display of combination meter and the operating instructions for above-mentioned gear positions, and can't be operated by feeling consciousness to avoid danger.

■ **Ensure to shift to P gear and apply the parking brake**
It is highly dangerous to shift to P gear without applying the parking brake. If P gear cannot completely fix the vehicle, the vehicle will move and consequently initiate an accident.

- ▶ R (Reverse) Gear
With R gear engaged, the vehicle can only move backward.
- ▶ N (Neutral) Gear
In N gear, the transmission is not locked. To park on a gentle slope, depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake parking brake; otherwise the vehicle may slide.
- ▶ D (Forward) Gear
D gear is the normally used gear and controls the vehicle to run forward, shown as D.
In sport mode, it is shown as S; in economic mode, it is shown as E.

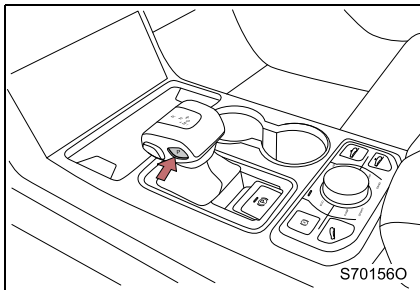
4-2. Driving Specifications

▶ M (manual) gear

M gear is the manual shift mode. M gear can only be shifted from D gear. When the current gear is D, move the gear lever leftward and then M gear range is achieved. Moving the gear lever or operating the gear shift paddle can gear up or down between M1 and M8.

P gear button

■ When switched to P gear



Using P gear key can switch to P gear. When the car speed is lower than 2km/h (km/h), press P gear button.

When the gear position is switched to P gear, the gear position displayed on the combination meter is P gear.

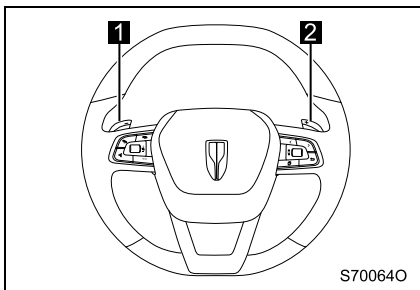
If the car speed is higher than 2km/h (km/h), you can't switch the gear to P position.

■ When switched from P position to other gear positions.

- Operate the shift lever by pressing the release button while pressing the brake pedal with force. If the shift lever is operated without the brake pedal pressed down, the shift operation will be prohibited.
- When switching the gears, make sure that the gears on the combination instrument are displayed as the desired gears.

Change the shift range in manual mode

▶ Shift up and down via steering wheel shift paddles*

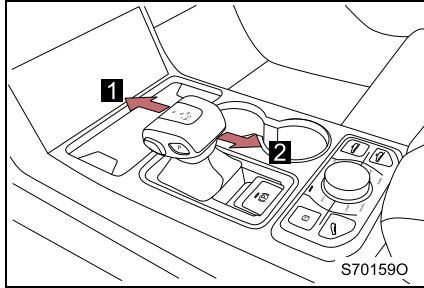


1 Up-shifting

2 Down-shifting

The selected gear will be displayed on the instrument cluster multi-function display.

- ▶ Shift up and down through the shift lever



1 Up-shifting

2 Down-shifting

The selected gear will be displayed on the instrument cluster multi-function display.

■ Temporary manual mode

In D gear, turning the gear shift paddle can access the temporary manual mode to achieve the functions of overtaking, powered slope climbing and engine braking etc. Long pressing the gear up paddle for 2s will exit the temporary manual mode or the vehicle can automatically exit the temporary manual mode according to the working conditions.

■ The car will automatically switch to P position under the following conditions

- When the engine switch is placed at "IG-OFF" mode, the car will automatically switch to P position when it's not in N position.
- When the car speed is lower than 2km/h (km/h), the car will switch to P position if the driver unlocks the seat belt, releases the brake pedal and opens the door.

■ Gear limit (at manual mode)

To protect the engine and transmission, the gear positions are limited according to engine speed during manual shifting. Therefore, in some cases, though the gear lever is operated, the gear cannot change; or the transmission will automatically gear up or down while there is no manual shift.

■ In case of stopping the car when the gear position is in M position.

- Once the car is stopped, the transmission will automatically shift down to M1 or M2.
- In M position, you can choose M1 or M2 for starting.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

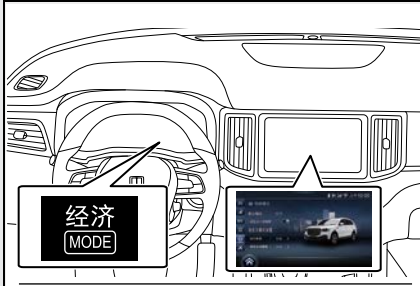
Take care in the abrupt acceleration and deceleration; otherwise it may result in the lateral sliding or wheel spinning.

4-2. Driving Specifications

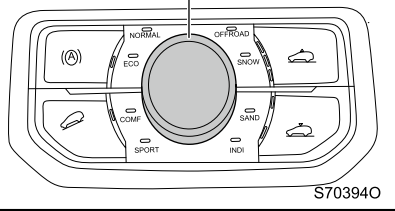
Driving mode

The car is equipped with a driving mode switching system that provides different driving modes. The car has unique driving performance at different modes to meet the driver's driving needs.

■ Driving mode selection



Driving mode selector knob



Rotate the driving mode selector knob to select the desired target driving mode. During the switching process, the mode indicator flashes; after successful switching, the target driving mode indicator is always on, and the combination meter displays the current driving mode.

■ Driving mode memory

The previous selection of memory can be set in the car sound system. After confirming the memory of previous gear selection, the car will remember the previous selected driving mode when the car is again powered on. (See P.230)

■ Working conditions for driving mode system

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

AUTO Qicai mode*

At Qicai mode, the car can recognize the terrain changes and automatically select the appropriate driving mode to help the driver in handling the complex terrain changes. The comfort mode is selected by default after entering Qicai mode. According to the terrain changes, it can be automatically switched between comfort, off-road, sand and snow modes.

NORMAL (standard mode)*

At standard mode, all the car performances are defaulted and suitable for driving on common urban pavements.

- Driving characteristics in snow mode:
 - The power system performs standard power output.
 - Its drive type is AWD mode.

SPORT (sport mode)

At sport mode, the car has good power and is suitable for driving on highways.

- Driving characteristics in sport mode
 - Fast acceleration and strong power output.
 - Its drive type is AWD mode.
 - Strong steering feeling.
 - For cars with air suspension, the car height is automatically adjusted to dynamic height.
 - For cars equipped with CDC dampers, the damper is relatively hard and strong in road feeling.

COMF (comfort mode)

At comfort mode, the car has good comfort and is suitable for driving on the common urban pavement.

- Driving characteristics in comfort mode:
 - Smooth power system output.
 - Its drive type is AWD mode.
 - For cars with air suspension, the car height is automatically adjusted to normal height.
 - For cars equipped with CDC dampers, the damper is relatively soft and comfortable.

4-2. Driving Specifications

ECO Mode

Under the economy mode, the car has good economy and is suitable for driving on the common urban pavement. The defaulted driving mode of car is economy mode.

- Driving characteristics in economy mode:
 - The transmission uses a fuel-efficient shifting strategy.
 - The drive type is forced to 2WD mode.
 - For cars with air suspension, the car height is automatically adjusted to dynamic height.
 - For cars equipped with CDC dampers, the damper stiffness is defaulted and its road feeling is relatively balanced.

OFFROAD (Off-road mode)

The off-road mode is suitable for driving on the urban highway shoulder and gentle off-road.

- Driving characteristics in off-road mode:
 - The power output is gentler to prevent false triggering of big throttle.
 - The drive type is forced to 2WD mode.
 - For cars with air suspension, the car height is automatically adjusted to off-road height 2.
 - For cars equipped with CDC dampers, the damper is relatively hard and strong in road feeling.

Note: When the car speed exceeds 40km/h (km/h), you can't switch the car to off-road mode.

SNOW (snow mode)

The snow mode is suitable for driving on low-attached roads, wet grass, and gravel roads after snowing.

- Driving characteristics in snow mode:
 - The power output is gentler to prevent false triggering of big throttle.
 - The drive type is forced to 2WD mode.
 - For cars with air suspension, the car height is automatically adjusted to off-road height 1.

SAND (sand mode)

Sand mode is suitable for driving on soft sand or deep gravel roads, deep mud and deep snow, etc.

- Driving characteristics in sandy mode
 - Strong power output, and the transmission shift point is in high speed range.
 - The drive type is forced to 2WD mode.
 - For cars with air suspension, the car height is automatically adjusted to off-road height 2

INDI (custom mode)

In order to meet the individual driving needs, the driver can also choose a custom mode in addition to the above driving modes. The car offers a variety of driving mode combinations, and the driver can select the desired driving mode in the car setting interface of multimedia display.

■ Working status for driving mode system

After selecting the driving mode, the driver can know the current working conditions of driving mode system through the information displayed on driving mode selection switch indicator and combination meter.

- The target driving mode indicator flashes for a while and then goes out. It indicates that the target driving mode can't be entered when the original mode indicator lights up, and the combination meter display shows that the target driving mode information can't be entered.
- The target driving mode indicator lights up, and the combination meter displays the target driving mode information, indicating that the target driving mode has been successfully switched.

NOTICES

- **Don't use special driving modes (e.g. off-road mode, squat mode, sand mode) on common urban pavements or highways. These driving modes are designed for special road conditions. If the car is used on the above road surface for a long time, there will be a risk of damage to its drive system.**
- **Precautions when switching the driving modes**
 - To ensure safe driving, please switch the driving mode while parked.
 - The driving mode switching system has a self-protection function to avoid the activation of driving mode, which can lead to the car damages and affect its driving safety in a working condition that doesn't satisfy the corresponding driving mode. Therefore, when the driver switches the driving mode, the target driving mode can't be activated. This situation may be caused by the self-protection function of system.
 - If the driving mode system still can't work normally when the working conditions for driving mode is satisfied, please contact China FAW authorized Red Flag dealer to inspect the car immediately.
 - The driving mode is only a driving assist system and can't replace the driver's judgment on the driving environment. The driver must always maintain the car control and bear full responsibility for car.

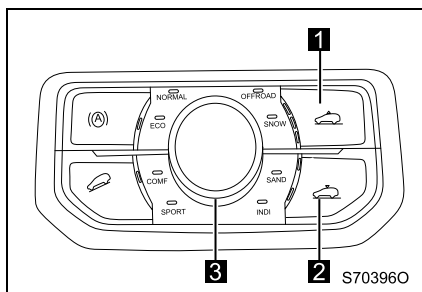
4-2. Driving Specifications

Air suspension*

By adjusting the air suspension, the car can maintain at different height levels, thus creating different ground clearances.

Adjusting the air suspension

Start the engine, close all the doors and trunk lids, operate the up/down button or driving mode selector knob, and then the height of car height will be adjusted. After its adjustment is completed, the combination meter and button indicator will display the corresponding height level.



- 1** Air suspension rising button
- 2** Air suspension lowering button
- 3** Driving mode selector knob

Air suspension height level

- Off-road height 2 (+60mm (mm)): The height set for off-road conditions like slow-moving over obstacles and wading, etc is also the maximum height that the car can reach. Standard settings for off-road driving mode and sand driving mode. In order to protect the related parts of air suspension, this height should not be used for a long time.
- Mode for entering Off-road height 2:
 - When the car speed is less than 20km/h (km/h), switch the driving mode to off-road or sand mode.
 - When the car height is at off-road height 1 and the car speed is less than 20km/h (km/h), touch the up button.
- Mode for exiting Off-road height 2:
 - After adjusting the driving mode to snow, comfort, sport or economy mode, the car height exits off-road height 2 .
 - Touch the down button and the car height drops to off-road height1.
 - The car speed is greater than 40km/h (km/h) and the car height is reduced to off-road height 1.
 - The car automatically drops to a normal height after it's powered off.
- Off-road height 1 (+25mm): Standard setting for snow driving mode.
- Mode for entering Off-road height 1:
 - When the car speed is less than 60km/h, switch the driving mode to snow mode.

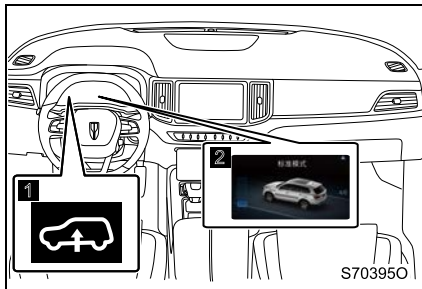
- When the car height is at off-road height 2, press the down button; when the car height is at normal height and the car speed is less than 60km/h (km/h), touch the up button.
- The car height is reduced to off-road height 1 when its height is at off-road height 2 and the car speed is greater than 40 km/h.
- Mode for exiting Off-road height 1:
 - After adjusting the driving mode to off-road, sand, comfort, sport or economy mode, the car height exits off-road height 1.
 - Touch the down button to lower the car height to normal height; the car speed is less than 20km/h,
 - Touch the up button to enter off-road height 2.
 - When the car speed is greater than 80km/h (km/h), the car height is reduced to normal height.
 - The car automatically drops to a normal height after it's powered off.
- Normal height (0 mm): Standard setting for comfort driving mode.
 - Mode for entering normal height:
 - When the car speed is less than 100km/h, switch the driving mode to comfort mode.
 - When the car height is at off-road height 1, press the down button; when the car height is at dynamic height and the car speed is less than 100km/h (km/h), touch the up button.
 - “The car height is at off-road height 1 and the car speed is greater than 80km/h (km/h); when the driving mode is at any mode other than sport or economy, the car height is at dynamic height, and the car speed is less than 70km/h. And the car height rises to the normal height when the time exceeds 120s (seconds).”
 - Mode for exiting normal height:
 - After adjusting the driving mode to off-road, sand, sport or economy mode, the car height exits off-road height .
 - When the driving mode is in sport or economy mode, press the down button, and the car height is reduced to the dynamic height; when the driving mode is in a mode other than sport and economy, and the car speed is greater than 35km/h (km/h), the car height will be reduced to dynamic height after touching the down button; when the car speed is less than 60km/h, press the up button to rise to off-road height 1.
 - When the car speed is greater than 120km/h (km/h) and the time exceeds 30s (seconds), the car height is reduced to dynamic height.
- Dynamic height (-15mm): Standard setting for sport driving mode and economy driving mode.
 - Mode for entering dynamic height:
 - After switching the driving mode to sport or economy mode, the car height enters the dynamic height.
 - When the driving mode is at sport or economy mode and the height is at normal height, the car height is reduced to the dynamic height after pressing the down button; when the driving mode is at the mode other than sport and economy, the car height is at normal height, and the car speed is greater than 35km/h. The car speed is reduced to dynamic height after pressing the down button.
 - When the car height is at normal height, the car speed is greater than 120km/h (km/h) and the time is over 30s (seconds), the car height drops to dynamic height. Seconds), the vehicle height drops to a dynamic height.
 - Mode for exiting dynamic height:

4-2. Driving Specifications

- After adjusting the driving mode to off-road, sand, snow or comfort mode, the car height exits the dynamic height.
- When the car speed is less than 100km/h, touch the up button to enter the normal height.
- When the driving mode is at a mode other than sport or economy, the car speed is less than 70km/h (km/h), and the time exceeds 120s (seconds), the car height rises to normal height; when the car speed is greater than 160km/h (km/h) and the time is more than 20s (seconds), the car height drops to highway height.
- Highway height (-30mm): suitable for high-speed driving and improving car stability.
 - Mode for entering highway height:
 - When the car speed is greater than 160km/h (km/h) and the time exceeds 20s (seconds), the car height is reduced to highway height.
 - Mode for exiting highway height:
 - When the car speed is less than 130km/h and the time exceeds 20s (seconds), the car height rises to dynamic height.

System working conditions

During the adjustment of suspension, the air suspension up/down indicator flashes in the combination instrument. After completing the adjustment, the air suspension up/down indicator is off, and the display shows the current height level.



- 1 Air suspension up/down indicator
- 2 Air suspension height level

■ During the adjustment of suspension

- If the engine switch is turned off during suspension adjustment, its adjustment will be immediately interrupted. After restarting the engine, the suspension will be automatically re-adjusted to the previously set target height.
- After turning off the engine switch at off-road height 2 or 1, the suspension will be automatically adjust to normal height.
- You can adjust the car to the selected height level only when the current speed doesn't exceed the speed limit at selected suspension height. For example, if you select off-road height 2, the speed should be lower than 20km/h.

⚠ CAUTIONS

- **When the air suspension system fails, the alarm lamp in the combination instrument will light up and be accompanied by corresponding prompt information.** It may result in accidents and personal injury to ignore the alarm lamp and prompt information.
If the air suspension system fails, please contact China FAW authorized Red Flag dealer to inspect the car immediately.

 **NOTICES****■ Suspension height level can't be adjusted normally.**

When the user selects a certain driving mode, the air suspension system will judge whether to respond to the request according to current driving conditions, in order to ensure the safety of car. When the system determines that the current working condition can't satisfy the adjusting conditions, it's normal that the suspension won't be adjusted.

Lifting mode

The car has a lifting mode. If it's necessary to lift a single wheel or whole car, it should enter the lifting mode. After entering the lifting mode, all the air suspension adjusting functions are disabled. After finishing the maintenance, the car must exit the lifting mode.

■ Entering the lifting mode

After placing the engine switch at "IG-ON" mode, while holding the air suspension up and down buttons for more than 3s (seconds), the air suspension lifting mode indicator of combination instrument will light up and the air suspension will manually enter the lifting mode; the system can also automatically recognize and enter the lifting mode. When the car (single wheel or whole car) is lifted, the combination instrument indicator lights up and the system automatically enters the lift mode.

■ Exiting the lifting mode

After placing the engine switch at "IG-ON" mode while holding the air suspension up and down buttons for more than 3s (seconds) or the car speed is more than 5km/h, the car exits the lifting mode, and the combination meter indicator goes off.

Note: It's recommended to enter and exit the lift mode in manual mode.

Loading mode

The car has a loading mode capable of reducing the height of car and facilitates loading and unloading of cargo.

■ Enter the loading mode

When all the doors are closed and EPB is activated, if pressing and holding the air suspension decrease button for more than 3s, the turn signal will flash and the vehicle will enter the loading mode. When the vehicle is automatically decreased to the loading height, the turn signal will be turned off. If the pressing and holding the unlock button and the trunk cover opening button on the remote key at the same time, the vehicle can also enter the loading mode.

■ Exit the loading mode

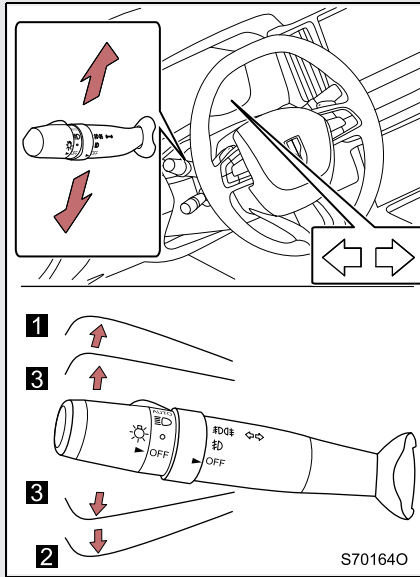
When all doors are closed, EPB is activated, the engine is started, if pressing and holding the air suspension increase button for more than 3s or when the vehicle speed is greater than 5km/h, the vehicle will automatically exit from the loading mode.

 **NOTICES****■ Precautions about use of the load mode**

- When using the load mode, there should be enough space under the vehicle.
- When the heavy items are loaded into or removed from the trunk, the body may be further decreased or increased. It may cause the damage to the body or the opened trunk cover.

4-2. Driving Specifications

Turn signal lamp control handle



1 Right turn signal lamp

2 Left turn signal lamp

3 Comfort flicker

When the control handle is toggled to the non-self-locking position once, the left/right turn signal lights will blink three times; when the control handle is continuously toggled to the non-self-locking position, the left/right turn lights will continue flashing until the control handle is released.

■ Turn signal lamps can be operated when

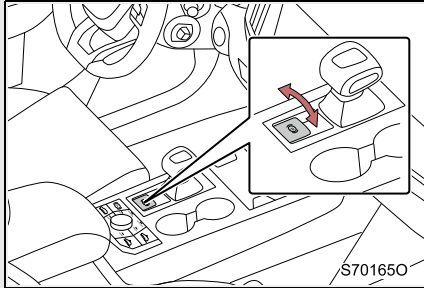
The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ Turn signal lamp and hazard warning lamp control

When the turn signal lamp is on, press the hazard warning lamp switch and the turn signal lamps on the left and right sides will flash at the same time. Press the hazard warning lamp switch again to return to the working state as the turn signal lamps.

When the hazard warning lamp is on and the engine switch is placed in the "IG-ON" mode, turn on the turn signal lamp and the turn signal lamp will work, and the hazard warning lamp will stop working. Turn off the turn signal lamps and return to the working state as the hazard warning lamp.

Electronic parking brake (EPB) system



Applying the EPB electronic parking brake (the indicator on)

After depressing the brake pedal to confirm that the vehicle is stationary, lift the electronic parking brake switch upward and apply the electronic parking brake.

Release the EPB electronic parking brake (the indicator off)

After the engine switch is placed in the "IG-ON" mode or the engine is started, depress the brake pedal and press the electronic parking brake switch to release the electronic parking brake.

■ Other functions of EPB

- Slope moving-off assist: When the electronic parking brake is applied, the driver fastens the seat belt, and when the vehicle moves off, the system will automatically release EPB according to the torque balance principle, so that the vehicle will not slide on the slope and start smoothly.
- Electronic deceleration control: When the vehicle is running, lift up the EPB switch and the vehicle will brake until it stops.

■ Auto parking upon power off

- When the vehicle is parked and the engine switch is turned off, EPB will be automatically applied.
- The on/off of auto hold upon power-off can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.227)

■ Automatically release the parking brake

- When applying the electronic parking brake, if the driver fastens the seat belt, closes the door, places the shift handle in D position, and depresses the accelerator pedal, EPB will be automatically released.

⚠ NOTICES

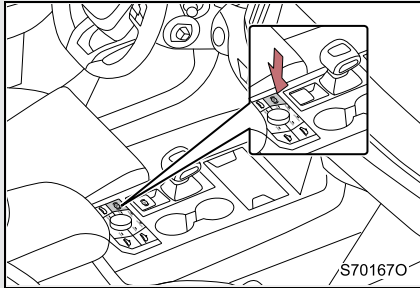
■ Precautions before driving

- Release the electronic parking brake completely. In the event of a failure (e.g. an electrical failure), the rear brake disc locked by the EPB can only be unlocked mechanically. It is recommended that you contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for the operation.
- When the EPB is not released, the red indicator lights up. Driving the vehicle now will cause the brake components to overheat, which will affect the brake performance and aggravate the brake wear.
- If the road condition is not suitable for parking, the multi-function display of the combination instrument will prompt "too steep to park".

4-2. Driving Specifications

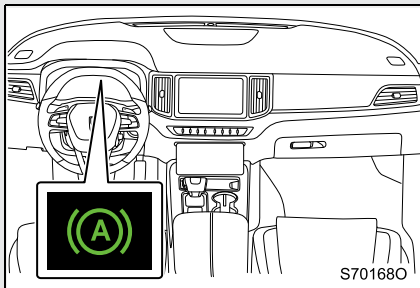
AUTO HOLD*

When the Auto Hold function is ready, the automatic parking function will be activated when the brake pedal is depressed. Release the brake pedal, and the vehicle will remain braked. When the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever at D or R, the system will release the Auto Hold to realize a smooth move-off.



Auto Hold ready state

Press the Auto Hold button, and the Auto Hold function will be ready and the button indicator will light up.



Auto Hold ready state

Press the Auto Hold button, and the Auto Hold function will be ready and the button indicator will light up.

Activating the Auto Hold

When you depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and release the brake pedal afterwards, the Auto Hold will be activated. At this time, the Auto Hold indicator lights up on the multi-function display of the combination instrument.

■ AUTO HOLD

- Step down the brake pedal and press the Auto Hold button again to turn off the Auto Hold function of the vehicle.
- The automatic vehicle hold function may not stop the vehicle when on a steep slope. In that case it is necessary to apply manual braking.
- Auto Hold can also serve as a slope moving-off assist function.
- After AUTO HOLD is activated 3min approximately, EPB will take over AUTO HOLD.

■ **Operating conditions**

Conditions for activating the Auto Hold:

- Close all doors.
- Driver wears the belt.
- Start the vehicle and press the Auto Hold.
- Driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle is stopped, and then releases the brake pedal.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **When parking on slippery road surfaces**

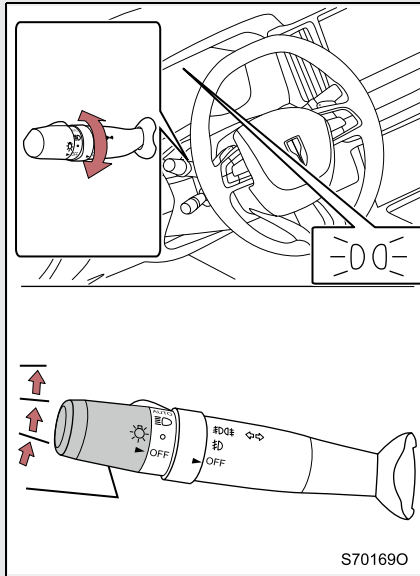
If the tire grip ability is exceeded, AUTO HOLD function cannot stop the vehicle. Do not use this system on the slippery road surface.





 **NOTICES**

■ **When parking**

AUTO HOLD cannot be used for the long time parking. To park for long time, apply EPB. In AUTO HOLD, if the engine switch is turned to IG - OFF, the brake will be released and the vehicle may move. To shut down the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, apply EPB and shift the gear to P.

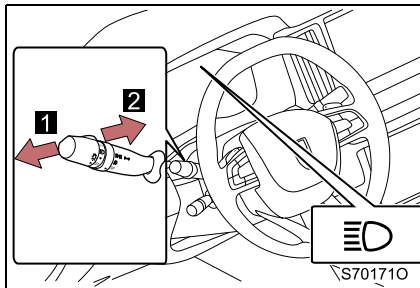
4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers Headlamp switch



-  Front position lamp, rear position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlights illuminate.
-  Headlamps (dipped beam) and all the above lamps illuminate.
-  Headlamps (dipped beam) and position lamps and license plate lamp automatically turn on and off.
-  Off.

Note: when the switch is at Auto, if headlamps, position lamps and license plate lamps are off, the daytime running lamps will turn on.

Turning on the high beam



- 1** When the headlamp (dipped beam) is turned on, push the lamp control handle forward to turn on the high beam; Pull the handle back to its original position to turn off the high beam.
- 2** Pull backward the lamp control handle to turn on the high beam; releasing the lamp control handle to turn off the high beam.

4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers

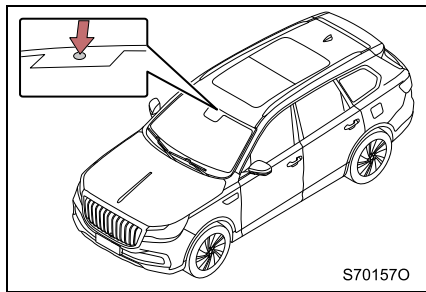
■ Daytime running lamp system

During daytime driving, in order to make it easier for other drivers to see your car, as long as the engine is started and the position lamp is turned off, the daytime driving lamp will automatically turn on.

It can be set to turn on and off the daytime running lamp in the vehicle setting of the audio system.

(See P.226)

■ Rain & lamp sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object blocks the sensor, or anything affixed to the windshield blocks the sensor.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the ambient lamp intensity and may cause the automatic headlamp system and automatic wiper malfunctions.

■ Automatic adjustment system of headlight beam height

The head lamp beam height automatic control system can automatically adjust the height of head lamp beam according to the occupant number, vehicle load and road environment to prevent the head lamp interfering with other road users.

Off-vehicle lighting system

When the engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode and the light switch is in the automatic light position, if the low beam, position light and license plate light are turned on, and the engine switch is switched to "IG-OFF" mode, the light will automatically turned off after a period of time.

The on/off of lighting upon boarding and lighting time can be set in the vehicle setting of audio system. (See P.230)

4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers

Intelligent high beam control (IHC) system*

The intelligent high-beam control (IHC) function is used for the automatic switching between low and high beams based on the surrounding road conditions. When the vehicle speed is greater than 40km/h, the intelligent high-beam control is activated, and the intelligent high-beam indicator of the combination instrument lights up ; when the vehicle speed is less than 25km/h, the intelligent high-beam control stands by and the intelligent high-beam indicator goes out.

IHC On and Off

It can be set to turn on and off the intelligent high beam system in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.226)

Operating conditions of IHC

Start the engine, place the headlamp switch to AUTO, the high beam switch handle to High Beam Off, and the automatic lamp control turns the dipped beam on, then the IHC system is started.

Conditions under which the high beam is automatically turned on or off

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beam will automatically turn on:
 - The vehicle speed is higher than 40km/h.
 - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
 - There is a vehicle in front without headlamps completely on or tail lamps completely on.
 - Few street lamps are turned on ahead.
- When any one of the following conditions are met, the high beam will automatically turn off:
 - The vehicle speed is lower than 25km/h.
 - The area in front of the vehicle is not dark.
 - There is a vehicle in front with its headlamps completely on or tail lamps completely on.
 - A number of street lamps are turned on ahead.

4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers

- Under the following circumstances, the system may not be able to accurately detect the ambient brightness level, which may cause the intelligent high-beam control system not to work properly. In this case, please switch between high beam and dipped beam manually.
 - The rain & lamp sensor or the camera of advanced driver assistance system fails.
 - The windshield is blurred by moisture, ice, dirt, etc.
 - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
 - Due to fog, heavy rain, snow and other reasons, the horizon ahead is not clear.
 - The camera becomes deformed or dirty.
 - The camera temperature is extremely high.
 - The ambient brightness is equivalent to the brightness of the headlamp, tail lamp or fog lamp.
 - Headlamps or tail lamps of the front vehicle are off, dirty, decolored, incorrect in alignment, or there is only one bulb working.
 - When driving through an area with intermittent changes in brightness.
 - Frequent or repeated driving on uphill and downhill roads, bumpy roads or uneven roads (e.g. stone paved roads, gravel roads, etc.).
 - Frequent or repeated turning operations or driving on winding roads.
 - There is a highly reflective object, such as a sign or mirror, in front of the vehicle.
 - The back end of the vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
 - The headlamp of the vehicle is damaged, dirty, or misaligned.
 - When the opposite vehicle turns off its headlamps and turns on the fog lamps.
 - The vehicle tilts due to flat tires, towing a trailer, etc.
 - The high beam and the dipped beam are repeatedly switched in an abnormal way.
 - There is a lamp in front of the vehicle similar to a headlamp or tail lamp.
 - When there is lamp reflection on the road such as wet, snow and ice roads.

CAUTIONS

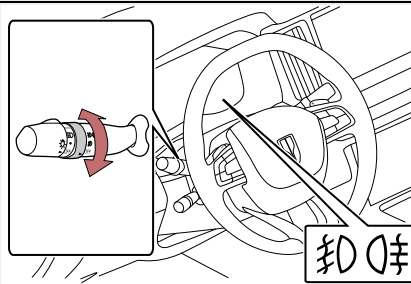
■ Limitations of automatic high beam

Don't rely on automatic high beam. Be sure to drive safely and observe the surrounding environment. If necessary, turn the high beam on or off manually.

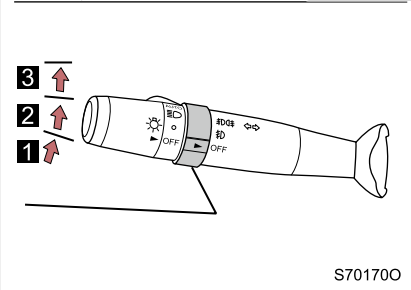
4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers

Fog lamp switch

The fog lamps improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in the rain and fog.



- 1 Closing
- 2 Turn on front fog lamps
- 3 Turn on both front and rear fog lamps



S701700

■ Operating conditions of fog lamps

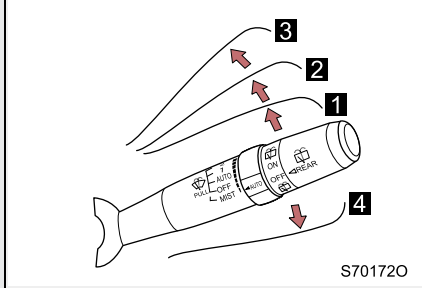
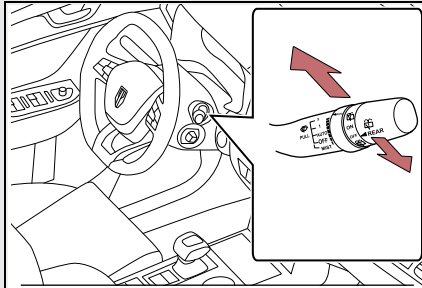
The engine switch is placed in the IG-ON mode, and the headlamps are turned on.

■ Corner lamp

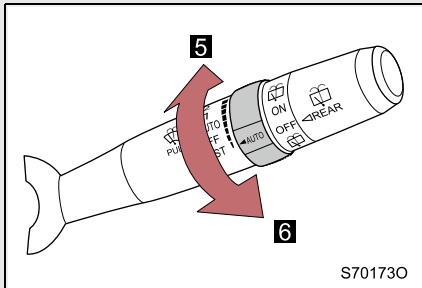
When the vehicle is running at low speed with low beam on, if the driver operates the turn lamp switch or steering wheel to turn, the corresponding side front fog lamp will automatically illuminate to help the driver. In R gear, if the driver operates the turn lamp switch, both sides front fog lamps will be on to enhance the lighting around the vehicle.

4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers Front windshield wipers and washer

When the wiper control handle is at Auto, if the rain is detected by the lamp & rain sensor, the wiper will automatically function. The system automatically adjusts the wiper speed according to rain volume and vehicle speed.



S701720



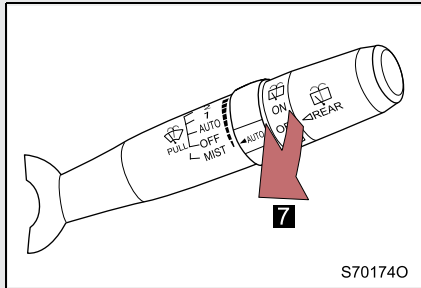
S701730

- 1** AUTO—automatically adjusts the wiper speed based on rainfall.
- 2** Position 1- low speed
- 3** Position 2- high speed
- 4** MIST—one wiping cycle at low speed.

When the engine compartment cover is opened, the wipers will not operate even if the control lever is pulled manually.

- 5** Rain sensing sensitivity.
(the automatic wiping interval becomes longer)
- 6** Rain sensing sensitivity.
(the automatic wiping interval becomes shorter)

4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers



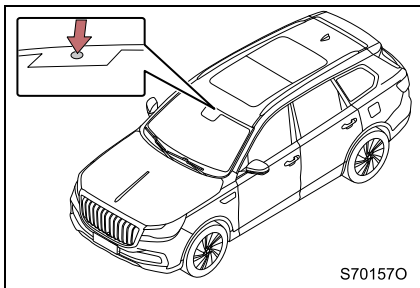
7 Cleaning/wiping operation

Pull back the wiper control lever for cleaning the front windshield.

■ Operating conditions of front windshield wiper and washer

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode and the engine compartment cover is closed.

■ Rain & lamp sensor



The lamp & rain sensor identifies the amount of rain.

■ Front windshield glass cleaning

The wiper arm is integrated with a nozzle. In order to prevent sight obstruction and save washer liquid, only a section of the wiper will spray water during the movement.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprayed out

Check if there is wash fluid in the windshield washer fluid tank.

Check and confirm if the washer nozzle is not blocked.

■ If the front windshield wiper blade should be replaced

- The wiper can be set to the service position in the audio system settings (see Page 231).
- If turning off the engine switch and switching the wiper control handle to MIST position within 10s, the wiper can be set to the service position.
- When the wiper is in the service position, if operating the wiper control handle to a non-MIST position or close the wiper service position in the audio system settings, the wiper will exit from the service position.

 CAUTIONS■ **Warnings regarding the use of front windshield wipers in AUTO mode**

At the AUTO mode, if you touch the sensor, forcibly pull the interior rear-view mirror, or the windshield bears strong shake (for example, by forcibly striking the windshield), the windshield wiper may accidentally move. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become pinched in the windshield wipers.

■ **Precautions when using the cleaning solution**

In cold days, do not use the cleaning solution before the windshield warms up. Otherwise the cleaning solution may ice up on the windshield and reduce the visibility. Otherwise it may cause accidents, causing serious injuries or even death.

■ **The cleaning solution tank can only use the windshield cleaning solution**

It is very dangerous to use the radiator anti-freeze solution as cleaning solution. If it is sprayed onto the windshield, it will pollute and windshield and interfere with the line of sight or even result in an accident.

■ **In the frosting days, use the windshield cleaning solution mixed with anti-freezing protective agent**

It is very dangerous to use the windshield washing agent without anti-freezing protective agent in frosting days. Because the solution may ice up in the windshield, interfere with the line of sight and consequently result in an accident. In addition, before injecting the solution, ensure to heat the windshield with the defroster.

■ **Replace the wiper blade in time.**

Using the worn or dirty wiper blade will reduce the legibility of front visual field and impact the driving safety. Therefore, ensure to replace the damaged or worn wiper blade or that cannot clean the windshield in time.

 NOTICES■ **When the rear windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ **If no washer fluid sprays from the nozzle**

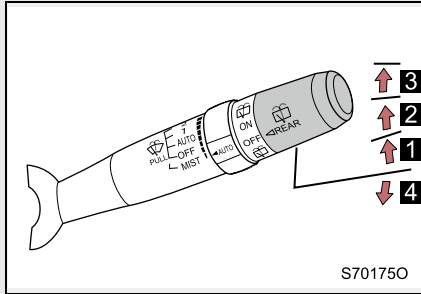
It may cause damage to the washer fluid pump if the lever is pulled and held toward you.

■ **When a nozzle blocked**

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

4-3. Operating the Lamps and Wipers Rear windshield wiper and washer

Rotating the rear windshield wiper control lever to different position can operate the wiper and cleaner:



- 1** Off.
- 2** Rear wiper ON.
- 3** Cleaning operation.
When the control handle is released, the wiper will be automatically restored to the original position.
- 4** Cleaning/wiping operation.
After the lever is released, it will automatically restore to the OFF position.

■ Operating conditions of rear windshield wiper and washer

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ R gear auto wiping

With the front windshield wiper running, if R gear is engaged, the rear windshield wiper will automatically start.

The automatic operation of the rear wiper can be set in the audio system settings. (See P.227)

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprayed out

Check if there is wash fluid in the windshield washer fluid tank. Check and confirm if the washer nozzle is not blocked.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ Do use the windshield cleaning solution with above 10% ethanol.

In the hot environment, the windshield cleaning solution with ethanol content more than 10% can corrode the tail fancy lamp and cause the lamp cracking.

⚠ NOTICES

■ When the rear windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ If no washer fluid sprays from the nozzle

It may cause damage to the washer fluid pump if the lever is rotated to the cleaning position and held toward you.

■ When a nozzle blocked

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

4-4. Filling the Fuel

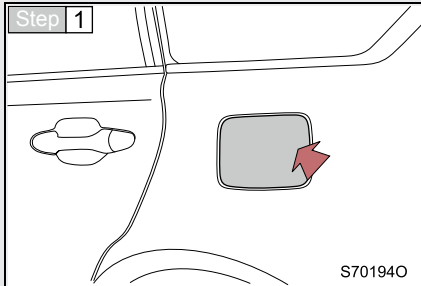
Opening the fuel tank lid

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank lid.

■ Before filling fuel

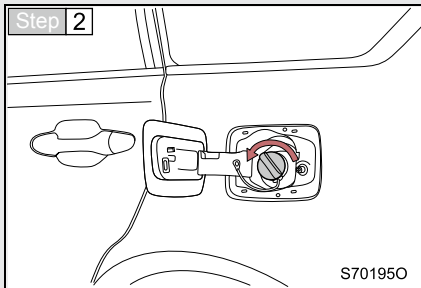
Depress the brake pedal, place the shift lever to the P position, apply parking brake, close the engine switch, and ensure that all doors and windows are closed.

■ Opening the filler cap

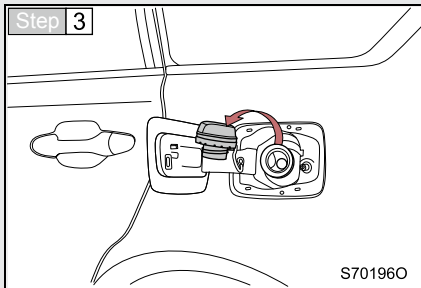


Press the filler cap and open it.

The filler cap can only be opened when the entire vehicle lock is unlocked.



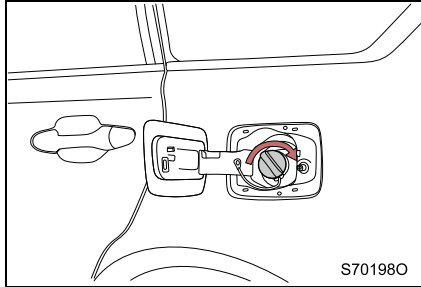
Turn counterclockwise to open the fuel tank lid.



Hang the fuel tank lid on the back of the filler cap.

4-4. Filling the Fuel

Closing the fuel tank lid



When reinstalling the fuel tank lid, it should be screwed until you hear a “click” sound.

- **Fuel type**


Use only RON 95 and above unleaded petrol.

- **Fuel tank capacity**

About 75L.

- **When failing to open the filler cap**

In the event of failure to open the filler cap due to low battery power or other reasons, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.

 **CAUTIONS****■ Filling fuel**

Observe the following precautions while refuelling the vehicle:

- Before opening the filler cap and the fuel tank lid, discharge any static electricity arising from contacting vehicle body and other metal parts. The sparks resulting from static electricity may cause fire resulting in burns.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- When opening the fuel tank lid, hold tight the lid and turn it slowly to remove it. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound vanishes before removing the cap.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel because the fuel contains harmful substances.
- Do not smoke or use cell phone while refuelling the vehicle, or else it may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not touch other people or objects with static electricity, otherwise it may cause static electricity to accumulate and ignite the fuel.
- Observe all the precautions announced in the gas station.

■ Precautions when replacing the fuel tank lid

Do not use products other than the original fuel tank lid provided by FAW, otherwise it may lead to poor sealing and further resulting in accidents.

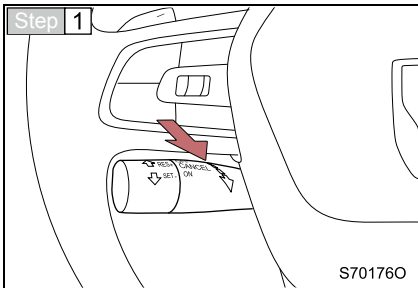
 **NOTICES****■ Filling fuel**

When filling, do not spill the fuel, otherwise it may damage the vehicle, for example, causing the exhaust system failure or damaging the fuel system components or body paint.

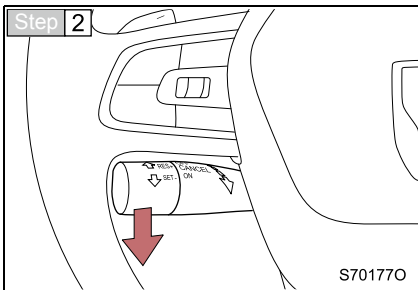
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Constant speed cruise control*

Use the constant speed cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal. The maximum set speed is no greater than 130km/h.

Setting the constant speed cruise

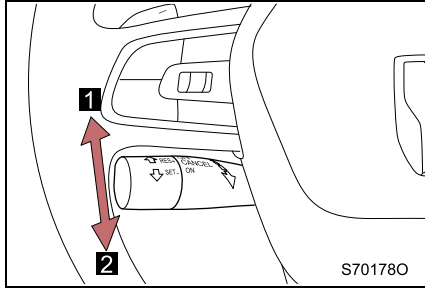


Pull the cruise control handle back to set it to "ON" position.



If accelerating or decelerating the vehicle to the required speed, and then pushing the cruise control handle down to "SET-" position, the current speed can be set to the cruising speed.

■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



1 Increasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once increases the speed by 2km/h;

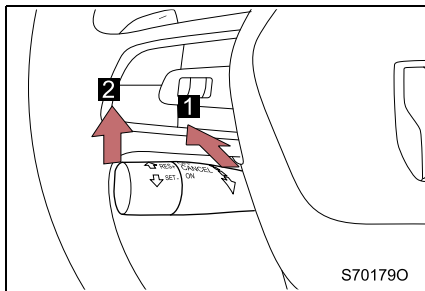
Long pushing: Increasing the vehicle speed in a linear way. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multi- function display screen of the combination instrument is the target speed.

2 Decreasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once decreases the speed by 2km/h;

Long pushing: Decreasing the vehicle speed in a linear way. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multi- function display screen of the combination instrument is the target speed.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Cancel

Push the cruise control handle forward to the "CANCEL" position and release it to cancel the cruise control.

The cruise control could also be canceled when

- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The shift lever is switched to N.

2 Resume

To resume the cruise control and return to the set speed, push the cruise control handle up to the "RES+" position and release.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D or M.
- Vehicle speed is above 25km/h.

■ If the cruise control indicator lamp flashes

- Deactivate the constant speed cruise function, and then reactivate it again. If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have your vehicle checked by the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

During the cruising process, the accelerator pedal can be depressed to increase the speed, such as for overtaking. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will automatically be returned to the set cruise speed.



CAUTIONS

■ **When setting the cruise speed, to ensure the driving safety, do not set the speed more than 130km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise function at high speed.**

■ To avoid activating the cruise control by mistake

When this function is not in use, the control handle should be placed in "OFF" position.

■ When adjusting the speed

Drive with caution when long pressing cruise control lever to adjust the speed.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic.
- On roads with sharp bends.
- On winding roads.
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
- On steep hills.

■ **The driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the constant speed cruise control system. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals while in constant speed cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle.**

■ **The constant speed cruise control system is only a driving assist system. Do not depend on it more than necessary. Drive with caution if necessary.**

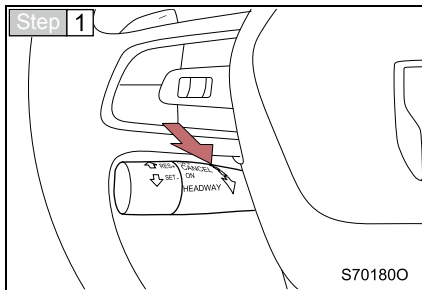
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) function*

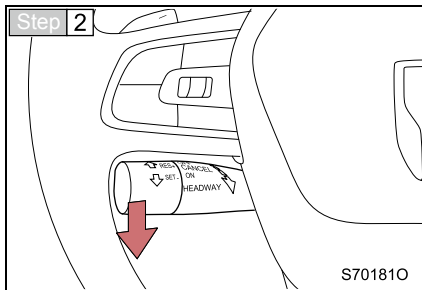
ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) can comprehensively control speed and distance of target vehicle to lighten the burdens and increase the comfortableness of the driver within a speed range of 0~130km/h. In addition, the system can also automatically switch between CCS and ACC (Adaptive Control System) depending on whether there is a moving vehicle in front. Due to complicated actual driving environments, under certain circumstances the driver can intervene at any time as required, actively control the distance with the target vehicle. If necessary, ACC will remind the driver by sound and lamp warning.

When ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) detects that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance becomes shorter than the set value, the vehicle automatically decelerates; when the vehicles ahead accelerate or drive away, the vehicle accelerates to the set cruise speed.

Setting the adaptive cruise control



Pull the cruise control handle back to set it to "ON" position.

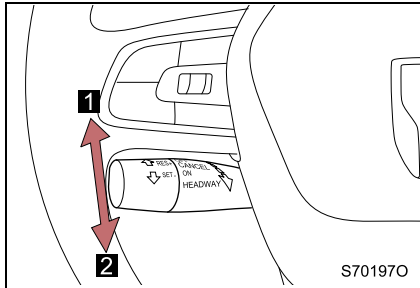


When the white adaptive cruise indicator is turned on, if accelerating or decelerating the vehicle to the required speed and pulling the cruise control handle to "SET-" position, the green adaptive cruise indicator will be turned on and the current speed can be set to the cruise speed.

When the current speed is lower than 30km/h, the set speed should be 30km/h.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



1 Increasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once increases the speed by 5 km/h;

Long pushing: After the system confirms the long pushing is valid, the speed continues to increase by 1 km/h.

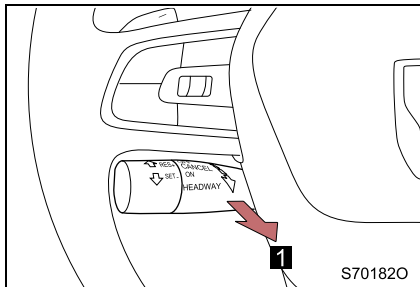
2 Decreasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once decreases the speed by 5 km/h;

Long pushing: After the system confirms the long pushing is valid, the speed continues to decrease by 1 km/h.

Note: If the currently set vehicle speed does not meet the multiple of 5 in the case of short pushing, the speed will automatically become a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

■ Setting the headway



1 Set the distance to the front vehicle

If pulling the cruise control handle backward to “HEADWAY” position, the distance to the front vehicle can be set.

There are four distance modes in the system, which can be switched by pulling the control handle in the order of 4-3-2-1-4.



1 The set cruise speed

2 ACC indicator lamp

Gray: The system is in standby and cannot meet the set conditions.

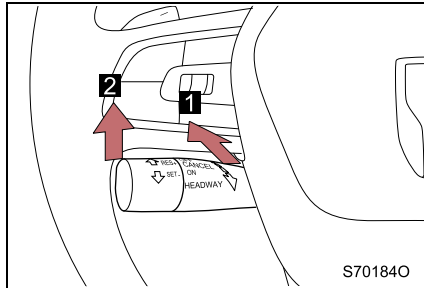
White: system enabled, setting conditions met, cruise can be set.

Green: system working, in cruise state.

3 The set headway

The default headway is “Distance 4”.

Canceling and resuming ACC

**1** Cancel

Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control handle forward to the “CANCEL” position and release it to cancel the cruise control.

2 Resume

To resume the cruise control and return to the set speed, push the cruise control handle up to the “RES+” position and release.

■ **Noise of ACC automatic deceleration**

It is normal that noise will be generated when the ACC is applying automatic deceleration.

■ **Headway**

The default headway is “Distance 4”.

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- ESC function is activated.
- Close all the doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid.
- Driver wears the belt.
- The shift lever is in D.
- The brake pedal is not depressed by the driver.
- The camera of the advanced driver assistance system is not blocked and has no fault.
- The driving mode is in snow mode or off-road mode, and sand mode.

■ **Conditions for canceling ACC**

- The driver sets the cruise control lever to CANCEL or OFF position.
- The driver depress down the pedal or press and hold the EPB button.
- Any door or engine compartment cover is opened during the driving.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt during the driving.
- The driver depressed the accelerator pedal for more than 1min.
- When there is insufficient visibility due to weather conditions.
- When the camera is exposed to the sunlight directly.
- The shift lever is switched to the position except D.
- ESC/TCS/ABS is activated.
- AEB/HDC/APA is activated.
- The driving mode is switched among snow mode, off-road mode, and sand mode.
- The related system functions are turned off.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

■ ACC system fault

Have the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer check the vehicle if a fault has occurred.

■ After turning off the IGNITION switch

When turning off the IGNITION switch, the set cruise speed or headway will be deleted.

■ Adjusting or calibrating ACC system

Adjust or calibrate the ACC in the following situations. Otherwise ACC may not function properly:

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the camera unit of the advanced driver assistance system.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.



CAUTIONS

- **When setting the cruise speed, to ensure the driving safety, do not set the speed more than 130km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise function at high speed.**
- **To avoid activating the ACC by mistake**
When this function is not in use, the control handle should be placed in OFF position.
- **Situations unsuitable for adaptive cruise control**
Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
 - In heavy traffic.
 - When in more complex road conditions.
 - On roads with sharp bends.
 - On winding roads.
 - On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
 - On steep hills.
 - Static obstruction is in the front of the driving vehicle.
 - Snow, rain, ice, fog and other weather.
 - When the road lighting is insufficient at night.
- **The driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the adaptive cruise control system. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals in the adaptive cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle. The driver shall maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**
- **ACC is only a driving assist system. If necessary, the driver shall immediately cancel ACC and drive independently. Observe local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions when using ACC.**
- **ACC may malfunction if the front windshield is modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment.**
- **Make sure to turn ACC OFF if leaving the driver seat for an extended period of time to avoid an accident.**
- **When following the target vehicle, ACC mainly controls the headway. The actual speed may be lower than the set cruise speed.**
- **Under the backlighting condition, the target vehicle recognition and distance judgment with the camera of the advanced driver assistance system may be affected, the driver should pay attention to and actively operate the vehicle if necessary.**

 CAUTIONS

- It is normal that the cruise speed icon displayed on the combination instrument multifunction display (MFD) flashes when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal.
- ACC may lose or misrecognize the target vehicle when the vehicle is in bends, lane-changing or when the front vehicle stops.
- Exercise greater caution to drive since the ACC cannot detect other sides, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects but rear of the vehicle or apply the brakes.
- Due to the ACC's limited braking capacity, there may be no time to decelerate to avoid collision with the preceding vehicle. This may happen when the preceding vehicle suddenly slows down, stops or enters your lane. In case of danger, press the brake pedal for braking actively.
- Focus all of your attention on driving and get ready to take actions and to apply the brakes.
- You need to adjust the safe interval and set the ACC system reasonably according to the front traffic volume and the current weather conditions (e.g., rain and snow). Whenever, you need to ensure that your vehicle can be decelerated to standstill within your field of vision.
- ACC can only identify the motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) that are installed with legal license plates and allowed to travel on highways. If the preceding vehicle is irregular in shape, modified and/ or covered by painting, it may not be identified by the ACC, and the pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) may not be identified, either. In this case, you should get ready to control your vehicle according to the actual situation.
- The ACC system cannot accurately determine the width of the front lane that can be passed. Therefore, when the lane in front of your vehicle's moving direction becomes narrow and you feel your vehicle cannot pass it normally, you should deactivate the ACC system immediately through braking intervention and control the vehicle by yourself.
- Do not activate ACC on a long steep slope. ACC may not detect the preceding vehicle in the same lane on a long steep slope. You usually need to control the acceleration and braking of your vehicle by yourself on a long steep slope. If the brakes are applied, ACC is canceled.
- The preceding vehicle icon on the combination instrument will be displayed if the vehicle travelling in the same direction on the same lane is detected. If the icon display does not match the actually observed situation, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle and driving it based on the actual situation.
- If you rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, ACC may not automatically apply the brakes, resulting in a collision with the preceding vehicle. In this case, exercise extreme caution.
- If a vehicle in the adjacent lanes enters the front of the direction in which your vehicle moving but it is not covered by the sensor monitoring area, the sensor may not detect it, resulting in sluggish response of ACC. Pay close attention to the vehicle movement in the adjacent lanes. Control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the preceding vehicle's brakes are applied suddenly (emergency stop), the ACC may not respond at all or may respond slowly to the preceding vehicle, resulting in a risk of late braking. In this case, you may not receive a request of controlling your vehicle. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.

 NOTICES

- If ACC is activated, when your vehicle is too close to the preceding vehicle (for example, due to emergency braking of the preceding vehicle), the system will send a sound and lamp alarm message to you through the combination instrument. As a result, you should pay attention to the inter-vehicle distance and control your vehicle.
- ACC will maintain the preset distance to follow the target object. ACC will automatically stop the vehicle if the target vehicle decelerates or stops.
- The vehicle will automatically start under the control of ACC if the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane within 3s after stopping.
- If the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after 3s yet within 3 min after stopping, the combination instrument MFD will remind the driver to resume cruise. The driver can gently depress the accelerator pedal or pull cruise control lever to RES+ to resume ACC function, so as to achieve the vehicle automatic starting.
- ACC will automatically be canceled if the vehicle stops for over 3 min.
- The ACC cannot stop your vehicle for a long time. Do not leave your vehicle while the ACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Be sure to shift the selector lever in the P position before leaving your vehicle.
- **Observe the following precautions when cornering with the ACC activated:**
 - In a sharp corner, the ACC may be canceled or limit the vehicle speed.
 - On a curve, the ACC may respond to the vehicle in another lane or may not have time to respond to the vehicle in the same lane. Your vehicle may collide with the preceding vehicle or may be uncontrolled. Especially when driving in a ramp, the vehicle may be accelerated since the system loses its target due to an excessive curve. Exercise extreme caution on a curve and get ready to apply the brakes if necessary. When driving on a curve, choose the right vehicle speed.
- **When your vehicle follows the preceding vehicle to pass through the intersection with traffic lamps, observe the change of the traffic lamps and intervene actively if necessary to avoid violating the traffic rules.**
- **When driving in heavy fog, rain, snow or other weather conditions, or there is frost and/or dirty trace in the camera window area of the advanced driver assistance system, or when your vehicle is moving in the direction toward the sun (or strong light source), the “the camera of the advanced driver assistance system has been blocked, please clean the windshield” prompt may appear on the combination instrument due to limited visual field of the camera. As a result, the ACC cannot work.**
- **When there is a risk of collision with the front vehicle determined by ACC, there will be a corresponding alarm sound and “Warning! Please take the initiative to drive the vehicle!” display on the dashboard; in this case, the driver should take over the vehicle in time.**

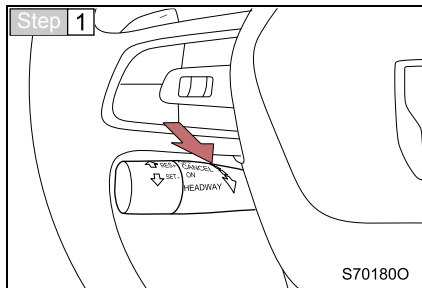
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC) function *

SACC advanced cruise function is based on ACC adaptive cruise function. It can be used not only to carry out the cruise and follow-up functions, but also to recognize the lane lines with the camera of the advanced driver assistance system, so as to control the vehicle running along the centerline of the lane, and improve the driving comfort and safety.

When SACC (Super Adaptive Cruise Control) detects that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance becomes shorter than the set value, the vehicle automatically decelerates; when the vehicles ahead accelerate or drive away, the vehicle accelerates to the set cruise speed.

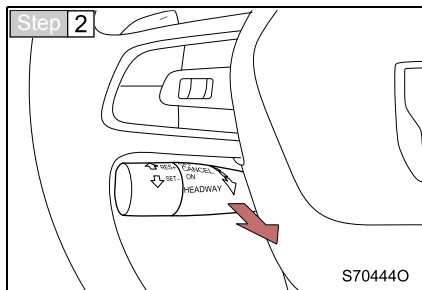
Setting the advanced cruise



Pull the cruise control handle back to set it to "ON" position.

When the speed is 0km/h and the shift handle is in P position, the cruise mode in the audio system settings can be set to the advanced cruise.

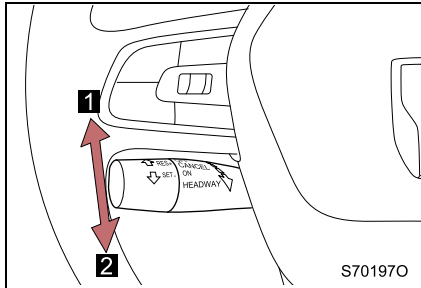
(See P.230)



When the white advanced cruise indicator is turned on, if accelerating or decelerating the vehicle to the required speed and pulling the cruise control handle backward to "HEADWAY" position until the green advanced cruise indicator is turned on, the current speed can be set to the cruise speed.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



1 Increasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once increases the speed by 5 km/h;

Long pushing: After the system confirms the long pushing is valid, the speed continues to increase by 1 km/h.

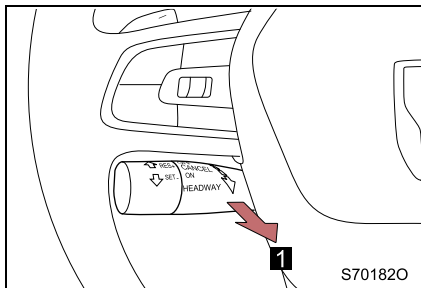
2 Decreasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once decreases the speed by 5 km/h;

Long pushing: After the system confirms the long pushing is valid, the speed continues to decrease by 1 km/h.

Note: If the currently set vehicle speed does not meet the multiple of 5 in the case of short pushing, the speed will automatically become a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

■ Setting the headway



1 Set the distance to the front vehicle

If pulling the cruise control handle backward to "HEADWAY" position, the distance to the front vehicle can be set.

There are four distance modes in the system, which can be cycled by pulling the control handle in the order of 4-3-2-1-4.



1 The set cruise speed

2 SACC indicator lamp

⊗ (Gray) 🚗 (Gray): The system is in standby and cannot meet the set conditions.

⊗ (Gray) 🚗 (white): The system is turned on for the adaptive cruise settings.

⊗ (White) 🚗 (White): The system is turned on for the advanced cruise settings.

⊗ (Gray) 🚗 (green): The system will be operated and enter the adaptive cruise status

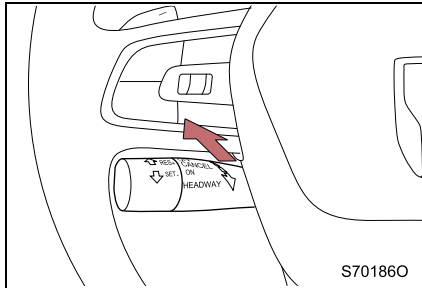
⊗ (Green) 🚗 (green): The system will be operated and enter the adaptive cruise status for the advanced cruise settings.

(Green) (Green): system working, in cruise state.

3 The set headway

The default headway is "Distance 4".

Canceling the super cruise control



Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control handle forward to the “CANCEL” position and release it to cancel the cruise control.

■ SACC and ACC switch setting

- When ACC is operated and meets SACC setting conditions, if pulling the cruise control handle backward to “HEADWAY” position, it can be switched to SACC mode.
- When SACC is operated, if pulling the cruise handle back to “HEADWAY” position, it will be switched to ACC mode.
- When SACC is operated, the driver can operate the steering wheel or the turn signal switch to automatically switch it to ACC mode; at this time, the steering wheel icon will flash. When the system determines that SACC setting conditions are met within a period of time, the system will be automatically switched to SACC mode.
- When SACC is operated, the camera cannot recognize the front lane lines, it will be automatically switched to ACC mode; at this time, the steering wheel icon will flash. When the system judges that SACC setting conditions are met within a certain period of time, it will automatically be switched to SACC mode.
- With SACC working, if the vehicle is running through a sharp turn, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.
- When SACC is operated, when the system judges that the driver hands are away from the steering wheel for more than a certain period of time, it will be automatically switched to ACC mode after leaving; during this process, the system will sent the alarm information in stages.
- With SACC working, if the camera detects the lane is too wide or too narrow, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

■ Noise upon SACC cruise

It is normal that noise will be generated when the SACC is applying automatic deceleration.

■ Headway

The default headway is “Distance 4”.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

■ Super adaptive cruise control can be set when

- In the audio system, set the cruise mode to SACC.
- Close all the doors, engine compartment cover and trunk lid.
- Driver wears the belt.
- The shift lever is in D.
- The brake pedal is not depressed by the driver.
- The camera of the advanced driver assistance system is not blocked and has no fault.
- Lane line is clear and in conformity to national standards.
- The SACC/ ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EPS/EMS functions properly.
- AEB, HDC, APA and LKA is not activated.
- When the driving mode is switched among snow mode, off-road mode, and sand mode.

■ Conditions for canceling the super adaptive cruise control

- The driver sets the cruise control lever to CANCEL or OFF position.
- The driver depress down the pedal or press and hold the EPB button.
- Any door or engine compartment cover is opened during the driving.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt during the driving.
- The driver depressed the accelerator pedal for more than 1min
- When there is insufficient visibility due to weather conditions.
- When the camera is exposed directly the sunlight.
- The shift lever is switched to the position except D.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB/HDC/APA is activated.
- When the driving mode is switched among snow mode, off-road mode, and sand mode.
- System related function fault.

■ SACC system fault

Have the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer check the vehicle if a fault has occurred.

■ After turning off the IGNITION switch

When turning off the IGNITION switch, the set cruise speed or headway will be deleted.


■ Adjusting or calibrating SACC system

Adjust or calibrate the SACC in the following situations. Otherwise SACC may not function properly:

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the camera unit of the advanced driver assistance system.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.
- Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.


CAUTIONS

- **To avoid activating the SACC super adaptive cruise control by mistake**
When this function is not in use, the control handle should be placed in OFF position.
- **Situations unsuitable for SACC**
Do not use SACC in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
 - In heavy traffic.
 - When in more complex road conditions.
 - On roads with sharp bends.
 - On winding roads.
 - On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
 - On steep hills.
 - When there are obstacles other than motor vehicles in front of the vehicle.
 - Snow, rain, ice, fog and other weather.
 - When the road lighting is insufficient at night.
 - The lane line is unclear.
 - The road is covered by vehicles or other obstacles.
- **The driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the SACC system. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals or operate the steering wheel in the advanced cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle. The driver shall maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**
- **When SACC is operated, the driver should hold the steering wheel with both hands to ensure the driving safety.**
- **SACC is only a driving assist system. If necessary, the driver shall immediately cancel SACC and drive independently. Observe local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions when using SACC.**
- **SACC may malfunction if the front windshield is modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment.**
- **Make sure to turn SACC OFF if leaving the driver seat for an extended period of time to avoid an accident.**
- **When following the target vehicle, SACC mainly controls the headway. The actual speed may be lower than the set cruise speed.**
- **If SACC is activated, when your vehicle is too close to the preceding vehicle (for example, due to emergency braking of the preceding vehicle), the system will send a sound and lamp alarm message to you through the combination instrument. As a result, you should pay attention to the inter-vehicle distance and control your vehicle.**
- **When there are some road signs, watermarks, shadows, asphalt, road cracks, and etc. on the road surface that may cause improper recognition of the lane lines and even the vehicle deviation from the current lane, and should be always paid attention by the driver.**
- **When the vehicle is driving on an inclined road or there is a large crosswind on the outside, SACC system cannot guarantee the cornering ability, and the driver should pay attention to the conditions and actively intervene the operation if necessary.**

 CAUTIONS

- It is normal that the cruise speed icon displayed on the combination instrument multifunction display (MFD) flashes when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal.
- SACC may lose or misrecognize the target vehicle when the vehicle is in bends, lane-changing or when the front vehicle stops.
- Exercise greater caution to drive since the SACC cannot detect other sides, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects but rear of the vehicle or apply the brakes.
- Due to the SACC's limited braking capacity, there may be no time to deaccelerate to avoid collision with the preceding vehicle. This may happen when the preceding vehicle suddenly slows down, stops or enters your lane. In case of danger, press the brake pedal for braking actively.
- Focus all of your attention on driving and get ready to take actions and to apply the brakes.
- You need to adjust the safe interval and set the SACC system reasonably according to the front traffic volume and the current weather conditions (e.g., rain and snow). Whenever, you need to ensure that your vehicle can be decelerated to standstill within your field of vision.
- SACC can only identify the motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) that are installed with legal license plates and allowed to travel on highways. If the preceding vehicle is irregular in shape, modified and/ or covered by painting, it may not be identified by the ACC, and the pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) may not be identified, either. In this case, you should get ready to control your vehicle according to the actual situation.
- The SACC system cannot accurately determine the width of the front lane that can be passed. Therefore, when the lane in front of your vehicle's moving direction becomes narrow and you feel your vehicle cannot pass it normally, you should deactivate the ACC system immediately through braking intervention and control the vehicle by yourself.
- Do not activate SACC on a long steep slope. SACC may not detect the preceding vehicle in the same lane on a long steep slope. You usually need to control the acceleration and braking of your vehicle by yourself on a long steep slope. If the brakes are applied, SACC is canceled.
- The preceding vehicle icon on the combination instrument will be displayed if the vehicle travelling in the same direction on the same lane is detected. If the icon display does not match the actually observed situation, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle and driving it based on the actual situation.
- If you rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, SACC may not automatically apply the brakes, resulting in a collision with the preceding vehicle. In this case, exercise extreme caution.
- If a vehicle in the adjacent lanes enters the front of the direction in which your vehicle moving but it is not covered by the monitoring area, the system may not detect it, resulting in sluggish response of SACC. Pay close attention to the vehicle movement in the adjacent lanes. Control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the preceding vehicle's brakes are applied suddenly (emergency stop), the SACC may not respond at all or may respond slowly to the preceding vehicle, resulting in a risk of late braking. In this case, you may not receive a request of controlling your vehicle. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- Under the backlighting condition, the target vehicle recognition and distance judgment with the camera of the advanced driver assistance system may be affected, the driver should pay attention to and actively operate the vehicle if necessary.

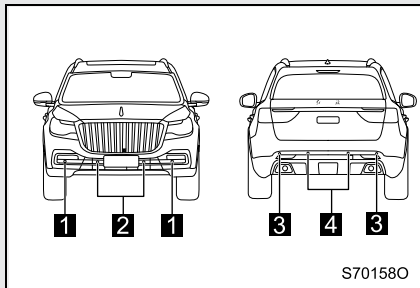

NOTICES

- If SACC is activated, when your vehicle is too close to the preceding vehicle (for example, due to emergency braking of the preceding vehicle), the system will send a sound and lamp alarm message to you through the combination instrument. As a result, you should pay attention to the inter-vehicle distance and control your vehicle.
- During SACC cruise control, when the steering wheel is shaken or rotated too fast, the system will give an audible and visual alarm to the driver on the dashboard; at this time, the driver should pay attention to the road conditions and take over the vehicle control.
- SACC will maintain the preset distance to follow the target object. SACC will automatically stop the vehicle if the target vehicle decelerates or stops.
- The vehicle will automatically start under the control of SACC if the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane within 3s after stopping.
- If the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after 3s yet within 3 min after stopping, the combination instrument MFD will remind the driver to resume cruise. The driver can gently depress the accelerator pedal or pull cruise control lever to RES+ to resume SACC function, so as to achieve the vehicle automatic starting.
- SACC will automatically be canceled if the vehicle stops for over 3 min.
- The SACC cannot stop your vehicle for a long time. Do not leave your vehicle while the ACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Be sure to shift the selector lever in the P position before leaving your vehicle.
- **Observe the following precautions when cornering with the SACC activated:**
 - In a sharp corner, the SACC may be canceled or limit the vehicle speed.
 - On a curve, the SACC may respond to the vehicle in another lane or may not have time to respond to the vehicle in the same lane. Your vehicle may collide with the preceding vehicle or may be uncontrolled. Especially when driving in a ramp, the vehicle may be accelerated since the system loses its target due to an excessive curve. Exercise extreme caution on a curve and get ready to apply the brakes if necessary. When driving on a curve
 - When driving on a curve, choose the right vehicle speed.
 - In the curve course, too small road radius may impact the judgment of SACC over the lane. Take care when driving in a curve.
- **When your vehicle follows the preceding vehicle to pass through the intersection with traffic lamps, observe the change of the traffic lamps and intervene actively if necessary to avoid violating the traffic rules.**
- **When driving in heavy fog, rain, snow or other weather conditions, or there is frost and/or dirty trace in the camera window area of the advanced driver assistance system, or when your vehicle is moving in the direction toward the sun (or strong light source), the “the camera of the advanced driver assistance system has been blocked, please clean the windshield” prompt may appear on the combination instrument due to limited visual field of the camera. As a result, the SACC cannot work.**
- **When there is a risk of collision with the front vehicle determined by ACC, there will be a corresponding alarm sound and “Warning! Please take the initiative to drive the vehicle!” display on the dashboard; in this case, the driver should take over the vehicle in time.**

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Front and rear parking radar*

The front and rear parking radar system comprises controller and ultrasonic sensor. The ultrasonic sensor can measure the distance between the vehicle and the obstructions. The audio speaker sounds with various frequencies according to the distance changes of the obstructions in the detection area. Meanwhile, the audio MFD will display the distance and direction of the obstruction. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

■ Sensor types



- 1 Front side radar sensor
- 2 Front middle radar sensor
- 3 Rear side radar sensor
- 4 Rear middle radar sensor

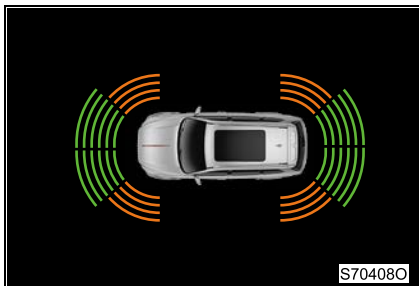
■ Switching on and off parking distance control (PDC)

When the vehicle speed is lower than 15km/h, if the radar/image button is pressed, the indicator lamp on the button is lit and the PDC is activated. If the radar/image button is pressed again, the indicator lamp on the button goes out and the PDC is deactivated.

- If the selector lever is set in the R position, the PDC system is activated. As for the vehicle equipped with a rear view camera, at the moment, pressing the radar/image button deactivates the PDC system.
- If the PDC is activated and the selector lever is set in the R position, the PDC is deactivated when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h. As for the vehicle equipped with a rear view camera, the PDC is activated again when the vehicle speed is lower than 10 km/h. If the selector lever is set in D position, and the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the PDC is deactivated and cannot be automatically resumed.

Display

■ When the obstruction is detected



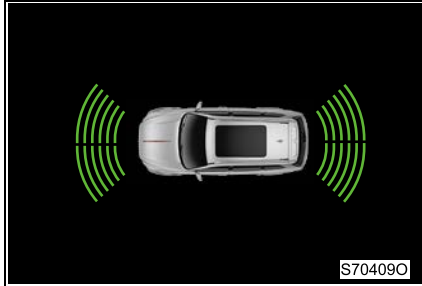
If the PDC sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the multimedia display screen according to the obstacle position and the distance from the obstacle.

The slow-driving zone, warning zone and danger zone are displayed in green, yellow and red, respectively.

Obstacle distance alarm

If an obstacle is detected, the color bar corresponding to the sensor will continue to be lit.

■ Information display on parking slow-driving zone for sensor



Front

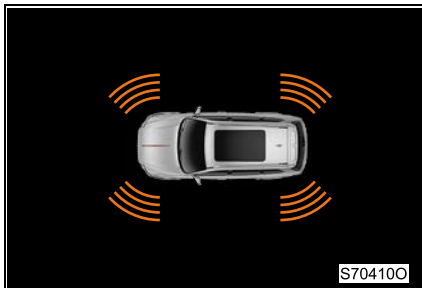
Distance to obstacle: 90~120cm

Rear

Distance to obstacle: 90~150cm

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the green color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning to the driver.

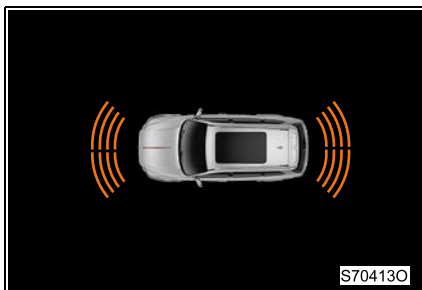
■ Information display on parking warning zone for side sensor



Distance to obstacle: 45~60cm

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning to the driver.

■ Information display on parking warning zone for center sensor

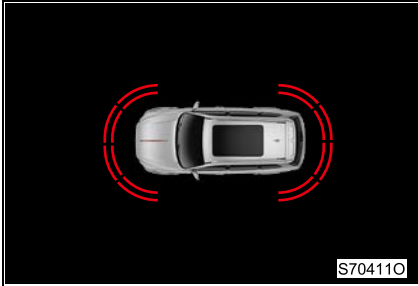


Distance to obstacle: 45~90cm

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning to the driver.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

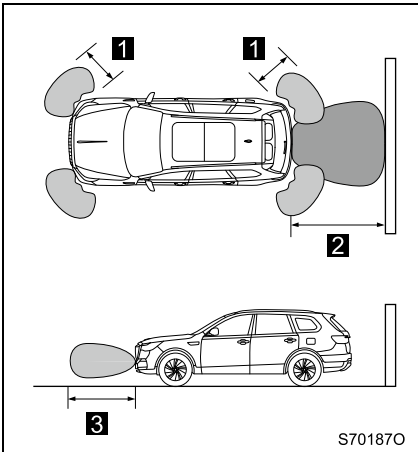
■ Information display on parking hazard zone for sensor



Distance to obstacle: 1~45cm

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning to the driver.

Longest distance detected by the sensor



1 About 60cm

2 About 150cm

3 About 90cm

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. (Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.)

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the obstacle.

■ Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. For example:
 - There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
 - A sensor is covered in any way.
 - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
 - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
 - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
 - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity, and the sensor of this vehicle is in working.
 - The vehicle is equipped with fender antenna pole or wireless antenna.
 - Towing eyelets are installed.

- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or bended curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Watch out the following obstacles especially:
 - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
 - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
 - Sharply-angled objects.
 - Low obstacles.
 - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle.

■ Speaker sound alert

- One of the systems detects obstacles.
If two or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the speakers respond according to the nearest obstacle. If the obstacle appears in front, the front speaker will sound a warning. Otherwise, the rear speaker will sound a warning.
- Front and rear systems detect obstacles
When the vehicle is close to a front obstacle, the front speaker will alarm, and vice versa. If the obstacles detected by the front and rear systems are in the danger zone, the front and rear speakers will alarm at the same time.
- Speaker sound alert OFF
 - If the EPB is activated, the sound alert will be turned off and there is only an image alert.
 - If the PDC is activated, when the system detects that the relative position of distance to the obstacle no longer changes (the position of the obstacle is non-hazardous zone), the system will turn off the sound alert after 10 seconds, but the image warns only. If the system detects the distance to the obstacle changes again, the sound alert starts warning again.

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions when using the front and rear parking radar

Observe the following cautions to avoid accidents:

- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.
- The Park Distance Control is only one driving assist system. Do not depend on it more than necessary. Drive with caution. If necessary, intervene actively to avoid danger.

NOTICES

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area. Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Rear view camera system*

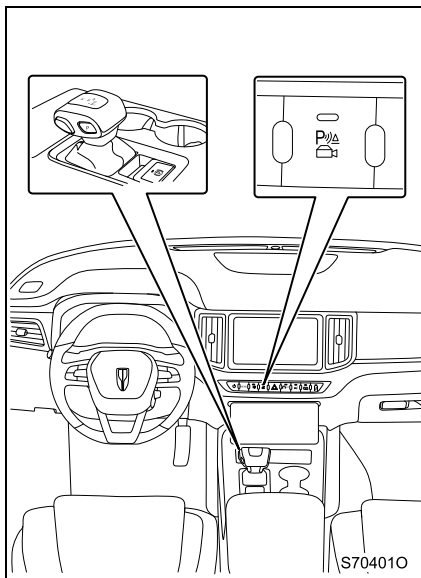
When reversing (for example, parking), the rear view camera system assists you by displaying the vehicle rear view image with fixed guide line on the audio multimedia display.

The image used in this section is only an example and may differ from the actual image displayed on the screen.

Activating/deactivating the rear view camera system

■ Activating

There are two methods to activate the rear view camera system:



Method 1: Setting the selector lever in R activates the rear view camera system.

Method 2: When the vehicle speed is lower than 15km/h, pressing the radar/image button activates the rear view camera system.

■ Deactivating

When the rear view camera system is activated through the "R" gear, the shift lever is placed in the "D" gear and the speed exceeds 15 km/h, the rear view camera system is withdrawn.

When the rear view camera system is activated by the radar/image button, the rear view camera system is withdrawn by pressing the radar/image button again.

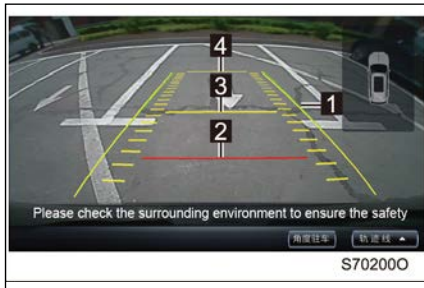
Reversing information display

The system has the following two modes, which can be selected with the switch by the driver as needed.

■ Angle parking

The angle parking can provide three view types of trajectory, streamlined, and auxiliary.

Trajectory view:



- 1** Parking guide line
Indicating the predicted vehicle track line with the steering wheel operating.
- 2** Distance guide line (red)
Indicating the distance line 50cm away from bumper back edge.
- 3** Distance guide line (yellow)
Indicating the distance line 150cm away from bumper back edge.
- 4** Distance guide line (yellow)
Indicating the distance line 250cm away from bumper back edge.

Reversing camera



- 1** Distance guide line
Indicating the distance line 50cm away from bumper back edge.
- 2** Distance guide line
Indicating the distance line 150cm away from bumper back edge.
- 3** Distance guide line
Indicating the distance line 300cm away from bumper back edge.

Auxiliary view



- 1** Distance guide line
Indicating the distance line 50cm away from bumper back edge.
- 2** Static vehicle width lines
Indicate the guide lines of the vehicle width.
- 3** Parking guide line
Indicate the guide lines of the expected maximum angle.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

■ Parallel parking

This mode is used to assist the driver to park the vehicle while the current vehicle is parallel to the adjacent parking spaces and is maintained at an angle to the target parking space.



1 Vehicle width range lines

Indicate the guide lines of the vehicle width.

2 Distance guide line

Indicating the distance line 50cm away from bumper back edge.

3 Parking guide line

Indicate the target parking space, which will disappears when the vehicle is reversed.



4 Vertical guide lines

Indicate the reference position at which the parallel parking will be started.

5 Position guide lines

Indicate the target parking space, which will disappears when the vehicle is reversed.

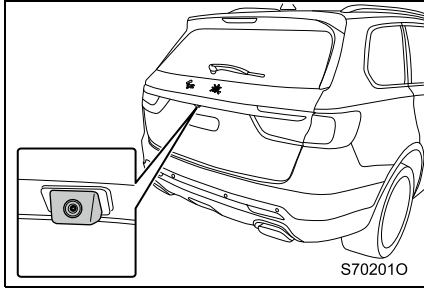


6 Parking guide line

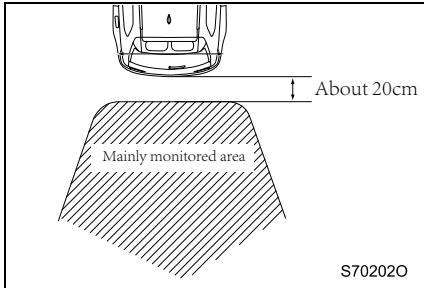
Indicate the guide lines of the current angle.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Reversing camera

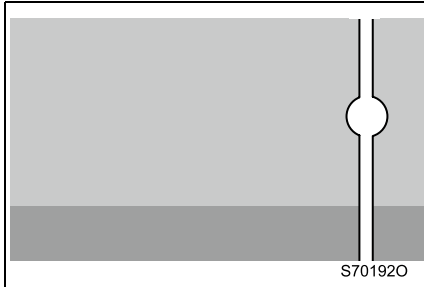


The vehicle backup camera is located in the illustrated position.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects that are close to either corner (within 20cm) of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



If a bright lamp, such as sunlamp reflects off the vehicle body, is picked up by the reversing camera, a smear effect characteristic ^{*1} to the reversing camera may occur.

^{*1}: The lamp source appears to have a vertical stripe extending up and down when the image is transmitted through the vehicle backup camera.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Rear view camera system is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on it more than necessary.**

Be sure to drive carefully and visually confirm the conditions behind and around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to back up by observing the display screen only. This may cause an accident or a collision with the object. The rear view camera system is only a visual parking assist system. The image on the display may differ from the actual situation.

■ **When using the rear view camera system**

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury, even death.

- Never depend solely on the rear view camera system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use this system when the trunk lid is not fully closed.

■ **Conditions which may affect the rear view camera system**

- If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have your vehicle checked by the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and wipe it.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- Do not use the rear view camera system when:
 - On slippery road surfaces covered by ice or snow.
 - Using tire chain or emergency spare tire.
 - On uneven or unsmooth road, such as bends or steep hills
- If the tires are replaced, the guide line position displayed on the display screen may be deviated. When replacing the tire, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.
- The guide line position on the display screen may vary according to the vehicle conditions, such as passenger and luggage number. Be sure to check the area behind and around the vehicle with your own eyes before operating.

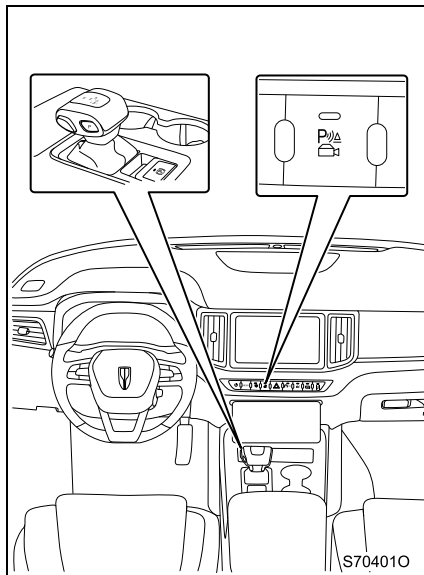
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Panoramic image system*

Panoramic image system is displayed by audio multi-media display screen, which is convenient for drivers to clearly see and understand the surrounding conditions of vehicles. At the same time, the relative orientation and distance of obstacles are judged to achieve safe and easy parking.

Activating/deactivating the panoramic image system

■ Activating

There are three ways to access panoramic image system:



Method 1: Setting the selector lever in R activates the panoramic image system.

Method 2: When the vehicle speed is lower than 15km/h, pressing the radar/image button activates the panoramic image system.

■ Deactivating

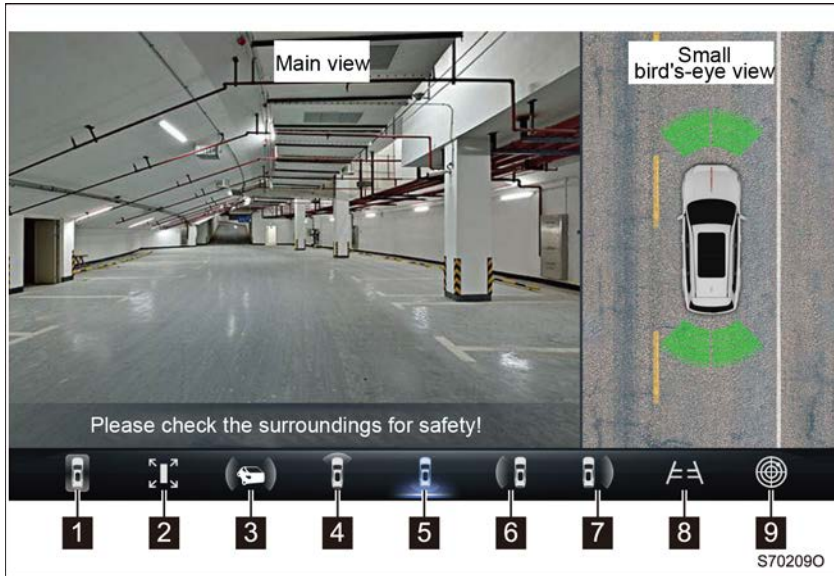
When the panoramic image is activated through the "R" gear, the shift lever is placed in the "D" gear and the speed exceeds 15 km/h, the panoramic image system is withdrawn.

When the panoramic image system is activated by the radar/image button, the panoramic image system is withdrawn by pressing the radar/image button again.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Panoramic image system screen mode

Panoramic image system has a variety of screen modes, the driver can choose the appropriate mode according to need.



1 Large bird's-eye view

Switch the principal view and small aerial view to large aerial view.

2 Wide view

It can be selected in the front or rear view mode. After selecting, switch the principal view and small aerial view to the wide angle view to see the picture nearly 180°.

3 3D view

The 360 degree stereo image around the vehicle can be displayed, and the dragging angle can be displayed.

4 Front view

Display the front view and the small bird's-eye view.

5 Rear view

Display the rear view and the small bird's-eye view.

6 Left view

Display the left view and the small bird's-eye view.

7 Right view

Display the right view and the small bird's-eye view.

8 Parking auxiliary line

It can be selected in front and rear view modes; the parking assist lines will be displayed after selection.

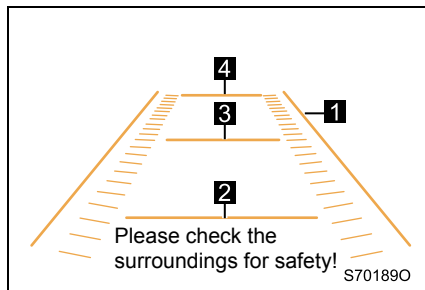
9 MOD (Moving Object Detection)

In each mode, when it is turned on, the dynamic objects with sizes of 3m (L) X 3m (W) in the front and rear direction of the vehicle can be detected; in the wide view mode, the dynamic objects with sizes of 3m (L) X 6m (W) in the front and rear direction of the vehicle can be detected.

When the turn lamp signal is enabled, the picture mode will automatically switch to the corresponding left/right view and small aerial view; when the turn lamp signal is disabled, the previous picture mode will resume.

Parking auxiliary line

Assist the driver to complete the parking with by screen display. Dynamically adjust the parking guide line according to various angles.



1 Parking guide line

Indicating the predicted vehicle track line with the steering wheel operating.

2 Distance guide line

Indicating the distance line 50cm away from bumper back edge.

3 Distance guide line

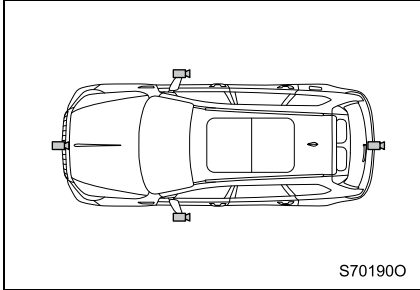
Indicating the distance line 150cm away from bumper back edge.

4 Distance guide line

Indicating the distance line 300cm away from bumper back edge.

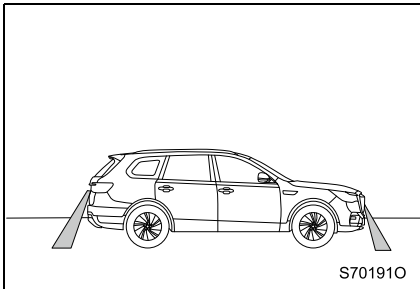
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Panoramic camera



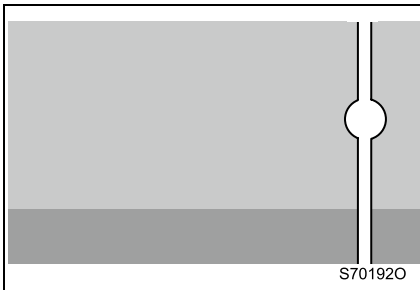
Panoramic cameras are installed at the front grille, the trunk lid and the left and right external viewing mirrors, respectively.

If the above parts are opened or folded, the view stitching may fail. When the above parts are opened or folded, there will be corresponding prompts on the screen. When the camera cannot transmit the views properly, there will be black in the corresponding area.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects that are close to either corner (within 20cm) of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



If a bright lamp, such as sunlight reflects off the vehicle body, is picked up by the reversing camera, a smear effect characteristic^{*1} to the reversing camera may occur.

*1: The lamp source appears to have a vertical stripe extending up and down when the image is transmitted through the vehicle backup camera.

⚠ CAUTIONS**■ Panoramic image system is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on it more than necessary.**

Be sure to drive carefully and visually confirm the conditions around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to back up by observing the display screen only. This may cause an accident or a collision with the object. The panoramic image system is only a visual parking assist system. The image on the display may differ from the actual situation.

■ When using the panoramic image system

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury, even death.

- Never depend solely on the panoramic image system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- The aerial view of the panoramic image can only display the objects in close proximity, and cannot display the objects outside the field of view.
- MOD detection function can only be used to detect the objects moved at low speed, and there is a missing possibility, which should be paid attention during driving process.
- Do not use the system when the camera is not operated properly.

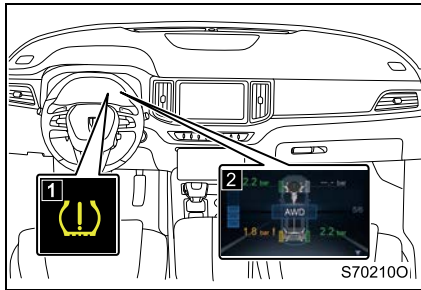
■ Conditions which may affect the panoramic image system

- If the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have your vehicle checked by the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and wipe it.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold. The camera image may not be clear in the case of rain, snow, fog or low illumination.
- Do not use the panoramic image system when:
 - On slippery road surfaces covered by ice or snow.
 - Using tire chain or emergency spare tire.
 - On uneven or unsmooth road, such as bends or steep hills.
- If the tires are replaced, the guide line position displayed on the display screen may be deviated. When replacing the tire, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.
- The guide line position on the display screen may vary according to the vehicle conditions, such as passenger and luggage number. Be sure to check the area behind and around the vehicle with your own eyes before operating.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS)

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) can monitor and check the pressure in the tires and automatically warns if the pressure exceeds the limit or fast air leakage.



1 Abnormal tire pressure/system fault warning lamp

2 Tire pressure information

Vehicle status	Warning
When the tire pressure is abnormal	The system fault warning lamp sounds a warning prompt
When the tire pressure monitor system does not work	The system fault warning indicator will be turned on and the prompts in text form will be displayed

■ Match the tire pressure sensor

After the tire replacement or tire exchange, the TPMS should be adjusted. Please contact the authorized dealer of FAW HONGQI.

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for TPMS

- The TPMS cannot prevent tire leakage and bursting. Its main purpose is to give an alarm when it detects that the tire pressure is lower than the set value.
- In winter, adjust the pressure in the tires in time. Because the winter temperature drops, the tire pressure may drop or drop below the alarm value. If the tire pressure falls below the alarm value, it will cause an alarm.

■ Conditions in which the TPMS won't work properly

The TPMS can judge based on the subtle changes in the tires and may not work properly if one of the following conditions occurs.

- When the four tires are not of the same size, the same manufacturer, the same brand or the same pattern, or when the installed tires are markedly different in wear (the same applies to winter tires).
- When emergency tires and/or snow tires are used, and when tire chains are mounted.
- If the tire with a pressure significantly higher than the specified pressure is installed, or if the tire loses pressure suddenly due to tire bursting (puncture).

■ When replacing the tire

When changing the tires or rotating the tires, be sure to adjust the device. Failure to do so may cause the device not to work properly.

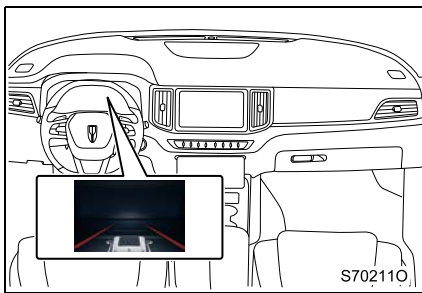
4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

LDW/LKA Lane keeping assist system*

The lane keeping assistance system can detect the driver's status and vehicle running status when the vehicle speed exceeds 60km/h. If the system judges the driver's non-subjective intent (such as chatting, wandering off, operating the audio system) causes the vehicle deviating from the lane, it will release the warning or warning plus lane correction prompt to prevent hazard and breach of regulations.

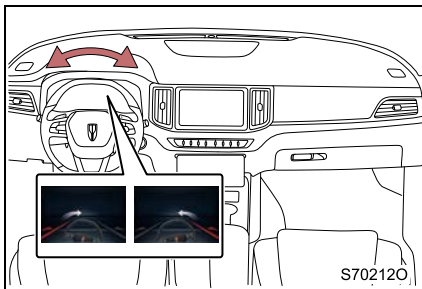
- LDW (Lane departure warning)

LDW (Lane departure warning)



When the lane departure warning system detects that the vehicle is departing from the lane, the corresponding side line turns red and flashes and the speaker on the corresponding side sounds a warning.

LKA (Lane keeping assistance)

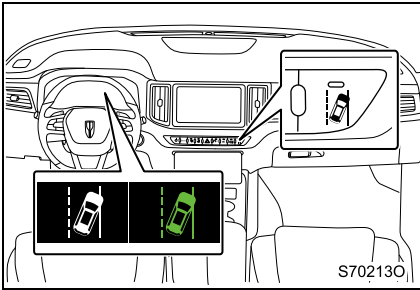


When the system determines lane deviation, the corresponding side line will become red and blink; meanwhile there is warning tone and the steering wheel will automatically correct.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

LDW/LKA Lane keeping assist system

If pressing LDW/LKA switch button, the button indicator and the system will be turned on; if pressing it again, the button indicator and the system will be turned off; the alarm modes of LDW and Warning + LKA can be selected in the audio system and the warning sensitivity can be set at the same time. (See P.228)



When the system is turned on, the lane keeping assist indicator (white) on the dashboard will be turned on. When the system is turned off, the indicator will be turned off.

When the system is turned on, if the vehicle speed is higher than 60km/h and when the system recognizes the valid lane lines, the lane keeping assist indicator (green) on the dashboard will be turned on.

- **Operating conditions for lane keeping assistance system:**
 - The vehicle speed is higher than 60km/h.
 - Lane line is clear and in conformity to national standards.
 - System camera is not covered.
- **The LDW is deactivated even if your vehicle is departing from the lane when one of the following conditions occurs:**
 - The hazard warning lamp switch is turned on.
 - When the steering wheel is turned.
 - The brake pedal is depressed by the driver.
 - Your vehicle has been driving on the lane line.
 - Within 3 seconds of the previous warning.
 - During the effective period of operating the steering switch, the LDW of the side is deactivated. The LDW of the side is also deactivated within about 3 seconds after the steering switch returns.
- **Under the following conditions, the system will not correct the lane automatically even if there is lane deviation:**
 - When the turn signal and steering wheel is operated.
 - When the single or double lanes disappear.
- **The lane keeping assist system may not be operated properly in the following cases:**
 - When snow, ice or dust stains on the windshield block the camera.
 - Low-visibility weather, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, or heavy snow.
 - The road is covered by vehicles or other obstacles.
 - The road width is narrow or the curvature of the curve is excessive.
 - When the system camera is covered.
 - When heading for strong light.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

- Lane line diverging, intersections or construction areas and other complex lane line conditions.
 - When there are bridge cables or shadows of trees on the road surface, which may cause misrecognitions.
 - When the light is dim or the lane lines are blurred at night.
 - The vehicle speed is lower than 60km/h.
 - Lane line is not in conformity to national standards.
 - The external environment of the vehicle suddenly changes in brightness, such as entering a tunnel.
- **The system shall be calibrated when changing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.**

CAUTIONS

- **LDW/LKA is only one driving assist system. Do not depend on it more than necessary. Drive with caution.**
- **The system may malfunction due to road and environment factors. Stop using this system in that case.**
- **To avoid interfering with the driver, the system will not raise an alarm when the LKA system activation conditions are not satisfied. The LKA system without correct calibration may identify other lanes by mistake, resulting in accidents.**
- **The LDW can recognize the lane lines and curbs with a certain contrast. It may recognize the blurry, dirty lane lines inaccurately or cannot recognize them. It may misrecognize some vehicle traces, watermarks or shadows with large color contrast on road surfaces.**

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Driver Status Monitoring (DSM)

The driver status monitoring system analyzes the vehicle motion in the lane, judges the driver status (for example, tired) and releases warning according to the driver's status to remind the driver of resting now.



After LDW/LKA lane keeping assist system is turned on, the driver status monitoring system will be automatically turned on.

After LDW/LKA lane keeping assist system is turned off, the driver status monitoring system will be automatically turned off.

If the system judges the current driving is abnormal, the cluster gauge multi-function display zone will show the early warning icon.

If the system judges the current driving is severely abnormal, it will show the early warning icon and release the warning tone.

- **The system shall be calibrated when changing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.**

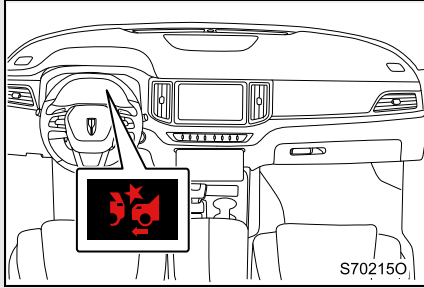
CAUTIONS

- **The driver status monitoring system is an assistance system for driving. It can only warn the abnormal driving status and cannot directly interfere with the vehicle. The driver must refer to the early warning reminding and control the steering wheel by himself to ensure the driving normal.**
- **Due to the road and environmental factors, the driver status monitoring system may not correctly judge the abnormal driving status. The driver must observe the highway code and take a rest in time according to the actual conditions to ensure the driving safety.**
- **The driver status monitoring system without correct calibration may identify other lanes by mistake, resulting in accidents.**

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Forward collision warning (FCW) system*

The system automatically judges the collision risk level through the relative distance, relative velocity and relative acceleration of this vehicle to the target vehicle. If the conditions are met, the system will release warning.

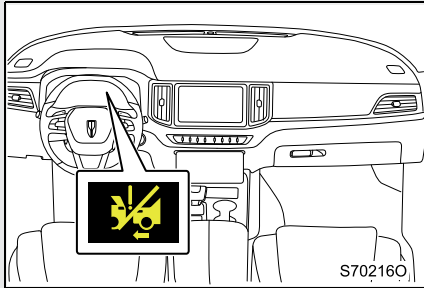


When the system determines there may be collision, the meter will display the warning message and release the warning tone through the speaker/meter.

For the vehicle target, if the collision risk upgrades, the system will release the brake warning tone like the hold-to-run braking effect.

■ Forward collision warning (FCW) system ON/OFF

It can be set to turn on and off the FCW system in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.228)



If the system is turned off, the indicator lamp for the FCW OFF is lit on the combination instrument.

- **The system shall be calibrated when changing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.**

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

CAUTIONS

- For the sake of safety, the passengers must wear seat belts properly.
- FCW is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on FCW more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.
- FCW only makes warning for collision danger. Driver must operate the brake pedal or the steering wheel to avoid collision.
- FCW may not be able to identify the modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- The FCW obtains the vehicle information by recognizing the rear of the vehicle, so no warning is given to the oncoming vehicle and the horizontally crossing vehicle in front.
- Complex traffic conditions may cause the FCW to delay the recognition of the vehicle, resulting in lagged alarm.
- Curved, hilly or unusual bumpy roads may cause the AEB not to detect the preceding vehicle. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- The FCW is an alarm system, but it cannot detect the vehicles in all situations. For example, the vehicles with a largely-covered rear, strange shape (such as overloaded vehicles transporting trees), seriously-damaged rear and other.
- FCW may not identify the narrow objects such as pedestrians or bicycles.
- When the sensor is obstructed by rain, snow, ice, fog or dust, the FCW performance may be degraded or invalidated. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- Make sure the front windshield is not modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. The modified or covered windshield may cause the FCW to deteriorate or fail.
- If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the FCW function may be degraded or failed. Have the FCW calibrated in time.
- Do not use the improperly-calibrated FCW.
- The FCW may not work properly in the scenes with strong backward lamping, road reflection and insufficient ambient lamping. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- The high chassis of the preceding vehicles or the cargo protruding from the rear of the preceding vehicle may increase the risk of danger.
- The FCW may not be able to identify such targets as riders.

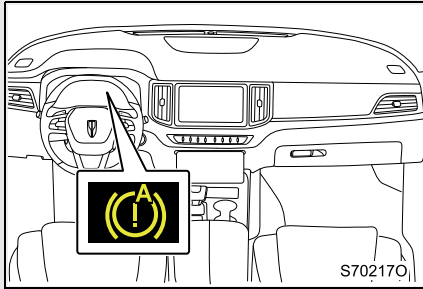
NOTICES

- To avoid interfering with the driver by false alarm, the system will not alarm when:
 - Front windscreen is damaged or replaced.
 - The vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h.
 - Within 20s after the last warning.
 - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
 - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Autonomous emergency brake (AEB) system*

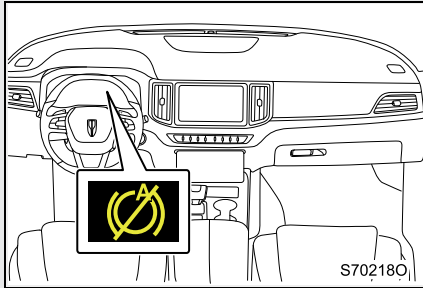
The AEB (Autonomous Emergency Brake) is activated between 8 km/h and 80 km/h. When in an emergency, your vehicle may collide with the preceding vehicle and you do not apply emergency braking or turning in time, the AEB will assist you in applying a braking force to avoid or mitigate the collision.



If the AEB is activated, the alarm information appears on the combination instrument and a warning is sent by the speaker/instrument.

■ AEB ON/OFF

It can be set to turn on and off the AEB system in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.228)



If the system is turned off, the indicator lamp for the AEB system OFF is lit on the combination instrument. The system is turned on by default.

- **The system shall be calibrated when changing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.**

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

CAUTIONS

- For the sake of safety, the passengers must wear seat belts properly.
- AEB is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on AEB more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.
- AEB may not be able to identify the modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- Curved, hilly or unusual bumpy roads may cause the AEB not to detect the preceding vehicle. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- The AEB may not be able to identify such targets as riders.
- When the electronic stability control (ESC) is turned off or failed, the braking function of the AEB will not be activated.
- The AEB may not work properly if there is heavy snow or rain.
- The AEB may not work properly in the scenes with strong backward lamping, road reflection and insufficient ambient lamping. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- If your vehicle is needed to tow a disabled vehicle or a trailer, deactivate the AEB. When the brakes are controlled under towing conditions, the safety of the vehicle deteriorates.
- The high chassis of the preceding vehicles or the cargo protruding from the rear of the preceding vehicle may increase the risk of danger.
- Make sure the front windshield is not modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. The modified or covered windshield may cause the AEB to deteriorate or fail.
- If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the AEB function may be degraded or failed. Have the AEB calibrated in time.
- Do not use the improperly-calibrated AEB.
- The AEB obtains the vehicle information by recognizing the rear of the vehicle, so no warning is given to the oncoming vehicle and the horizontally crossing vehicle in front.
- The AEB is a driving assistance system but it cannot detect the vehicle in all situations. For example, the vehicles with a largely-covered rear, strange shape (such as overloaded vehicles transporting trees), seriously-damaged rear and other.
- When your vehicle is driving on a curve, the AEB may not be able to accurately determine the state of a stationary object in the direction of travelling. Therefore, the AEB may not perform active emergency brake assistance.
- The AEB cannot help you in all circumstances, so you should not rely entirely on it but focus on observing the road conditions to ensure driving safety.
- The AEB system is an active auxiliary safety system, but it cannot completely prevent your vehicle at low speed from colliding with the preceding vehicle. It is your responsibilities to know how to drive and how to avoid dangerous situations. You should apply the brakes as soon as possible in an emergency.

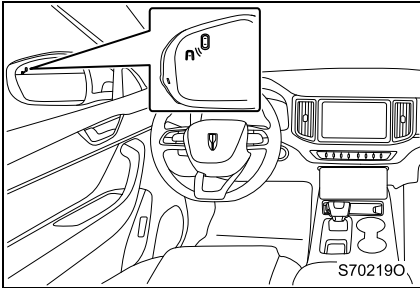
 **NOTICES**

- **When the vehicle is parked with AEB, the vehicle can be only maintained in parking status for 2s. After 2s, the vehicle will be driven forward at idle speed. Please take over the vehicle.**
- **To avoid interfering with the driver by false alarm, the brake will not happen when:**
 - The vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h.
 - Within 20s after the last barking.
- **When the AEB system is activated, if one of the following conditions occurs, the AEB will be deactivated to stop braking immediately:**
 - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
 - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.
 - When the vehicle speed falls below the threshold of 40km/h, the AEB stops braking.
- **If one of the following conditions occurs, the AEB will not be activated. It is intended to allow you to control your vehicle by yourself without disturbing:**
 - ESC/TCS/ABS is activated.
 - The transmission is shifted to R.
 - Any door is not closed.
 - Engine compartment cover is not closed.
 - The trunk is not closed.
 - The driver unfastens the seat belt.
 - The automatic parking function is turned on.
 - Within 20s after the last warning.
 - The vehicle speed is lower than 8km/h.
 - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
 - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Blind Spot Detection (BSD)*

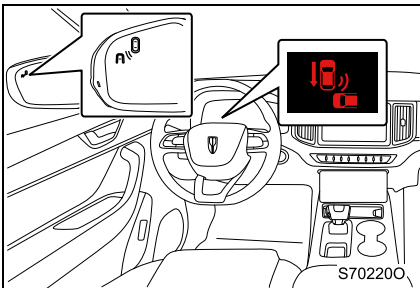
The system contains a blind spot detection, side warning assist (SWA) and a cross traffic alert (CTA) to provide driving assistance.

Blind spot detection and side warning assist



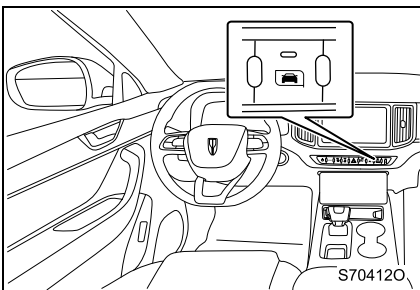
When your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, if the side vehicle within the 7m blind spot or the 7~25m blind zone behind your vehicle meets the collision conditions, the warning indicator lamp for outside rear-view mirror on the corresponding side is lit. If the turn signal switch on the corresponding side is turned on at the moment, the warning indicator lamp flashes, which tells you about that there is a risk of changing the lane at the moment.

Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)



When your vehicle speed is 0~10km/h, if there is a crossing vehicle behind your vehicle, the indicator lamp in the rear-view mirror on the corresponding side is lit, the image appears on the multimedia display screen and the speaker on the corresponding side sounds a warning, which tells you about paying attention to the crossing vehicle.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) ON/OFF



If pressing BSD switch button, the button indicator and the system will be turned on. If pressing the button again, the button indicator and the system will be turned off.

If the system is faulty, the blind spot detection system will be in OFF status and cannot be turned on with the switch.

- **In the following conditions, BSD and lane change assistance warning may not be activated or the warning may be delayed:**
 - When the vehicle is driven on a steep slope.
 - When the vehicle is driven through the mountain top or the mountain road.
 - When there is a difference in height between the driving lane and the adjacent lane.
 - When there is a small turning radius.
 - When the vehicle is driven on roads covered with snow.
 - When A lot of snow or ice is gathered near the radar sensor.
 - In the following conditions, BSD and lane change assistance warning may be advanced or expanded:
 - When the two lanes are too narrow and an alarm will occur in the bay.
 - When the vehicle is driven on the road with fixed obstacles (such as tunnel walls, viaduct cement barriers, metal billboards, etc.) at side of the vehicle.
- **In the following conditions, the reverse lateral warning function may be unable to warn or expand the warning range:**
 - When the vehicle is parked obliquely.
 - When the reverse speed exceeds 10km/h.
 - When a large amount of snow or ice is gathered near the radar sensor on the rear bumper.
 - When the target vehicle is in the detection area and the yaw angle is changed continuously.
 - When there is a coming vehicle in direct rear of the vehicle.

CAUTIONS

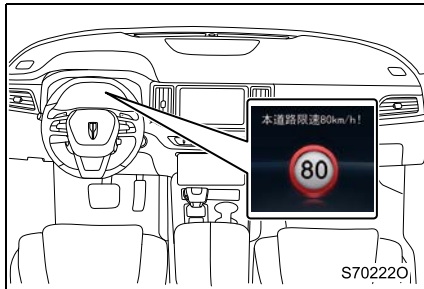
- **Shut down the radar detection system in the case of towing vehicle or equipped with attachment (such as the self-propelled bracket); otherwise the radio wave emitted by radar will be blocked and the system cannot work normally.**
- **The blind spot detection system technology cannot violate the laws of physics and has a certain system limitation, and functions only within the limits of the system. Therefore, you should still concentrate on observing roads and traffic conditions and guard against accidents.**
- **Be sure to adjust your vehicle speed and the safe distance from the preceding vehicle according to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions at that time.**
 - Be sure to hold the steering wheel with both hands while driving and get ready to turn.
 - Be sure to pay attention to the indicator lamp for exterior rearview mirrors and the information on the multi-function display of the combination instrument, and follow the instructions to operate it correctly.
 - The blind spot detection system may respond to some specific roadside buildings (such as high or offset guardrails) and thus give false alarm.
 - Pay attention to the road conditions and surroundings of your vehicle.
 - Do not activate the blind spot detection system if the sensor is dirty or damaged. The dirty or damaged sensor may affect the system function.
 - It may be hard to see the view in the exterior mirror in direct sunlight
 - When driving, be sure to follow the instructions of the warning lamp/ indicator lamp and related text messages. Failure to do so can easily cause an accident, resulting in severe personal injuries.

 NOTICES

- **Be sure to prevent the rear bumper from being clashed when parking. Otherwise, the sensor in the bumper may be displaced or damaged, and thus cause the SWA to be automatically shut down or the SWA function to be affected.**
- **To ensure normal operation of the SWA, the sensor in the bumper should be clean, free of ice and snow, and not be covered by other objects.**
- **Coat the rear bumper only with the paint approved by FAW. When other coating types may cause the lane change assist system function is limited or the system is faulty.**
- **If it is not working properly, deactivate the SWA immediately and contact your FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for repair.**
- **The repaired SWA needs to be calibrated. For the details, contact your FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.**
- **The SWA will not respond to the pedestrians, animals, bicycles and others in blind spots.**
- **The SWA only serves as an auxiliary reminder. It cannot completely avoid collisions in the blind spots. Before changing the lane, be sure to observe the rear-view mirrors, scan backwards and turn on the turn signals.**
- **Special operating conditions, such as dark and damp weather and high speeds, may cause the SWA to give false alarm or to miss alarm. This is a normal phenomenon.**
- **When the blind spot detection sensor behind the vehicle is blocked, the SWA will not work. Clear the sensor in time.**
- **The SWA is limited by the physical laws and system conditions and may not be able to correctly identify traffic conditions under some driving conditions. Such as the following conditions:**
 - In a lane with sharp turn.
 - In a lane with different width.
 - On a mountain road with ups and downs.
 - In bad weather.
 - At some special structures on the roadside, such as high or offset highway guardrails.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

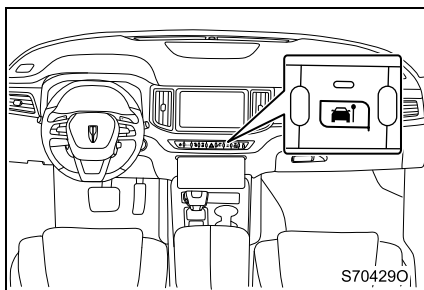
The road traffic mark recognition system can accurately identify the speed restriction identification board and speed restriction cancel identification board with the vehicle running.



When the system identifies the speed restriction board, if the vehicle speed is below the limit, the cluster gauge and message display will only show the current speed restriction requirement through the indicator lamp; if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit, the cluster gauge and message display will remind the driver of overspeeding through the sound/icon/text.

When the system identifies the speed restriction cancel board, the cluster gauge indicator lamp will extinguish to cancel the reminding.

Turn on/off the road traffic sign recognition system (TSR)



If pressing TSR switch button, the button indicator and the system will be turned on. If pressing the button again, the button indicator and the system will be turned off.

■ In the following conditions, the system will cancel the speed restriction warning:

- The vehicle is driven to a certain distance from the speed limit board.
- Turn on the turn signal before turning.
- Carry out U-turn at low speed.

■ Adjusting or calibrating TSR system

Adjust or calibrate the TSR in the following situations. Otherwise TSR may not function properly:

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Replace the camera unit of the advanced driver assistance system.

For calibration, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

CAUTIONS

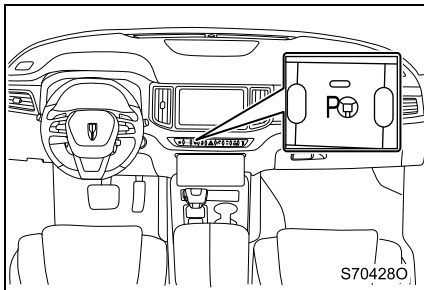
- **TSR is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on TSR more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.**
- **The TSR may not work properly if there is heavy snow or rain.**
- **The TSR may not work properly in the scenes with strong backward lamping, road reflection and insufficient ambient lamping. Exercise greater caution to drive.**
- **Make sure the front windshield is not modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. The modified or covered windshield may cause the TSR to deteriorate or fail.**
- **If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the TSR function may be degraded or failed. Have the TSR calibrated in time.**
- **When the recognition plate is not in a form that meets the regulations or is not placed in a position that meets the regulations, it will be recognized properly with the system.**

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Auto Parking Assist (APA) *

The automatic parking measures the length of the parking spaces on both sides of the road through ultrasonic waves. If the appropriate parking space is selected, the steering system of the vehicle will be automatically controlled and the vehicle will be parked in the selected parking space. The automatic parking system includes automatic parking and automatic exit. Select the operation on the multimedia screen.

Before using the automatic parking function, must read the automatic parking procedures, precautions and warnings described in this section to prevent accidents.

Access to auto parking system



Press the automatic parking button once to enter the automatic parking selection interface and press the automatic parking button twice to enter the automatic exit selection interface; select the parking mode in the corresponding interface.

Auto in

- Select the parking mode



There are three automatic parking modes of vertical parking, oblique parking and side parking.

If no mode is selected, the vertical parking mode will be defaulted by the system.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

■ Select the parking space



Method 1: Automatic selection

After the parking mode is selected, the parking spaces on both sides of the driving direction can be recognized by the system during the vehicle running process. Click the parking space where the vehicle will be parked to set it as the target parking space.

Red: unavailable space

Yellow: available space

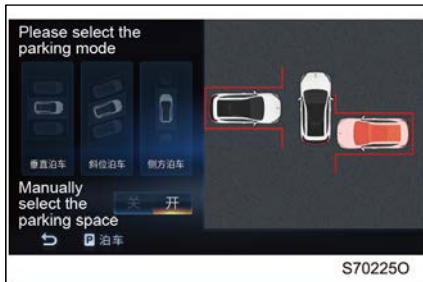
Green: optimized space

Method 2: Manual selection

After the parking mode is selected, if turning on the manual selection switch of the parking space, the parking space frame can be dragged and rotated on the screen to select the parking space.

Red: unavailable space

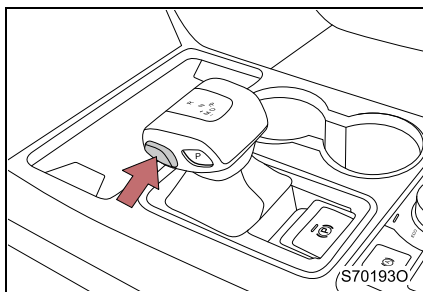
White: Available parking spaces



After the parking space is selected, if clicking "Parking" button, the system will enter the parking interface, and the vehicle will enter the parking control status.

■ Parking control

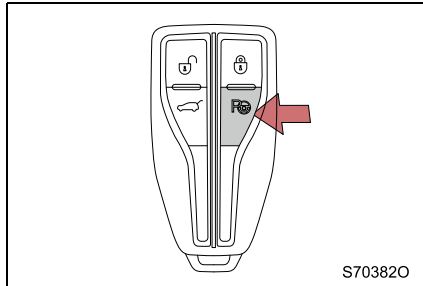
During the parking process, the number of parking steps, the current vehicle running status and the surrounding image of the vehicle will be displayed on the screen, and the vehicle can be controlled with three methods.



Method 1: Use the unlock button on the shift handle

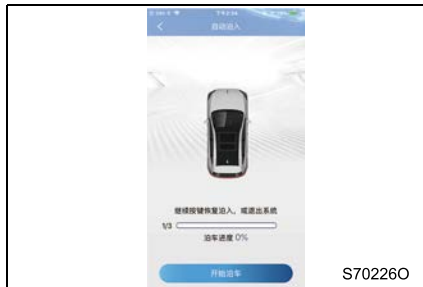
During the parking process, must press and hold the unlock button on the shift handle until the vehicle is parked-in.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems



Method 2: Use the parking button on the remote key

During the parking process, must press and hold the parking button on the remote key until the vehicle is parked.



Method three:Using the mobile phone APP

During the parking process, must press and hold the parking button on the mobile APP until the vehicle is parked.

During the parking process, if the parking button is released, the parking process will stop; if the parking button is pressed again, the parking process will be continued. The three parking control methods can be used interactively.

■ Parking power-off control

Method 1: Use the unlock button on the shift handle

After the vehicle is parked successfully, all the turn signals in the vehicle will flash once, the electronic parking brake will automatically turned on, and the parking completion will be displayed on the screen. At this point, if pressing the unlock button on the shift handle again, and the whole vehicle will be powered off. If the unlock button on the shift handle is not pressed after a certain period of time, the whole vehicle will be automatically powered off.

Method 2: Use the parking button on the remote key

After the vehicle is parked successfully, all the turn signals in the vehicle will flash once and the electronic parking brake will be automatically turned on. At this point, if pressing the parking button on the remote key again, the vehicle will be powered off. If the parking button is not pressed after a certain period of time, the vehicle will be automatically powered off.

Method three:Using the mobile phone APP

After the vehicle is parked successfully, all the turn signals in the vehicle will flash once, and the electronic parking brake will be automatically turned on. At this point, if pressing the parking button on the mobile APP, the whole vehicle will be powered off. If the parking button is not pressed after a certain period of time, the vehicle will be automatically powered off.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Auto out

■ Select the exit mode



Method 1: Select the exit mode from the audio system screen

The automatic exit mode includes three modes of vertical exit, right exit, and side exit.

After the exit mode is selected, if click "Exit" button, the system will enter the exit interface, and the vehicle will enter the exit control state.

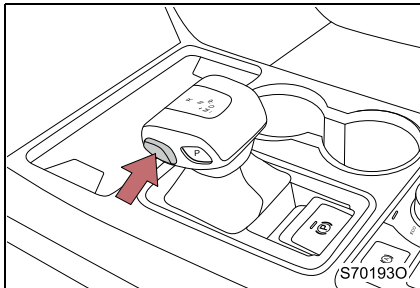


Method 2: Select the exit mode on the mobile APP

After the vehicle is started remotely, the four exit modes of vertical exit, horizontal exit to the left, horizontal exit to the right and remote exit can be selected with the mobile APP.

After the corresponding exit mode is selected, the mobile APP will enter the corresponding exit interface, and the vehicle will enter the exit control status.

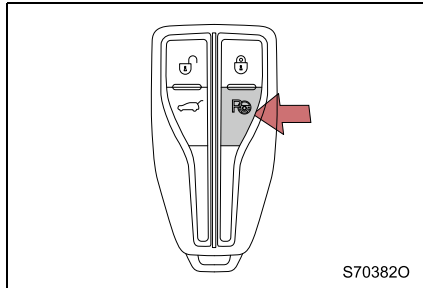
■ Exit control



Method 1: Use the unlock button on the shift handle

During the exit process, must press and hold the unlock button on the shift handle until the vehicle exits.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems



Method 2: Use the parking button on the remote key

Start the vehicle with the remote key (see Page 70) and press and hold the parking button on the remote key until the vehicle exits.

When the vehicle exits with the parking button on remote key, the parking mode cannot be selected and only the vertical exit mode can be used.



Method 3: Use the mobile APP (vertical exit, horizontal exit to the left, horizontal exit to the right)

During the exit process, must press and hold the exit button on the mobile APP until the vehicle exits.



Method 4: Use the mobile APP (remote exit)

During the exit process, turn the steering wheel and click "Forward" and "Backward" buttons to control the vehicle exit.

■ Operating conditions for parking:

- The vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h.
- There is no manual operation of the steering wheel in the process of parking.
- The ESC OFF switch is not activated.
- The ESC/ABS/TCS function is not activated.
- The PSC/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS functions properly.

■ Conditions to deactivate parking:

- The driver operates the steering wheel.
- Open the doors.
- Click the parking cancel button.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

- After the automatic parking is turned on, the parking process is not completed within 4min.
 - After the automatic parking is turned on, the parking process is not completed after the maximum number of actions.
 - SACC function is activated.
 - ESC OFF switch is activated.
 - The ESC/ABS/TCS function intervenes.
 - The PSC/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS fails.
- **Park the vehicle with mobile APP**
Before parking the vehicle with the mobile APP, must connect your mobile phone to the vehicle network.
- **During the auto parking, if the obstacle impacts the vehicle parking, the vehicle will automatically stop until the obstacle disappears. If the obstacle still exists after a while, the auto parking will terminate.**
- **During the auto parking, observe the ambient conditions around the vehicle. Where the emergency braking is required, the driver should quickly release the parking key or depress the brake pedal or pull EPB switch to control the vehicle parking.**

NOTICES

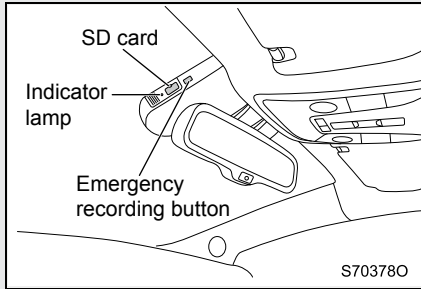
- **You are the most important controller of your vehicle. The APA automatic parking assistance system is only a driving assistance system. You should control your vehicle based on the actual road conditions and drive it with caution.**
- **To ensure the parking system success ration and safety, the system should be used in the following environment conditions:**
- The road surface should be flat and free from obstacles, with small slopes.
 - The parking space lines should be clear and the parking space should be large.
 - There should be a good weather and the driver can view the clear and unobstructed environment near the parking space.
 - The road surface should be dry and free of slipping.
- **Note the following items during the auto parking space searching:**
- The vehicle should be driven close to the parking space; otherwise the parking space may not be recognized.
 - The steering angle of the vehicle should not be too large, otherwise the parking space may not be recognized.
 - The speed should not exceed 20km/h; otherwise the parking space may not be recognized. If the lighting is poor due to raining, snowing or fogging, the space identification rate will be lower.
 - If the parking space is too small, the parking lines are not clear, or the parking space is irregular, the parking space may not be recognized.
 - During the parking space finding process, the image can only be used to assist the driver and the driver should pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.
- **Note the following items during the auto parking:**
- There may be a blind spot in the distance reminding function, and the driver should pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.
 - An insufficient parking space may cause the parking failure.
 - A too steep road surface may cause the parking failure.
 - A wet and slippery road surface may cause the parking failure.
 - An uneven road surface may cause parking failure.
 - During the parking process, the driver can operate accelerator pedal, the gears and the steering wheel.
- **If a tire is replaced, must ensure that the replaced tire has the same size with the original tire, and check the four-wheel alignment parameters.**

⚠ CAUTIONS

- Pay special attention to the people animals, and various obstacles around the vehicle. The sensors have undetectable blind spots.
- When searching for parking space or during parking, make sure there are no obstacles, such as stones, fine columns or draw bars, in the parking space before parking your vehicle in it, as the Park Assist may not detect such obstacles.
- The Park Assist may not be able to recognize the surface or structure of some objects (such as barbed wire fences, fluffy snow, etc.). Therefore, check whether there is enough space in the parking space displayed before parking your vehicle.
- If the parking radar system detects a barrier, the barrier may get out of the detection range of the sensor when the vehicle gets close to the barrier (the case extremely easily occurs when too high and too low barriers are detected), therefore, these objects are not detected. Do not ignore the alarm from the parking distance warning system. Otherwise, the vehicle may be at risk of collision.
- Due to the influences of various external sound fields and electromagnetic fields (e.g., other vehicles using ultrasonic ranging, air pressure, engine noise, electronically controlled gears and induction coils), the system cannot achieve absolute anti-jamming.
- The anti-jamming capability and detection performance of the ultrasonic ranging system may be degraded due to environmental conditions and obstacle reflection characteristics, and this is determined by the physical properties of ultrasonic propagation.
- The mounting position of the sensor has an important influence on the system performance. This is reflected in the reflection of the bumper surface, the reflection of the ground echo and the detection range.
- Avoid cleaning the sensor with high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner, so as to avoid damage to the sensor. Adopt small water stream to wash the sensor surface for a short time during vehicle cleaning, and maintain a distance over 10cm.
- The sound waves transmitting in the air is refracted and diffracted based on the physical properties. The difference in temperature in the air is one of the most important factors in the generation of non-uniform propagation media, thereby leading to acoustic diffraction.
- The detection performance of ultrasonic detection equipment can be affected by the following factors:
 - Hot exhaust gas.
 - High-temperature asphalt pavement.
 - Summer breeze.
 - Temperature stratification.
- When the bumper temperature is different from the ambient air temperature (usually occurring in winter), temperature stratification occurs, resulting in acoustic wave diffraction. Echoes are generated in some bumper structures, so that there is a risk of false alarms.
- Some important factors that can lead to a reduced detection range or no detection:
 - The bumper surface is covered with snow or sludge.
 - The sensor surface is covered with lime mud or ice.
 - High acoustic attenuation (for example, in a dry and hot environment).
 - In heavy rain or foam.
 - Obstructions with absorbing materials.
 - Flat obstacle facing the sensor, and echoes only occur within a specific range of angle.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Car recorder*

The driving recorder is used automatically to record the image, sound and driving information during the driving process.



When the engine switch is set to "ACC" or "IG-ON" position, the drive recorder and the indicator will be automatically turned on.

When the engine switch is set to "IG-OFF" position, the drive recorder and the indicator will be automatically turned off.

Auto OFF can be set to either immediate OFF or delayed OFF.

Emergency recording

The emergency recording function consists of automatic emergency recording and manual emergency recording.

Automatic emergency recording: When the system determines that there may be a collision or a tire burst, the emergency recording will be automatically turned on, the indicator will flash, to record the image and sound information within a period of time before and after turning on.

Manual emergency recording: When the emergency recording button is pressed, the emergency recording will be manually turned on and the indicator will flash, to record the image and sound information within a period of time before and after pressing the emergency recording button.

Car recorder setting

The driving recording system can be set in the audio system settings. (See P.229)

■ Video storage

The driving video and the emergency video should be stored with each other separately.

- The driving video should be a loop video, and when the storage space is insufficient, the previous videos will be automatically overwritten.
- The emergency video can be covered or not be covered; if it cannot be covered, when the storage space is insufficient, it should be manually deleted.

■ Video reading

The video can be played on a dedicated player. The common video player can only be used to play video and audio information, and cannot be used to read the driving information.

For player downloading, please consult China FAW authorized Red Flag dealer.

■ **Storage medium**

A universal SD card (8G-128G) can be used in the system.

 **CAUTIONS**

- **The driving recorder only has the driving record function and does not interfere with the driver's normal driving, and the driver must drive the vehicle carefully.**
- **Under low visibility conditions, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, or heavy smog, the driving recorder may not record the video clearly.**
- **In case of strong backlighting or insufficient ambient lighting, the driving recorder may not record the video clearly.**
- **If the driving record camera is blocked by snow, ice or dust on the windshield, please clean it in time.**

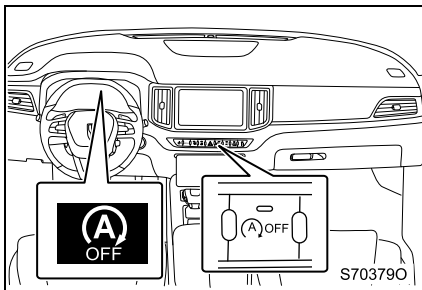
 **NOTICES**

- **Replace SD card**
 - Please use SD card with transfer rate of Class 10 and above.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems Idling start/stop system*

The purpose of the ISSS (Idle Stop-Start System) is to control the engine idle start and stop based on the driving operation and system requirements during a short stop.

Idling start/stop system ON/OFF



If the ISSS OFF button is pressed, the button indicator lamp is lit and the ISSS is deactivated. If the button is pressed again, the button indicator lamp goes out and the ISSS is activated.

- If the ISSS OFF button is pressed while parking
 - When the engine is stopped by the ISSS, pressing the ISSS OFF button restarts the engine. Meanwhile, the ISSS is deactivated and the indicator lamp on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.
 - When the ISSS is in the OFF state, pressing the ISSS OFF button resumes the ISSS without stopping the engine. Meanwhile, the idling start/stop system is turned on

Working process of the idling start/stop system

- Shut down the engine.
 - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero and hold the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator lamp on the combination instrument is lit.
 - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and then shift to P/N from D and hold the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator lamp on the combination instrument is lit.
 - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and then shift to P from D and release the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator lamp on the combination instrument is lit.
 - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and hold or release the brake when the EPB/AUTO HOLD functions, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator lamp on the combination instrument is lit.

■ Starting the engine

- With your vehicle in D/N, the engine shut down and the brake pedal pressed, releasing the brake pedal starts the engine automatically.
- With your vehicle in P, the engine shut down, pressing the brake pedal or acceleration pedal again starts the engine automatically.
- With your vehicle in activated EPB/AUTO HOLD, pressing the brake pedal or acceleration pedal again starts the engine automatically.
- After the gear is changed to the R position, the engine starts automatically.
- Turning the steering wheel may start the engine automatically.
- Starting the A/C or front windshield defogger button may start the engine automatically.

Idling start/stop system indicator lamp

- If the ISSS working indicator lamp (green) on the combination instrument is lit, it indicates that the ISSS is activated and in working.
- If the ISSS limiting indicator lamp (yellow) on the combination instrument is lit, it indicates that the ISSS is activated but does not meet the operating conditions.
- If the ISSS fault indicator lamp (yellow) on the combination instrument is lit, it indicates that the ISSS is faulty.

Working conditions of the idling start/stop system

■ Working conditions of the idling start/stop system

- Preconditions for stopping the engine automatically
The engine stops automatically if all the following conditions are met:
 - No-idling start/stop system corresponding fault.
 - The ISSS is activated.
 - The driver door is closed.
 - Driver side seat belt is fastened.
 - Engine compartment cover is closed.
 - The air conditioning system should meet the requirements.
 - The automatic parking system is OFF.
 - The battery has good performance and is adequate.
 - The current working conditions of vehicle meet the idling START/STOP setting conditions.
 - The selector lever is set in a position other than R.
 - The steering wheel angle should not be too large.
 - The driving mode should be in comfort or economical mode.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

- Preconditions for starting the engine automatically
The engine starts automatically if all the following conditions are met:
 - No-idling start/stop system corresponding fault.
 - The driver door is closed.
 - Engine compartment cover is closed.
 - Driver side seat belt is fastened.
- The engine starts again itself without your operation (one of the conditions is satisfied)
- The battery is low.
 - The brake vacuum is insufficient.
 - Comfort system requirements.
 - Engine or transmission protection requirements.



CAUTIONS

- **When idling start/stop system is in working**
 - Do not leave the vehicle when the ISSS stops the engine. Unexpected accidents may occur due to the engine's automatic starting function.
 - Do not use the ISSS to stop the engine if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated place. Due to the engine's automatic starting function, the engine may restart, causing the exhaust gas to gather and enter the vehicle, which may seriously endanger the health or even result in death.
 - For the sake of safety, ensure the doors are closed, the driver's belt is fastened, the engine hood is closed and the steering wheel is aligned; otherwise the idling START/STOP cannot be activated and the auto stop or auto start cannot be accessed.
 - In order to prevent frequent start and stop under extreme congestion conditions, the vehicle start and stop can be activated again at the speed of greater than 5km/h after a stop.
 - In the idle stop status, if the system detects that the relevant conditions are not met, the engine may be started automatically even if the brake pedal is not trigged.
 - In the idle stop status, if the start operation is trigged because the driver unlocks the seat belt or opens the door, that the engine should be manually started will be displayed on the dashboard; at this time, these operations should be resumed by the driver or the shift handle should be place in P/N position and the vehicle should be manually started with the manual switch.
- **In order to ensure the driving performance and the comfort of the vehicle and protect all systems, there are many prerequisites for the activation of the idle start and stop system, such as low battery capacity or temperature, improper air conditioning system, low engine coolant temperature, high altitude, non-comfort or economical driving modes, excessive slope, low brake vacuum, high transmission temperature, and related system failures. After the vehicle stops by brake application, if the above conditions cannot stop the engine, the meter will show the symbol of START/STOP restriction. Therefore, do not care the shutdown while driving. The idling START/STOP system integrates the driving performance, safety and comfort factors to ensure the driving course.**

 **NOTICES**

- **After the engine stops automatically, if the engine switch is pressed, the vehicle will not be started.**
- **When the vehicle is in the idle-stop state, the start-stop function is terminated if one of the following conditions occurs. If you trigger the start-up operation, the instrument reminds you of starting the engine manually.**
 - The engine compartment cover is opened or the transmission sends a signal to disable start-up.
 - The seat belt is unfastened and the door is opened.
 - The seat belt is unfastened or the door is opened. The door is still opened after a period of time.
- **When the A/C system is in one of the following states, the ISSS is not allowed to be activated:**
 - The A/C system is in defrosting/defogging mode.
 - The temperature in the vehicle has not reached the target comfort temperature range.
 - Outdoor temperature is high or low.
- **When the transmission sends a disabled start/stop signal, the ISSS is not allowed to be activated.**
 - Prevent the risk of dragging caused by the engagement of drive chains when starting after shutdown.
- **You are the most important controller of your vehicle. The idling start/ stop system is only a driving assistance system. You should control your vehicle based on the actual road conditions and drive it with caution.**

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

Driver assistance system

Functions integrated by ESC (Electronic Stability Program), which may be different according to different vehicle models. To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

- **Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**
Help to prevent skidding or deviation due to wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface.
- **Electronic brake force distribution (EBD)**
Distribute dynamic brakeforce of front and rear wheels in proportion according to vehicle load, road conditions and brakeforce changes to improve the vehicle braking stability and handling.
- **Traction Control System (TCS)**
Maintains drive power and help prevent any of the drive wheels from spinning when the vehicle is started or accelerated on a slippery road surface.
- **Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)**
Fast depress the brake pedal to compensate the brakeforce. The brakeforce may increase effectively.
- **Hydraulic Brake Boost (HBB)**
If the brake system vacuum is insufficient, compensate the braking force to increase it.
- **Hill Descent Control (HDC)**
When the vehicle is driven at a speed of 8~35km/h on a downhill, the corresponding braking force should be applied to the wheels to keep a stable driving speed.
- **Hill Hold Control (HHC)**
When the driver moves the foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal during the process from the parking to start on a downhill, the function is used properly to maintain the brake pressure applied by the driver to prevent the vehicle from backward movement.
- **Body Stability Control (ESC)**
It can help the driver to control the lateral sliding and maintain the correct running trace in the case of sudden turning or turning on the slippery road.
- **Deceleration control with the active cruise control system (CDD-S)***
The auxiliary ACC adaptive cruise control system is used to carry out the adaptive cruise deceleration control.
- **Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake (CDP)**
Long pull EPB button to enter the deceleration state adaptively.
- **AUTO HOLD***
When the vehicle is still, the parking brake is applied by the hydraulic system and the parking is briefly maintained. After that, a function of parking is performed by the electronic parking system, which can be turned off/on by the button.

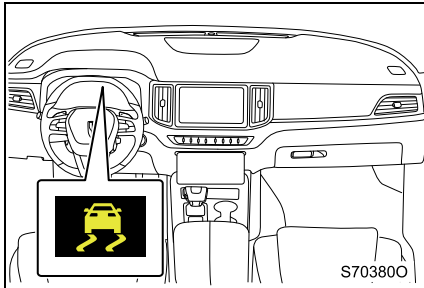
■ **Active braking pivot (ABP) ***

When the brake pedal is depressed for emergency, it can enhance the brake response speed.

■ **Electrical power steering system (EPS)**

It uses motor to reduce the required force of turning steering wheel.

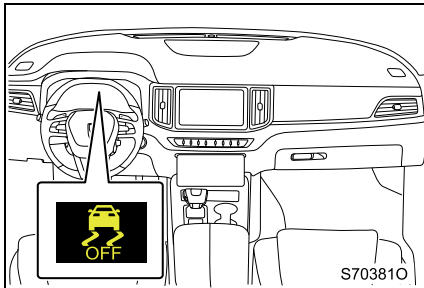
When TCS/ESC are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of wheel slip or front wheels spin, the slip indicator flashes to indicate that the TCS/ ESC systems are in working.

Disabling ESC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the ESC may reduce the power from the engine to the wheels. Turn the system off to move the vehicle back and forth to free it.



It can be set to turn on and off the ESC in the vehicle setting of the audio system. (See P.230)

■ **The ESC responds automatically**

When the engine is restarted after ESC/TCS is turned off or the vehicle is driven at a certain speed, the system will be automatically activated again.

4-5. Using Other Driving Systems

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, HBA, TCS, ESC, CDP, CDD-S and AUTO HOLD**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. The sound does not mean that the system has fault.
- Any of the following normal conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. These conditions do not mean any fault occurs.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

CAUTIONS

■ **Handling of tires and suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system malfunction.

■ **The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- Tires with inadequate gripping capability are used.
- The vehicle slips while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

■ **Stopping distance of ABS when operating on special road surfaces**

ABS is not designed for shortening the brake distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- When driving with tire chains.
- When driving over bumps in the road.
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven surfaces.

■ **TCS may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TCS system is operating. Do not drive under out-of-control or out-of-power conditions.

■ **When the ESC is activated**

If the indicator lamp flashes, always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident.

■ **When ESC shuts off**

Exercise extreme caution and drive the vehicle at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. The ESC can ensure the stability and driving force of the vehicle. Do not disable it unless there is no need to use it.

■ **When replacing the wheel**

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level. The ABS and EPS systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle. Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for further information when replacing tires and/or wheels.

Key points for driving in winter

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Be sure to drive in a way that is suitable for the main weather conditions in winter.

■ Preparations for driving in winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the outside temperatures.

- Engine oil
- Coolant
- Washer fluid

- Make sure the 12V battery performance is favorable.

- If necessary, have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the driving tires.

Ensure that all tires are of the same size and brand, and that the chains match the size of the tires.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Take the following measures based on the driving conditions:

- Do not forcibly open the frozen window or move the frozen wipers. Always use warm water to melt the frozen parts. Wipe the melt water immediately to prevent icing again.
- To ensure proper operation of the fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air intake grille.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel housing or on the brakes.
- Before getting on, remove snow or mud from the soles.

■ While driving

Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed according to the road conditions.

■ When parking

Park the vehicle and place the shift handle to P position; do not apply the electronic parking brake. Otherwise, the parking brake may be frozen and cannot be released

Tire Chain Selection

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.

The dimensions of tire chains should be adjusted based on the size of each tire.

4-6. Driving Information

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on locations and types of roads. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Install the chain on the driving tire.

Re-tighten the chain after driving 0.5 - 1.0km.

■ Tire chain

Please take the following precautions when installing or removing tire chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install the chain on the driving tire.
- Install tire chains following the instructions in the user manual of the tire chains.



CAUTIONS

■ Driving when equipped with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause serious injury or even death.

- Use only the specified type of tires that fit your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limits or the speed limits specified for the snow tires being used.
- Install snow tires for all wheels.

■ Driving when equipped with tire chains

In order to avoid the possibility of causing the vehicle unable to run safely and causing serious injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, the following precautions should be observed:

- Never exceed the specified speed limit of tire chains when driving.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turning and braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a bend to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

5-1. Basic Operations		5-12. Mobile phone APP	
Multimedia display	210	Using the mobile phone APP*	263
Multimedia switch on the steering wheel.....	217	5-13. Hongqi Smart Connect	
USB port	218	Using Hongqi Smart Connect*	266
5-2. Settings			
System settings.....	220		
Vehicle settings	225		
5-3. Navigation			
Basic functions.....	233		
Using the navigation	235		
5-4. Radio			
Using the radio.....	240		
5-5. Music			
Music play	243		
5-6. Bluetooth Music			
Video play	247		
5-7. Video			
Image viewing	250		
5-8. Images			
Using the hands-free system ..	253		
5-9. Hands-free System			
Bluetooth phone.....	256		
5-10. Voice Recognition			
Using the voice recognition function	260		
5-11. Browser			
Via browser	262		

5-1. Basic Operations

Multimedia display

The user can control the navigation, call, radio, music, vehicle setting and A/C through the main menu interface on the multi-media display.

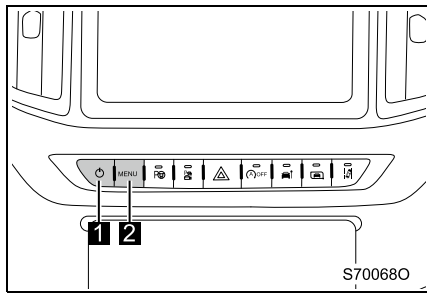
Front-row entertainment display



S/N	Name	Function
1	Navigation	Go to the navigation application (see P.233)
2	Phone	Go to the phone application (see P.252)
3	Radio	Go to the radio application (see P.240)
4	Music	Go to the music application (see P.243)
5	Automobiles	Go to the vehicle settings (see P.225)
6	A/C	Go to the A/C application (see P.276)
7	Video	Go to the video application (see P.247)
8	Image	Go to the image application (see P.250)
9	System settings	Go to the system settings (see P.220)

10	Browser	Enter the browser APP (see P.262)
11	Hongqi Smart Connect	Go to the Hongqi Smart Connect (see P.266)
12	Frequently used menu	<p>Press and hold APP icon to drag it to the frequently used menu and access APP with the frequently used menu shortcut.</p> <p>APPs can be moved/deleted from the frequently used menu by pressing and holding APP icon in the frequently used menu.</p> <p>Note: Up to 6 APPs can be added to the frequently used menu.</p>

■ Buttons on the panel



1 Power button

In OFF state, short pressing will start; in ON state, short pressing will switch off/on the screen.

In the power-on status, if pressing and holding the button for 3s, the audio system will be turned off.

2 MENU Button

If pressing the button, it will be returned to the home page of the audio system.

5-1. Basic Operations

Activate the rear entertainment screen*

Users can operate radio, music, video, pictures, and system settings with the rear entertainment screen.



Serial No.	Name	Function
1	Radio	Go to the radio application
2	Music	Go to the music application
3	Video	Go to the video application
4	Image	Go to the image application
5	System settings	Go to the system settings

■ Activate the rear entertainment screen

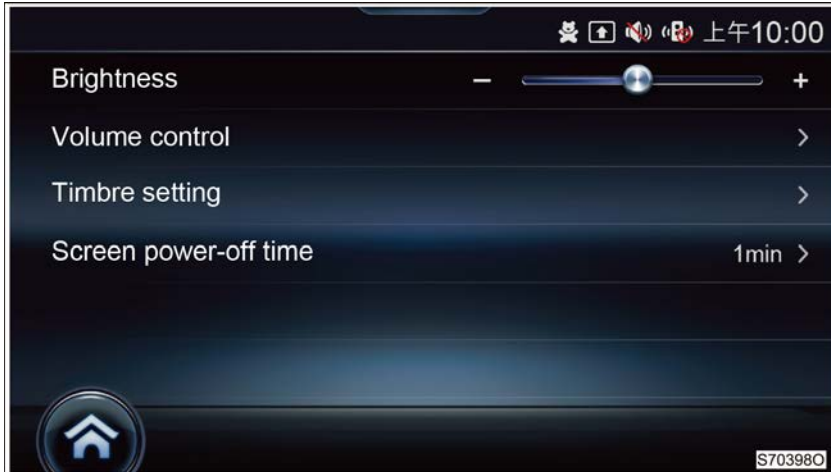
When the screen is powered off, the rear entertainment system can be activated by double-clicking the rear entertainment screen.

■ Connect the headphones

The headphone jack is located at the lower right of the rear entertainment screen. When the headphones are connected, the sound from the rear entertainment system will be output through the headphones.

■ Rear entertainment system settings

Click the rear entertainment screen [System Settings] to enter the setting interface.



1 Brightness

To adjust the screen brightness, touch the key [+] or [-] or drag the brightness setting bar.

2 Volume control

It can be used to adjust the multimedia volume and the button volume.

To adjust the volume, touch the key [+] or [-] or drag the volume setting bar.

3 Timbre setting

It can adjust the value of treble, mediant and bass.

To adjust the sound value, touch the key [+] or [-] or drag the timbre setting bar.

4 Screen power-off time

It can be used to set as 1min, 5min, 15min, or non-power-off mode.

5-1. Basic Operations

Three-screen linkage *

The two rear entertainment screens can be controlled with the front entertainment screen.

■ Control the rear entertainment screens with the front entertainment screen

Pull down and out the shortcut menu above the status bar on the front entertainment screen to control the rear entertainment screens.



1 Rear entertainment

It is used to disable and enable the rear entertainment system.

When "Disable" button is selected, the rear entertainment system will not be used.

2 Rear speaker

It is used to disable and enable the speaker of the rear entertainment screens.

3 Child mode (Left rear screen)

It is used to synchronize the video played on the front entertainment screen to the rear left screen.

This button can be used to operate the rear entertainment screens only when a video is played on the front entertainment screen.

4 Child mode (rear right screen)

It is used to synchronize the video played on the front entertainment screen to the rear right screen.

This button can be used to operate the rear entertainment screens only when a video is played on the front entertainment screen.

■ **Synchronize the rear entertainment screens (with the rear left entertainment screen as an example)**

In the upper part of the rear entertainment screen, pull down the shortcut setting interface to set the speaker, volume and screen brightness, and synchronize the screen.



1 Synchronize the center screen (front entertainment screen)

When it is selected, the video played on the front entertainment screen will be synchronized.

When it is not selected, a gray image will be displayed.

2 Synchronize the rear right screen (rear right entertainment screen)

If it is selected, the video played on the rear right entertainment screen will be synchronized.

When it is not selected, a gray image will be displayed.

3 Speaker

When the rear speaker switch is turned on from the front entertainment screen, the system speaker occupied by the current entertainment screen can be selected.

4 Muting

It can be used to mute and unmute the current entertainment screen.

5 Speaker

When the system speaker is occupied, the system speaker volume can be adjusted; when the system speaker is not occupied, the headphone volume on the current entertainment screen can be adjusted.

6 Brightness

It can be used to adjust the brightness of the current entertainment screen.

5-1. Basic Operations

■ Using the phone

When the audio system is operated, if the mobile phone is used in or near the vehicle, the audio system speaker may issue an interference noise.

■ When using the multimedia display

- If the multimedia display is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The display might be dark or hard to watch clearly when you wear a pair of sunglasses, please change the multimedia screen's angle or take off your sunglasses.
- Do not expose the multimedia screen under the blazing sun for quite a long time.
- Do not expose the multimedia screen under moisture, dusts, fumes or other pollution.

■ To avoid any damage to the multimedia display

- Gently touch the multimedia display with your fingers when operating; if the contents displayed on the display are unable to be called, it means the contents might not be called currently; please do not touch the display too hard to prevent damaging the device.
- Please do not use sharp objects or hard objects with edges to touch or sweep the multimedia display, or the display might be damaged.
- Please do not spray any fluid to the multimedia display; because if any fluid leaks into the device, the electronic components will be damaged.
- When cleaning the multimedia display surface, please use soft cloth, and do not use any dilute or other chemical cleaner for wiping.

NOTICES

■ **Since this system is highly sensitive, it will generate noise when approaching the television tower, broadcast station, power plant or other places emitting strong radio wave or electric noise interference.**

■ Preventing low battery power

Do not use the audio system for a long time when the engine is not started.

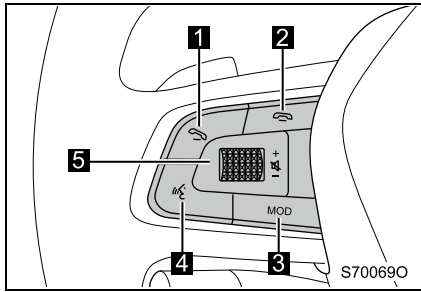
■ Prevent audio system damage

- Do not spill drinks or other liquids onto the audio system. If the fluid or other objects fall into this unit, immediately switch off the power and contact the authorized dealer of FAW HONGQI.
- Do not repair, disassemble or modify the unit yourself. In the case of malfunction, immediately shut down the audio system and contact the authorized dealer of FAW HONGQI.

5-1. Basic Operations

Multimedia switch on the steering wheel

Some multimedia features can be controlled using the multimedia switches on the steering wheel.



- 1** Answer phone call button
- 2** End phone call button
- 3** MOD button
- 4** Voice recognition button
- 5** Volume adjustment/mute button

S/N	Function
1	When Bluetooth phone is connected, if pressing it, the mobile APPs can be opened; when there is a call, if pressing it, the call can be answered.
2	If there is call out, in or talking, press this can hang up.
3	Press: switch among FM → AMUSB1 → USB2 → local → favorite list → FM.
4	Short press: activate/exit voice recognition.
5	Scroll up/down: Volume up/down or unmute; Press: Mute/unmute.

CAUTIONS

■ When driving

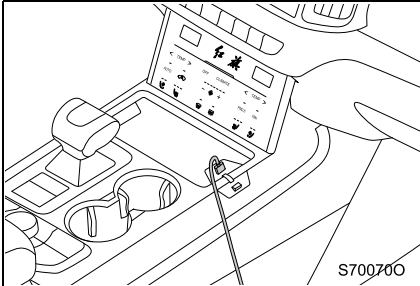
Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

5-1. Basic Operations

USB port

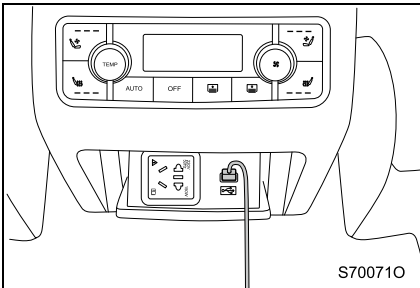
Connect a USB device to the USB port, go to the corresponding mode, then you can operate it via the audio system.

To use a USB1 port



Open USB1 port cap and connect to an external multimedia source.

To use a USB2 port



Press 220V power socket and the upper part of USB port cap to open the cap and connect the external multimedia source.

■ USB memory

Connect the USB memory device.

If the USB memory device is not started, turn it on.

CAUTIONS

■ When driving

Do not connect any device or operate its control buttons to prevent any accident.

 **NOTICES**

■ **USB port**

- The USB port must be kept clean. If any foreign matter or fluid enters into the port, the audio system might be damaged.
- Do not insert any high-current USB device except a USB stick or a mobile telephone, including mobile hard disk drives and portable power sources.

■ **Mobile phone USB cable**

- It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile phone for connection to ensure a stable connection.

5-2. Settings* System settings

Go to the main interface of system settings by tapping the button [System Settings] on the screen on the main menu interface.

Main interface of system settings



- 1 Go to the System Settings interface (see P.221)
- 2 Go to the Audiovisual interface (see P.223)
- 3 Go to the Document Management interface (see P.224)

System settings

**1** Networking mode

- In WLAN mode: Connect the wireless network via WLAN settings.
- In mobile network mode: Access the network via the network environment of the built-in network card.

2 WLAN setting up

- Enable WLAN: press the key [ON] on WLAN setting interface.
- Search for WLAN: Set WLAN to On and click [Search] button on the screen to find the network.
- Connect the WLAN: select the network to access and enter the password to connect.
- Disconnect WLAN: In the network list interface, click [Disconnect] button on the screen to disconnect the corresponding network connection.

3 Bluetooth settings

- Enable Bluetooth: press the key [ON] on Bluetooth setting interface.
- Search Bluetooth: set Bluetooth to ON and press [SEARCH] on the screen to search Bluetooth equipment.
- Connect the Bluetooth: select the Bluetooth equipment to be connected to match. After the connection succeeds, the connection status will be displayed.
- Disconnect the Bluetooth: in the Bluetooth equipment list interface, touch [OFF] to disconnect the corresponding Bluetooth equipment.
- Delete Bluetooth: in the Bluetooth equipment list interface, touch [DELETE] to delete corresponding Bluetooth equipment.

5-2. Settings*

- Setting: to set the Bluetooth visibility and equipment name etc.
- 4** Personal hotspot
 - Enable personal hotspot: press the key [ON] on personal hotspot interface.
 - Edit hotspot name: set personal hotspot to ON, enter the name in editing interface and confirm to complete the name editing.
 - Password setting: set personal hotspot to ON, enter the new password in the password setting interface and confirm to complete the password setting.
- 5** Voice recognition
 - Voice wake-up: Can be set to ON or OFF.
 - Main wake-up words: Click [Add] button in the main wake-up word interface of the screen to enter the editing interface and add the wake-up words.
 - TTS speaker can be set to a sweet or standard female voice.
- 6** System language
 - The system can be set to Chinese or English.
- 7** Time and date
 - 24h system: Select [ON] for 24h system; select [OFF] for 12h system.
 - Set time: set the auto setting to [OFF], touch the time bar. After setting the date, click OK to complete the time modification.
 - Set date: set the auto setting to [OFF], touch the date bar. After setting the date, click OK to complete the date modification.
- 8** About this unit
 - You can view system information.
- 9** Restore factory settings
 - You can restore the factory setting.
- 10** Upgraded system
 - The system can be upgraded via USB. For specific online upgrade operation, please refer to the system guidance or contact China FAW authorized Redflag dealer.

Audiovisual settings



- 1** Theme mode
It can be set to automatic, day or night modes.
- 2** Brightness
Click [+] or [-] button on the screen or drag the brightness setting bar to adjust the backlight brightness in the vehicle.
- 3** Volume control
It can adjust the key tone, radar tone, SOS and phone volume.
To adjust the volume, touch the key [+] or [-] or drag the volume setting bar.
- 4** Timbre setting
It can adjust the value of treble, mediant and bass.
To adjust the sound value, touch the key [+] or [-] or drag the timbre setting bar.
- 5** Sound field setting
Select the best listening point by dragging the round cursor side to side.
- 6** Environment tone effect
It can be selected from four modes of CenterPoint®, normal balance, driver seat priority, and rear seat priority.
When the sound source is the radio, CenterPoint® cannot be selected.

5-2. Settings*

Document management

Through the file management, the user can view, search, play and delete the files in the media source.



Shortcut menu

When the audio system is turned on, pull down the shortcut menu at the top of the screen status bar, to perform shortcut operations and information viewing on functions such as Bluetooth, personal hotspot, and three-screen interaction.



5-2. Settings*

Vehicle settings

Click [Vehicle] button in the main menu interface of the screen to enter the main interface of the vehicle settings.

Vehicle setting main interface



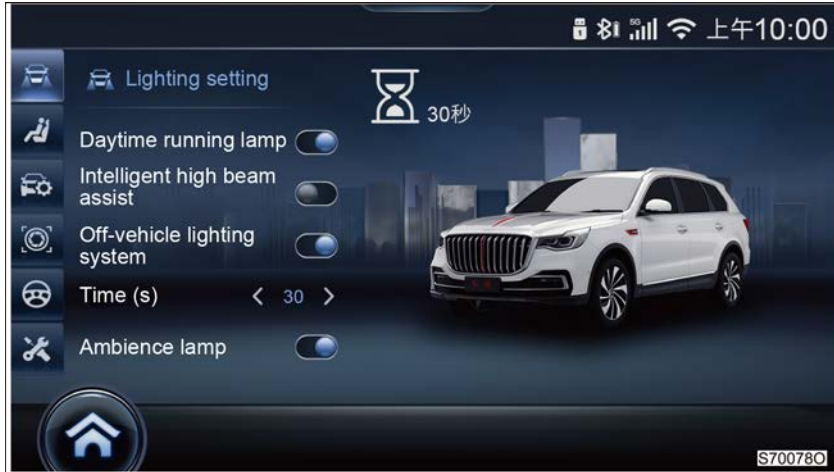
- 1 Go to the Lighting Setting interface (see P.226)
- 2 Go to the Comfort Setting interface (see P.227)
- 3 Go to the Driver Assistance interface (see P.228)
- 4 Go to the Car Recorder Setting interface (see P.229)
- 5 Go to the Driving Mode Setting interface (see P.230)
- 6 Enter the maintenance setting interface(see P.231)
- 7 Enter the interior setting interface(see P.232)
- 8 Vehicle information display

5

Audio System

5-2. Settings *

Lighting setting



- 1** Daytime running lamp
Set DRL on/off.
- 2** Intelligent high beam assist
Set the IHC On and Off.
- 3** Off-vehicle lighting system
Set leaving lighting on/off.
It can be used for 15s/30s/60s time settings.
- 4** Ambience lamp
Setting the ambience light on/off.
It can be used for color adjustment and 4-level brightness adjustment.

Comfort setting

**1** Safe unlocking

Set safe unlocking on/off.

On: press the unlocking key on the remote controller once and the driver's side door will be unlocked;

Press the unlocking key twice continuously and all the doors will be unlocked.

OFF: Press the remote control unlock button once to unlock all doors.

2 Facilitate in and out

Set that the welcome function on the steering wheel is turned on/off.

3 Automatically turn on the rear wiper

Set that the rear wiper as Auto ON.

4 Exterior rearview mirror auto folding

Set exterior rearview mirror auto folding or not upon vehicle locking.

5 Flip down the right rearview mirror

Set that the right rearview mirror will automatically be flipped down during reversing process.

6 Auto parking upon power off

Set auto parking or not upon power off.

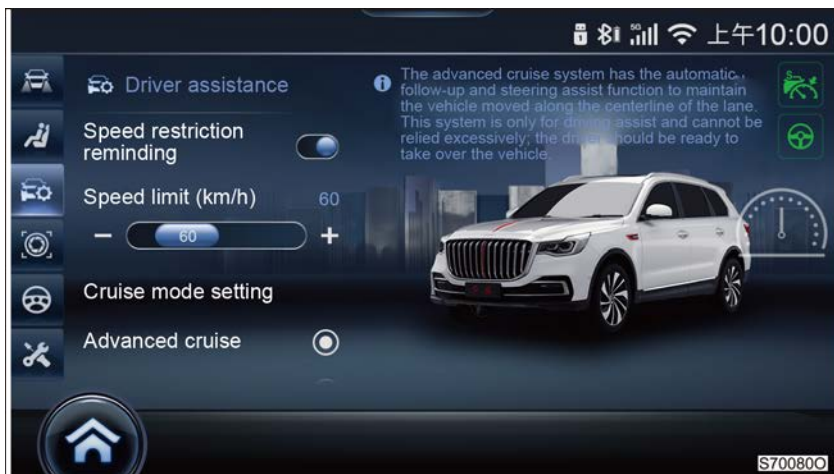
When the automatic parking brake is turned off, a prompt will be displayed on the screen.

7 Rear seat belt unfastened indicator lamp

Set rear seat belt unfastened reminding on/off.

5-2. Settings*

Driver assistance



- 1** Speed restriction reminding
Set the speed restriction reminding on/off.
Vehicle speed restriction range:30-240km/h.
- 2** Cruise mode setting
Set the cruise mode to the advanced cruise or the adaptive cruise.
- 3** Lane keeping assist system
Set the reminder mode and the early warning sensitivity in the lane keeping assist system.
- 4** Front collision warning
Set the early warning prior to collision on/off.
- 5** Advanced emergency braking
Set the advanced emergency brake ON/OFF.
- 6** Body Stability Control (ESC)
Set the body stability control ON/OFF.

Car recorder

**1** Car recorder

Set the driving recorder on/off

2 Resolution

The resolution can be set to 1080x1920 or 720x1280.

3 The vehicle driving information overlay

The vehicle driving information overlay can be set to ON/OFF.

When the vehicle driving information overlay is turned on, the current driving information (such as time, speed, acceleration/brake pedal status, turn signal status, etc.) will be recorded.

4 Record the video and sound at the same time

Set the sound recording ON/OFF when recording the video.

5 Delayed shutdown (min)

The delayed shutdown can be set to 1min/3min/OFF.

6 Parking monitor

Set the parking monitor ON/OFF.

After the parking monitor is turned on and the engine switch is placed in "IG-OFF" mode, if the anti-theft alarm is triggered or there is a collision, a 1min video will be recorded.

7 Format SD card

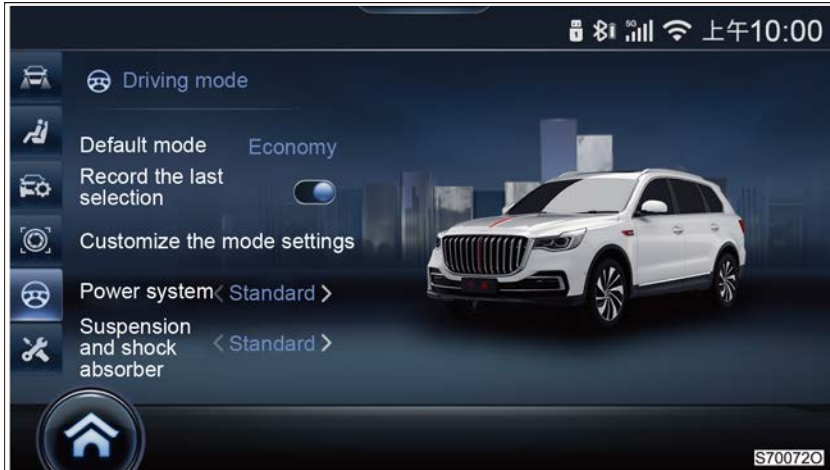
Click [Format SD Card] button on the screen to format SD card.

8 Restore factory settings

Click [Restore Factory Settings] button on the screen to restore the system to the factory status.

5-2. Settings *

Driving mode



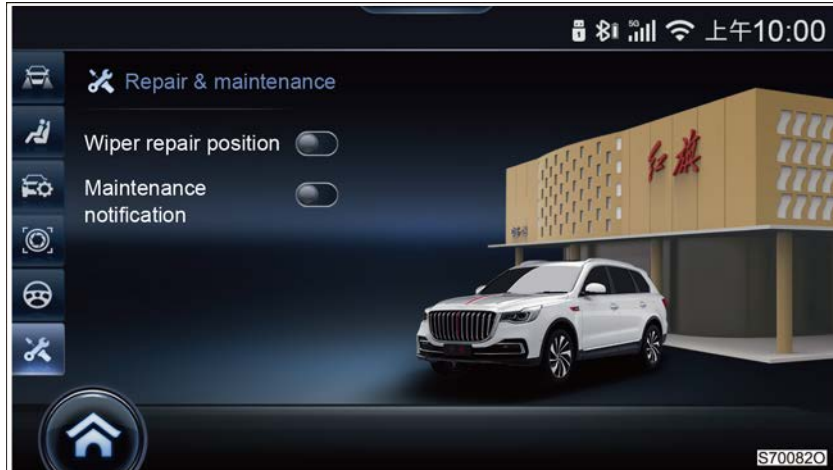
1 Default mode

The default driving mode of the system is the economic mode. When the last selection memory mode is turned on and after the vehicle is powered on, the last selected driving mode will be recorded.

2 Customize the mode settings

- Power system: It can be set to standard, economic, snow, off-road, sand or sport mode.
- Suspension and shock absorbers: They can be set to standard, economical, comfortable, sport, snow, or off-road mode.
- Steering power: It can be set to sport or comfort mode.
- Transfer: It can be set to two-wheel drive, four-wheel drive, or full-time four-wheel drive mode.

Repair & maintenance

**1** Wiper repair position

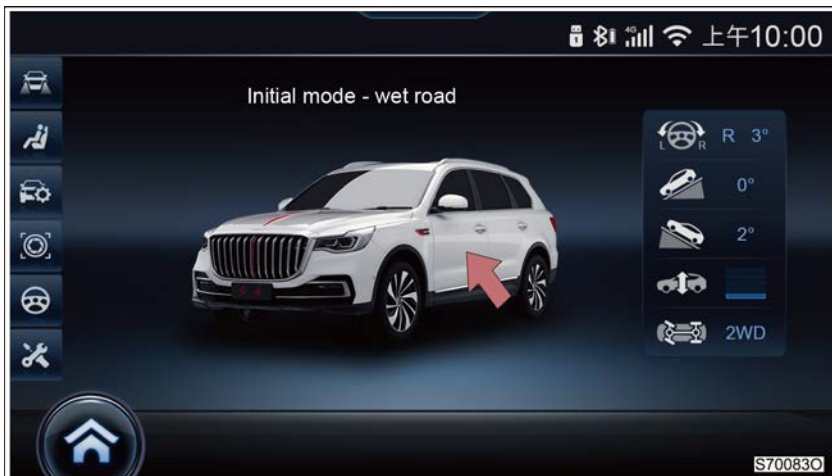
The wiper maintenance position is OFF by default, if it is selected as ON, the wiper will be placed in the maintenance position when possible.

2 Maintenance notification

- Mileage interval setting: in the setting interface, the maintenance interval mileage can be viewed and set.
- Time interval setting: in the setting interface, the maintenance time interval can be viewed and set.

5-2. Settings*

Interior setting



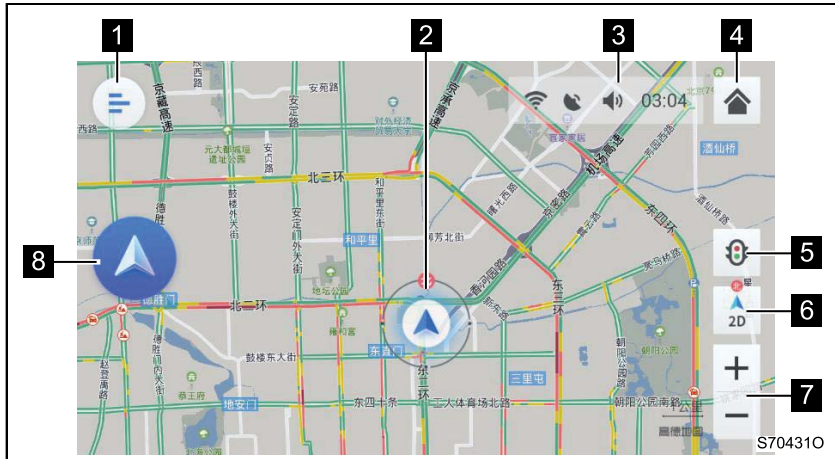
- 1 Click the driver and front passenger doors to enter the interior setting interface.
Move the color setting bar at the bottom of the screen to the left and right to set the ambient light color; move it up and down on the left side of the screen to adjust the brightness of the dashboard and backlight*; move it up and down on the right side of the screen to adjust the brightness of the ambient light.

5-3. Navigation *

Basic functions

Navigation map interface

Map mode interface



1 Main menu

Click it to enter the main menu interface.

2 Current position

Display the current position of vehicle.

3 Status bar

Touch to deploy the status bar information.

4 Return

Return audio system main interface.

5 Road condition switch

Touch to open the real time road condition.

6 View mode

Click it to switch to 2D north upward/2D head upward/3D head upward mode.

7 Scale

It can magnify or reduce the map display scale.

8 Destination

Touch to search the destination and set navigation.

5

Audio System

5-3. Navigation *


■ Navigation mode interface

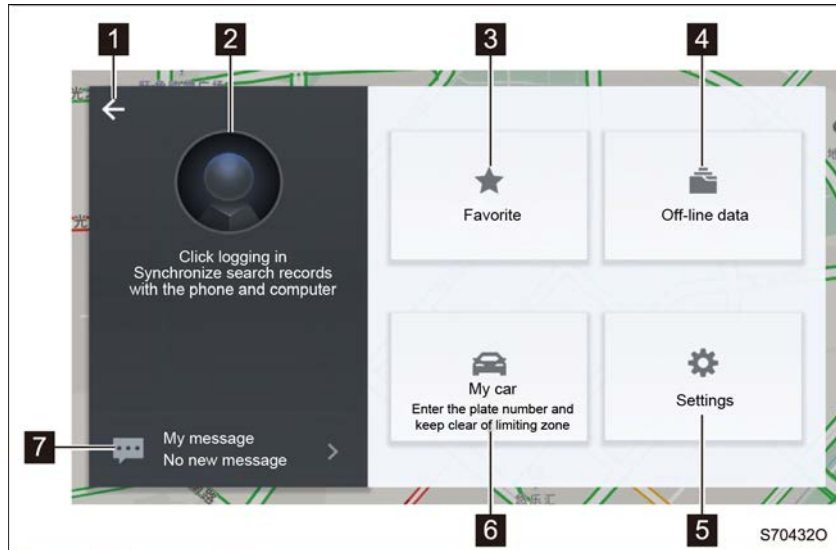


- 1** Distance to next intersection and road name
Display the remaining distance to the next intersection and the road name at the next intersection.
- 2** Lane information
Display the information of lane in which the vehicle is.
- 3** Navigation status bar
Touch to deploy the status bar information.
- 4** Name of front road
Display the name of road to access.
- 5** Hawk view map road condition and progress
Display the road condition in the navigation route and the navigation progress.
- 6** Hawk view map + full travel overview
Display the entire navigation route map.
- 7** Remaining mileage and and time
Display the remaining distance and time to destination
- 8** Turn arrowhead
Display the advance direct of next intersection.

5-4. Radio Using the navigation

Main menu

Click the screen button  on the navigation interface to enter the main menu interface.



1 Return

Click it to enter the map mode interface.

2 Login

In the case of on-board unit connecting network, the user can log in and synchronize the guidance information with the phone.

3 Favorite

Click it to enter the favorites interface for quickly navigation with the favorites.

4 Off-line data

Click it to enter the offline data interface to manage the offline data.

5 Set

Touch to access the setting interface to set the route planning, sound reporting and map display etc.

6 My car

Click it to enter my vehicle interface to manage my vehicle.

7 My message

Click it to enter my message interface to view my message.

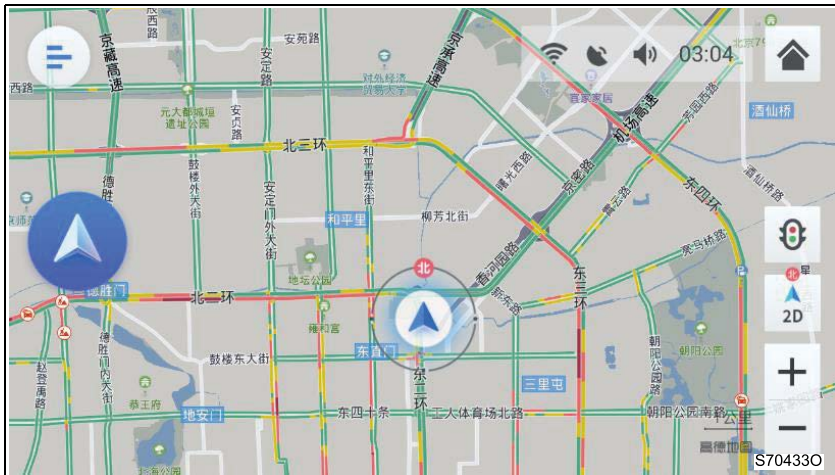
5-3. Navigation

Set destination

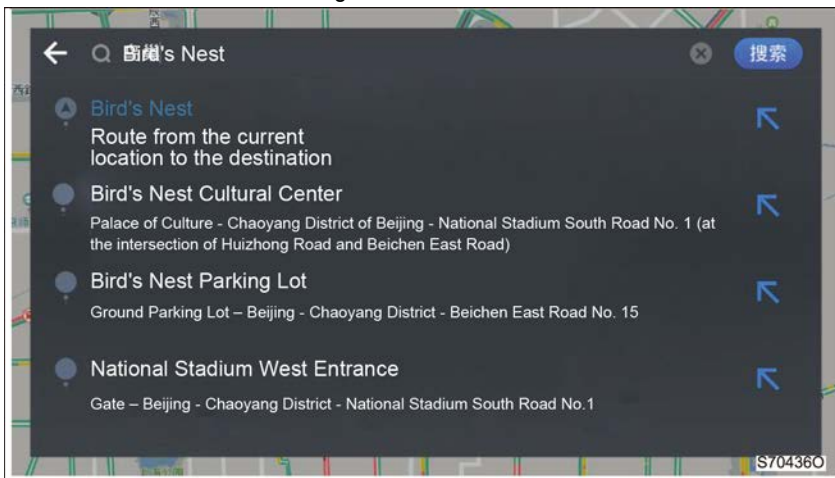
The user can set the destination by POI (Point of Interest) search, name search, quick navigation and point saving. Below shows how to set by name search.

■ Name searching

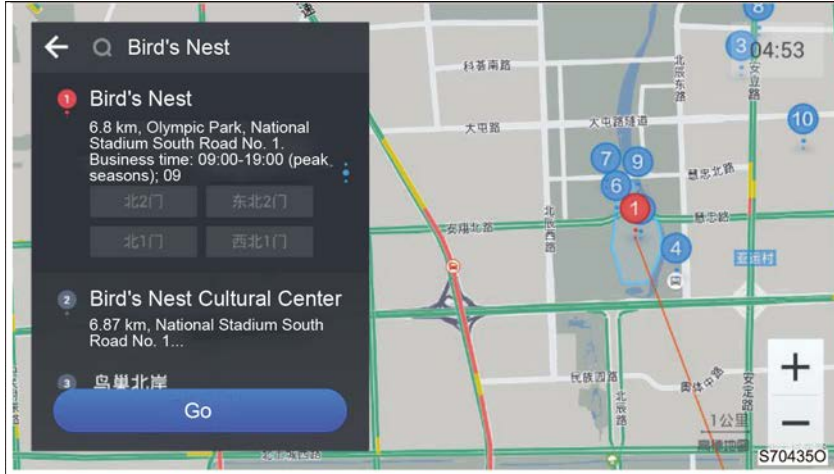
Step 1 Press [Destination] button on the map mode interface to enter the search interface.



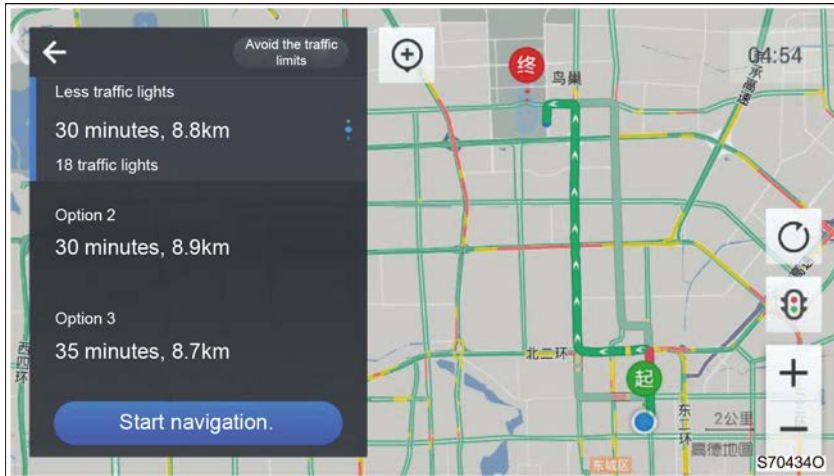
Step 2 Enter the destination in the search interface and click [Search] button to enter the searching result interface.



Step 3 Select the destination and click [Go Here] to enter the route planning interface.



Step 4 After planning multiple routes on the route planning interface and press [Start Navigation] to start the navigation.



Note: the billing information can be displayed online.

 **CAUTIONS**

- **To reduce the risk of an accident**
 - While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- **When driving**
 - When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
 - For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.
 - Ensure to observe the highway codes and note the road conditions while driving. If the traffic signs on the road are changed, the route guide may provide the wrong message, for example, the direction of one-way lane.
 - During the route navigation through the navigation system, follow the actual traffic rules. If drive according to the navigation system only, there is the possibilities of violating traffic rules and traffic accident.
 - The driver cannot search address while driving. Such operation must be made with the vehicle stopped. Failure to observe the front situations may result in a traffic accident.
 - Listen to the voice prompt while driving so long as possible. Quickly view the screen in safe conditions. Nonetheless, do not completely rely on the voice guide. This is for reference only. If the system cannot accurately locate the current position, the voice guide may not be correct, or delay or mute.
 - Due to the rapid development of traffic construction, the map data in this system may not be exactly the same as the actual traffic instructions. Must strictly follow the actual road conditions, on-site signs and other traffic rules. The traffic signs and rules always take precedence of suggestion from navigation system. In no case should be driver substitute his judgment by this system.
 - This system cannot provide some warning messages such as the local safety conditions, road conditions, emergency rescue service available or not. If the safety conditions of a certain area are uncertain, do not drive in.
 - Use this system only in the regions allowed by law. In some national/local regulations, do not use the video and navigation screens within the driver's field of vision.
 - Do not disconnect the this product or refit it without permission; otherwise it may result in traffic accidents, fire or electric shock etc.
 - If the foreign matter or water falls into this system and result in abnormal situation, immediately stop using and contact the authorized dealer of FAW HONGQI. If not, it may result in fault.
 - Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system.
 - When wiping the multimedia display, set the engine switch to "IG-OFF" mode and use a soft dry cloth. Any thick rag, chemical rag or organic reagent (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.) can damage or deteriorate the panel. Don't use it.
 - While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.

 NOTICES

- **All the current navigation systems have certain limitation. The satellite condition, road structure and vehicle condition all can impact the vehicle positioning precision and consequently impact the normal use of the system functions. In case of any problem, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.**
- **When Failure Arises**
Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.
- **Network connection quality**
The quality of network connection varies with the change of antenna position, the difference of signal intensity and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitters), which makes it difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.
- **Because on-board interconnection system versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.**

5-4. Radio Using the radio

Radio has two wave bands: FM and AM.



How to enter the radio screen:

Method 1: Press [MOD] button on the steering wheel to switch it to the radio interface.

Method 2: Click [Radio] button on the screen to enter the radio interface.

Searching for channels

- Manually modulating
Touch/drag the frequency bar to carry out manual tuning.
- Manually searching
Manually search for channels by tapping the screen buttons ◀ and ▶.
- Preset the radio
Preview the stations through the screen key ⏮ .. Touching the screen key ⏭ while previewing will stop the preview.
- Automatic update
Click the screen button ≡ on the radio interface to enter the station list interface, select [AM Station List] or [FM Station List] and click the screen button 🔍 to automatically search for the effective station within the current band, and store it in the station list, and click the screen button ↶ to stop the searching.

Selecting channels

Radio Broadcast List

- By tapping the screen button ≡ on the Radio interface, go to the List of Preset Channels, and the user can directly select a channel in the list for playing.

Favorite station list

- By tapping the screen button ♡ on the Radio interface, go to the List of Favorite Channels, and the user can directly select a channel in the list for playing.

Collecting channels

The system supports to save channels in the following ways:



- By tapping the screen button on the Radio interface, store the currently playing channel to the list of favorite channels.
- Click the screen button ♡ in front of a station in the station list to store the current station in the favorite station list.
- Press and hold a station in the station list to select the station, and drag and store it in the favorite station list.

5-4. Radio

Editing the list of channels

■ Favorite stations

Change the station order in the list: Press and hold a station on the favorite station list interface to select it and adjust the station order in your favorite list.

Delete station: in the favorite station list interface, touch the screen key  to access the editing mode. Select the station to be deleted in the list or touch the screen key [all] and touch the screen key  to delete the checked stations.

■ Antenna

The radio antenna is mounted inside the shark fin antenna.

CAUTIONS

■ To reduce the risk of an accident

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

■ When driving

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.

NOTICES

■ Receiving sensitivity

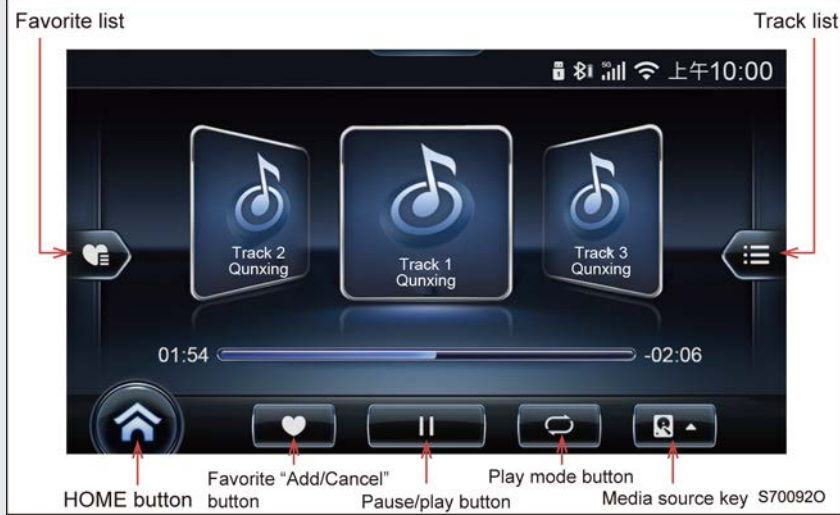
It is difficult to maintain perfect reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.

■ When any fault occurs

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

5-5. Music
Music play

The audio play main interface includes the artist name, track name and album cover.







Method to access music interface:

Method 1: Press the steering wheel button [MED] to switch to the music interface.

Method 2: Click [Music] button on the screen to enter the music interface.

5-5. Music

Play control



- **Pause/Play**
Tap the screen button 
- **Play progress control**
By tapping/dragging the progress bar, you can control the play progress. (When the music source is a Bluetooth, the progress bar is not adjustable).
- **Switching tracks**
Move or click the music switching list to select and play the previous/next music.
- **Music selection from the list**
Click the screen button  on the music interface to enter the music list interface, select the corresponding media source for playback or press the screen button  on the music list interface to search for the music for playback.
- **avorite list selection**
Click the screen button  on the music interface to enter the favorite list interface and select the music for playback.

Play mode

Click the play mode selection button to select all loop, folder loop, single music loop, all random loop or folder random loop mode.


Save tracks

The system supports to save channels in the following ways:

- Touch the music interface screen key  and save the current play list to the favorite list.
- Touch the rear section screen key  of a certain track in the list and save the current track to the favorite list.
- Press and hold a music in the music list to select it, and drag and save it into the favorite list.



Note: The music without music name or with too long name cannot be added into the favorites list..

If the favorite list is exceeded, the system will give the prompting message.

When the screen button  in the music interface is displayed as a gray icon, the music cannot be added into the favorite list.

Edit favorite list■ **Favorite list**

Change the order in the list: Press and hold a music on the favorite list interface to select it and adjust its order in the favorite list.

Delete a music: In the favorite list interface, click the screen button  to enter the edit mode, select the music to be deleted in the list or click [Select All] button  on the screen and click the screen button to delete the selected music.

Media source

Click [Media Source] button to switch the media source between Local, Favorite, USB1, USB2, and Bluetooth.

■ **About the format**

- The system supports audio files in the formats of WAV, MP3 and WMA.

■ **About USB tone source**

- If selecting Bluetooth music source but no music is played, please check whether Bluetooth music player in Bluetooth phone is turned on and whether the music is played.
- Whether the related operations in the music mode support Bluetooth device.

⚠ CAUTIONS■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

■ **While driving**

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system, because doing that would lead to accidents, fire, electric shocks or critical damage.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.

5-5. Music



NOTICES

■ **To prevent the USB device or its terminal from being damaged**

- Do not leave the USB device behind in the vehicle. The interior temperature might rise.
- When the USB device is connected, do not press it or impose unnecessary pressure to it.
- Do not insert any foreign matter to the port.

■ **Compatibility**

Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

■ **To make sure the system's proper identification**

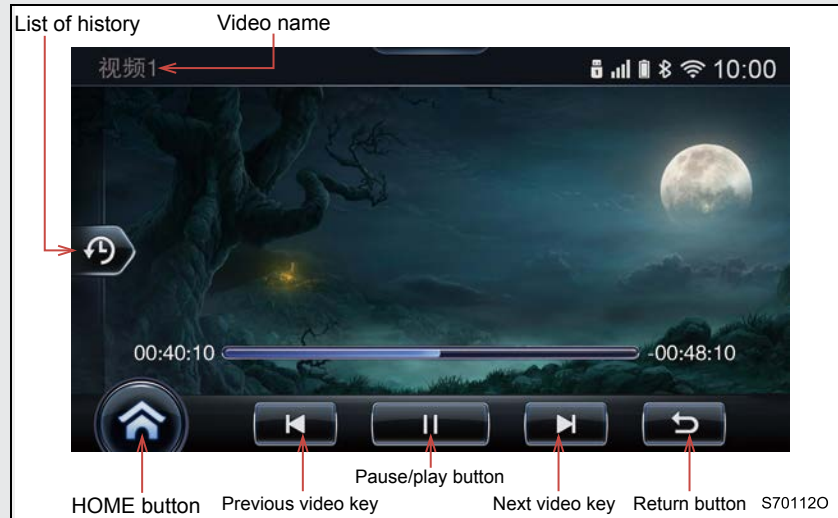
It is recommended to use USB devices with good quality because poor-quality USB devices could not be identified by the system.

■ **When any fault occurs**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

5-6. Video
Video play

When a USB device with video files is connected, you can play videos in the multimedia display.





Two methods to enter the video interface: click [Video] button on the screen to enter the robust list interface, and select the video to be played to enter the video playback interface.

5-6. Video

Play control

- Pause/Play

Tap the screen button  / .

- Fast forward/fast backward

By tapping/dragging the progress bar, you can control the play progress.

Move the screen to the left or right to adjust the playback progress.

- Adjust the volume

On the screen right side, sliding up and down can regulate the volume.


- Adjust brightness

On the screen left side, sliding up and down can adjust the screen brightness.


- Switch video

Click the screen button  /  to select the previous/next video for playback.



- Video search

Select the corresponding music source list and click the screen button  to search the music for playback.

- Return

In the video play interface, touch the screen key  to return the search or file list or file management interface.

History

Delete history: in the history interface, touch the screen key  to access the editing mode. Select the video to be deleted in the list or touch the screen key [all] and touch the screen key  to delete the checked video.

- **About the format**

The system can play the videos in MP4, MKV, and FLV formats.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

■ **While driving**

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system, because doing that would lead to accidents, fire, electric shocks or critical damage.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.

 **NOTICES**

■ **To prevent the USB device or its terminal from being damaged**

Do not leave the USB device behind in the vehicle. The interior temperature might rise.

When the USB device is connected, do not press it or impose unnecessary pressure to it.

Do not insert any foreign matter to the port.

■ **Compatibility**

Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

■ **To make sure the system's proper identification**

It is recommended to use USB devices with good quality because poor- quality USB devices could not be identified by the system.

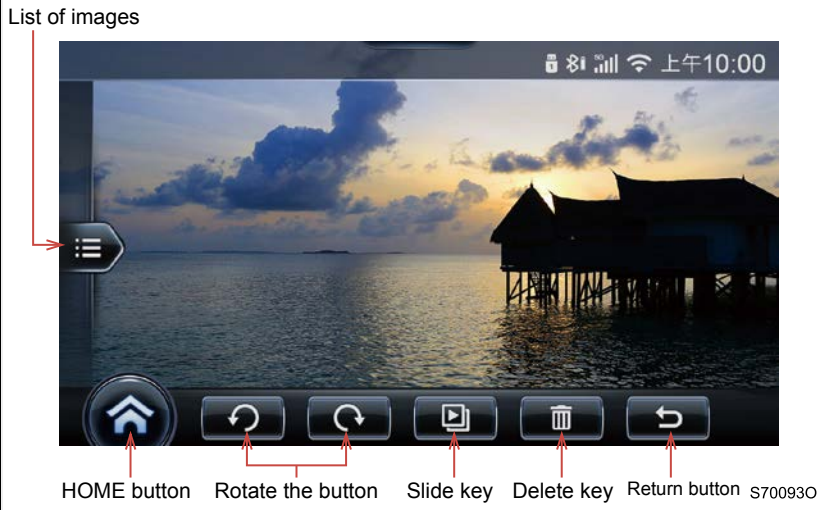
■ **When any fault occurs**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

5-7. Images

Image viewing

When a USB device with image files is connected, you can view images in the multimedia display.



Method to enter the image viewing interface: Click [Image] button on the screen to enter the file list interface and select the image to be viewed and enter the image viewing interface.

5-7. Images

Image viewing

- **Slide play**

Click the screen button  to enter slideshow mode.



In slide mode, the image cannot be magnified or reduced.

The slideshow interval is 5s.

- **Image zoom in/zoom out**

The image can be magnified and reduced by the double-finger scaling.

- **Rotating images**

By tapping the screen button  or  , you can adjust the image angle.

The angle of swing is 90° .

- **Manually view images**

Swipe to the left on the screen to view the previous image; swipe to the right on the screen to view the next image. When switching, the image is displayed in the default size.


- **Image list browse**

Touch the image interface screen key to access the image list interface. Slide the list up and down to browse the images.

When an image is not viewable, the default picture or damaged ID will be displayed.

Image editing

- **Delete image**

In the image interface, touch the screen key  to delete the image being viewed.

The image cannot be deleted under USB mode.

5-7. Images

■ About the format

The system supports images in the formats of BMP, JPG and PNG.

CAUTIONS

■ To reduce the risk of an accident

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

■ While driving

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system, because doing that would lead to accidents, fire, electric shocks or critical damage.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.

NOTICES

■ To prevent the USB device or its terminal from being damaged

- Do not leave the USB device behind in the vehicle. The interior temperature might rise, resulting in damaged USB device.
- When the USB device is connected, do not press it or impose unnecessary pressure to it.
- Do not insert any foreign matter to the port.

■ Compatibility

Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

■ To make sure the system's proper identification

It is recommended to use USB devices with good quality because poor- quality USB devices could not be identified by the system.

■ When any fault occurs

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

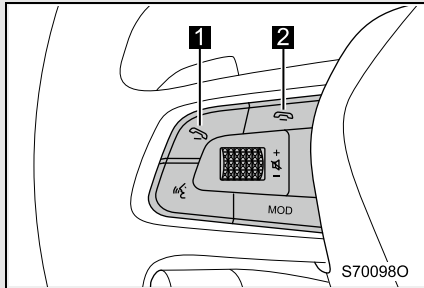
5-8. Hands-free System

Using the hands-free system

The hands-free system allows you to use the phone call function of a mobile telephone without touching it.



This system supports Bluetooth® mobile telephones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system, which allows your mobile phone to be connected to the hands-free system wirelessly for dialling/ answering phone calls.

■ Phone call switch



- 1 Answer phone call button
- 2 End phone call button

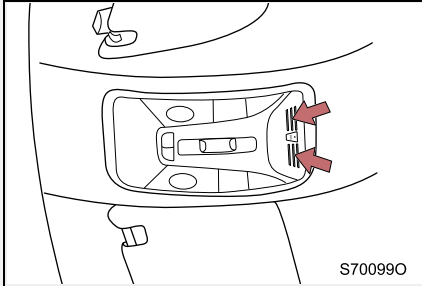
See the table below for Bluetooth functions:

Button	Description	Function
	Press	To answer the phone through Bluetooth, press the phone application; when there is call in, press it to answer.
	Press	If there is call out, in or talking, press this can hang up.

To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth® phone in the system.

5-8. Hands-free System

■ Bluetooth microphone



The person you are speaking to can hear your voice.

■ When using the hands-free system

- The audio system will be muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
 - The cell phone signal is bad.
 - When driving on unpaved roads.
 - When driving at high speeds.
 - If a window is open.
 - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone.
 - If the air conditioning blower delivers too high air volume.

■ Conditions under which the system will not operate:

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®.
- If the mobile phone is switched off or in flight mode.
- If you are outside service range.
- If the mobile phone is not connected.
- If the mobile phone's battery is low.

■ Bluetooth® antenna

If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ Battery level/signal status

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth® is the trademark for Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

The Bluetooth hands-free system is only compatible with the mainstream brand Bluetooth mobile phones that passed Bluetooth certification (SIG) and are sold in regular channels.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

■ **While driving**

- Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.
- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system, because doing that would lead to accidents, fire, electric shocks or critical damage.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.

 **NOTICES**

■ **Compatibility**

Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile telephone behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

■ **When any fault occurs**


Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

5-9. Bluetooth Telephone Using the Bluetooth® Tel.

The system supports the features including making calls, answering calls, ending calls, viewing your contact list, and viewing your call history.



There are two methods to enter into the Telephone interface:

Method 1: connect the Bluetooth and push the steering wheel button  to access the phone interface.

Method 2: connect the Bluetooth and touch the screen key [phone] to access the phone interface.


Note: If Bluetooth is not connected, connect to Bluetooth phone in accordance with the screen instructions and then enter Bluetooth phone interface.

Contact List


■ Contact list storage

After the mobile telephone is bound to the Bluetooth system successfully, the system will automatically download the contact list information from the bound telephone.


■ Contact list view

Click the screen button  on the right side of the main interface of the phone to view the contact list in the mobile phone.

■ Introduce contacts

A contacts can be imported with the screen button  on the contact list screen.

■ Search contacts

A contact can be searched with the screen button  on the contact list screen.

■ Contact list deletion

A matching phone can be deleted in the system manually and the contact list in the system is deleted simultaneously.

NOTICES


- **The contact list can be displayed on the screen only when the phone supports the contact list downloading function.**

Call history

■ Call history download

After the mobile telephone is bound to the Bluetooth system successfully, the system will automatically download the call history information from the bound telephone.

■ Call history viewing

By tapping the button  on the left call main interface, you can view the answered, missed or dialed number on the mobile telephone.

NOTICES

- **Only when the mobile telephone support the call history downloading function and allows the downloading, the screen will display the call history.**


5-9. Bluetooth Telephone

Making a call

There are two methods to make a call:

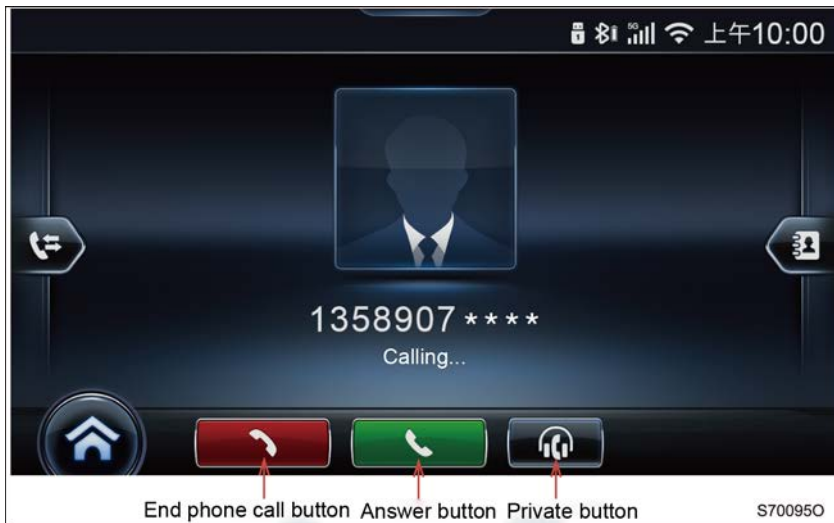
Method I: to dial the number via the phone book or the call history.

Method II: to enter the phone number on the telephone main interface to dial.

Method 3: Search a contact for a call with the screen button  on the contact list interface.



Answering/ending the incoming call

When there is an incoming call, the caller ID will pop up.




Three methods to answer/end an incoming call:

Method I: by tapping the screen button  / , answer and end the incoming call.


Method II: Answer/hang up a call by pressing the button  /  on the steering wheel.

Hands-free mode shift

During the call, by pressing the screen button , you can shift it between the private/hand-free modes.

Because some mobile phones do not support the private/hand-free shift, the Bluetooth connection might be off during a private/hand-free shift.

Microphone mute

During the call, by tapping the screen button , you can shift between the microphone mute status and non-mute status. When the microphone is mute, the other party of the call will not listen any sound.

- **Bluetooth automatic connection**

After the Bluetooth function is on and has detected the connected Bluetooth device, it would automatically connect the Bluetooth device.

- **Privacy protection**

The contacts and call history on each mobile phone can only be displayed after the phone is successfully connected. When the phone is not connected, you are unable to view any contact or call history on the phone.

 **CAUTIONS**

- **To reduce the risk of an accident**

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

- **While driving**

- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system.
- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.

 **NOTICES**

- **Compatibility**

Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

- **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

- **When any fault arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.


5-10. Voice Recognition*

Using the voice recognition function

Users can achieve voice control to the system via the voice recognition function.

Voice control functions include: radio, music, Bluetooth telephone, navigation and A/C control.

Voice recognition triggering

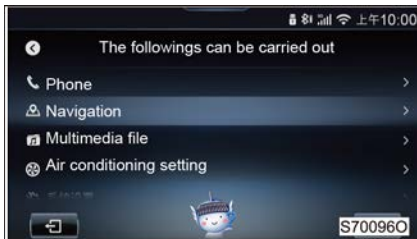
Method I: by pressing the steering wheel button  , trigger the voice recognition system*1.


Method II: by speaking the wake-up instruction, trigger the voice recognition system.

The voice recognition main waking words can be set in the system setting of audio system. (See P.230)

After triggering the voice recognition system, speak the voice order to control the system functions; for voice order information, refer to the Voice recognition help interface.

Voice recognition help





Click the screen button  on the voice recognition interface to enter the voice recognition help interface.

Voice recognition exit

Method 1: After triggering the voice recognition system, the system will automatically exit the voice recognition if there is no identifiable instruction.

Method 2: The voice recognition is exited after the normal execution of voice command is completed.

Method 3: Click the screen button  on the voice recognition interface to exit the voice recognition.

Method 4: Touch the steering wheel button  to exit the voice recognition.



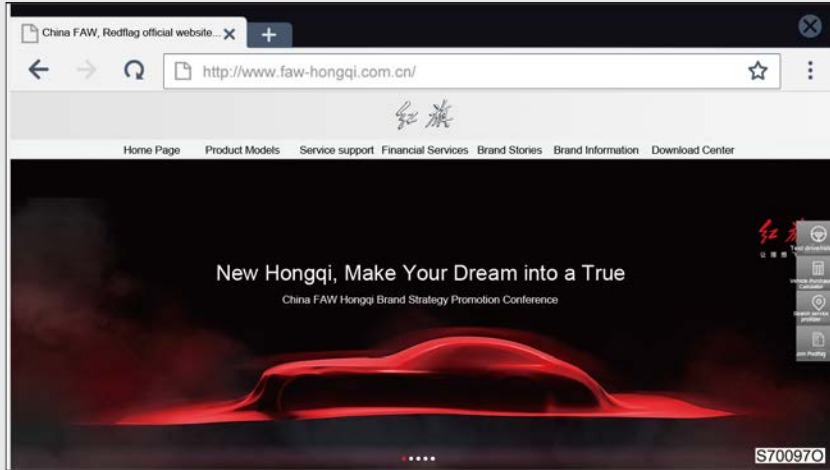
NOTICES

- **The voice recognition results are only for reference.**
- **Please use standard and clear Mandarin, avoid use the system in a noisy environment to prevent incorrect recognition results.**
- **While driving, try to avoid using the voice recognition function, if you do use it, please try to avoid watching the screen to prevent risks.**

5-11.Browser*

Via browser

When the system is connected to the network, users can enter a URL in the address bar of the browser to browse the web.



CAUTIONS

- **To reduce the risk of an accident**
 - While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- **Precautions during driving**
 - When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
 - For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.
 - Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system.
 - While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.
- **Network connection quality**

The quality of network connection varies with the change of antenna position, the difference of signal intensity and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitters), which makes it difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.

NOTICES

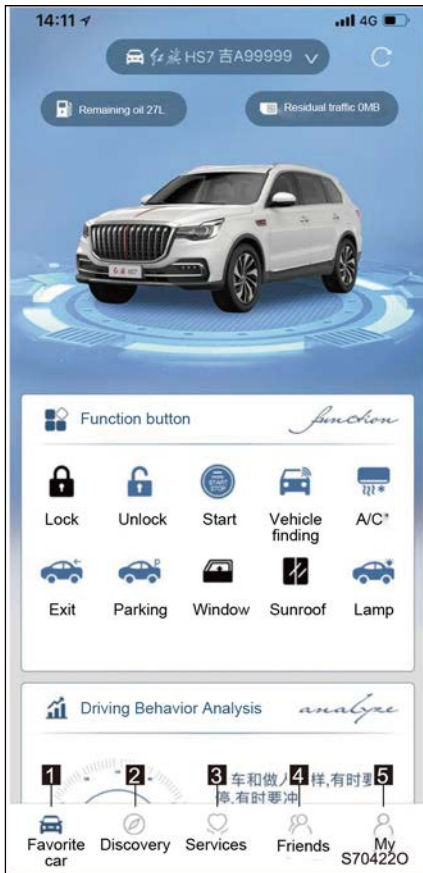
- **When any fault arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

Using the mobile phone APP

The vehicle can be controlled and operated remotely with the mobile APP.

- Open the registered mobile phone internet APP and enter APP homepage.



1 Favorite car

Information viewing: You can view the driving behavior analysis, navigation, health manager and electronic fence, and can view the remaining oil and residual traffic information above the main interface.

Remote control: It can be used to operate remote control functions, such as locking, unlocking, vehicle finding, starting, air conditioning, exiting, parking, windows, lights, sunroof and so on.

Driving behavior analysis: View and share the statistic data for driving behavior.

Navigation: it can perform functions like interest point searching, car navigation and remote car searching.

Health manager: can query and operate one-button physical examination, car maintenance, car maintenance, service point searching, annual inspection and license replacement, one-button complaints and other functions.

Electronic fence: you can add and view electronic fences.

2 Discovery

It can be used to view and participate in the interactions with hotspots, circles, news and event information.

3 Services

It can be used to view and operate electronic manuals, electronic fences, call the road rescue, one-click call, online customer services, traffic management, violation of regulations, model showroom, test drive appointment and so on.

4 Friends

Chat with friends who focus on each other.

5-12. Mobile phone APP*

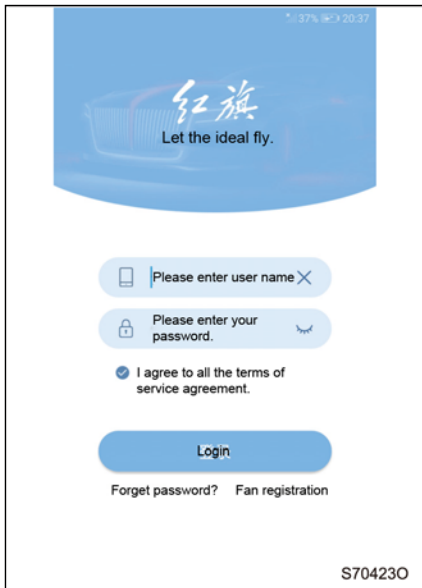
5 My

In my interface, you can operate and view check-ins, followers, fans, posts, messages, my vehicle, emergency contact setting, password change, frequent question feedback, about us and so on.

Click the setup button at the upper left corner of the interface to enter the setup page, to carry out PIN code management, cache clear, logout and other operations.

Touch the Message button in the top right corner of page to enter the Message page to view and activate car alerts, synchronized navigation, maintenance advice, system messages, car technology upgrading, my reviews, marketing promotions, interactive messages, etc.

Login



By entering the mobile phone No. and your password, and tapping the phone screen button [Login], you can log into the system.

If you forget the password, by tapping [Forget the password], you can retrieve your password.

■ APP downloading

About the downloading and installation of the mobile APP, please ask the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

■ Login information

Users will provide their personal information to dealers for real name authentication, and the system will give the APP login information and the PIN information on vehicle control to the user after the real name authentication; for details, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

■ On-board interconnection version

Because on-board interconnection system versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.

■ **Using mobile APP**

The “common questions” can help users to quickly understand and use the mobile APP.

■ **Remote start**

- Before the remote start, please make sure all doors, windows, the sunroof, trunk lid and engine hood are closed and the vehicle is locked.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **When your mobile phone is missing**

If your mobile phone is missing, the risk for the vehicle to be stolen goes significantly higher. Please keep it safe, and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer if necessary.

■ **Network connection quality**

The quality of network connection varies with the change of antenna position, the difference of signal intensity and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitters), which makes it difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.

 **NOTICES**

■ **Permission**

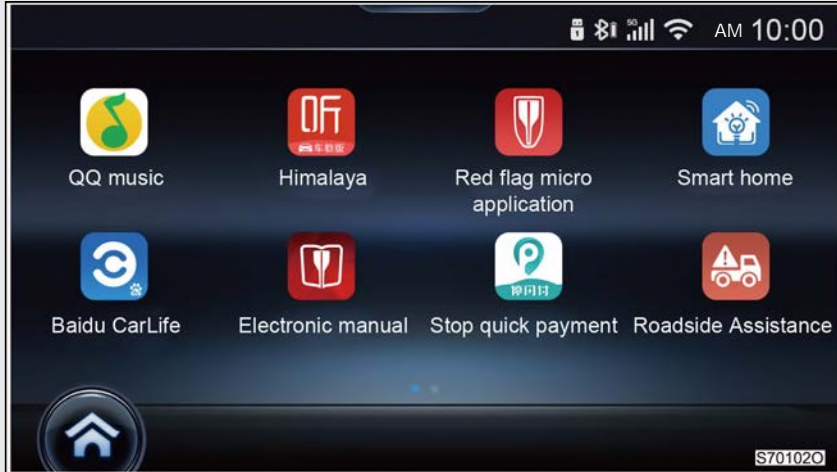
When using some functions of the on-board interconnection system, the corresponding permission needs to be given and make sure any third-party tool does not forbid the on-board interconnection network privilege, otherwise, the system might not be functional.

■ **When any fault arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

5-13. Hongqi Smart Connect * Using Hongqi Smart Connect

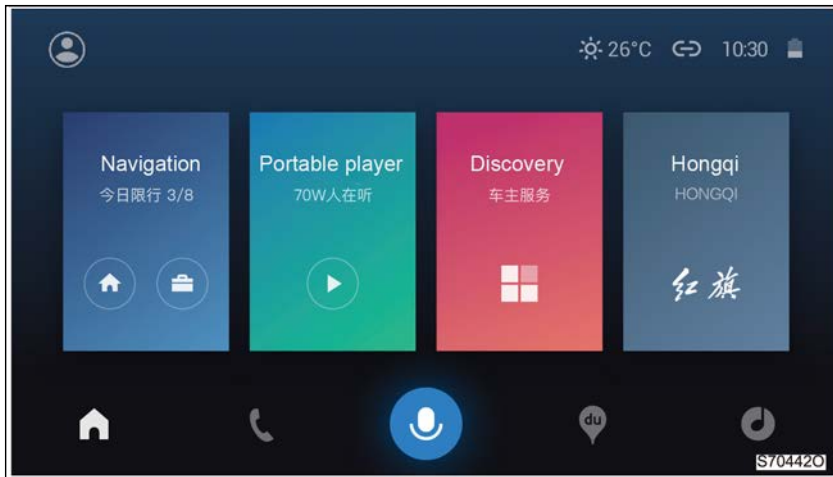
The system can operate additional extended functions like CarLife, road rescue, information consultation and red flag micro-application, etc.



Methods for entering the HONGQI Intelligence interface: Touch the screen button [HongQi ZhiLian] to enter the HongQi Zhilian.

Carlife

Carlife function is used to realize the interconnection of the mobile phone and the audio system, to extend the functions in the mobile phone to the audio system, so that the user can enjoy convenient, efficient and customized services in the vehicle.



When connecting to Baidu CarLife, you must connect your phone to car USB1. After starting Baidu CarLife successfully, the display screen will display the interface of mobile phone in real time for touching and dragging, etc. These operations are consistent with the operations on the mobile phone.

5-13. Hongqi Smart Connect *

Roadside Assistance

In case of an accident, the users can contact the rescue services with B Call.



When the background receives the user's rescue request, the rescue service will be properly arranged to solve the troubles for user.

Information consulting

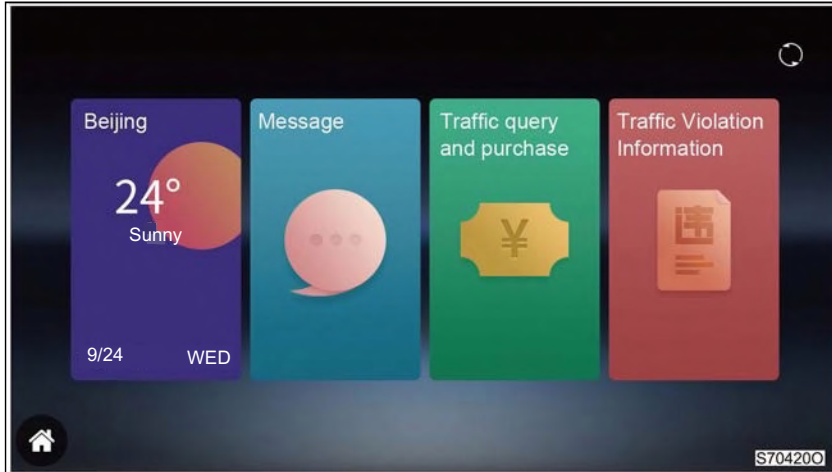
When the vehicle is driven in a strange road, the navigation service can be accessed with I Call.



When the background receives the user's navigation request, it will help the user to perform the destination query and navigation.

Red flag micro application

Users can search for the messages, weather, violations, etc. through the Red Flag micro-application, and can search for and purchase traffic.



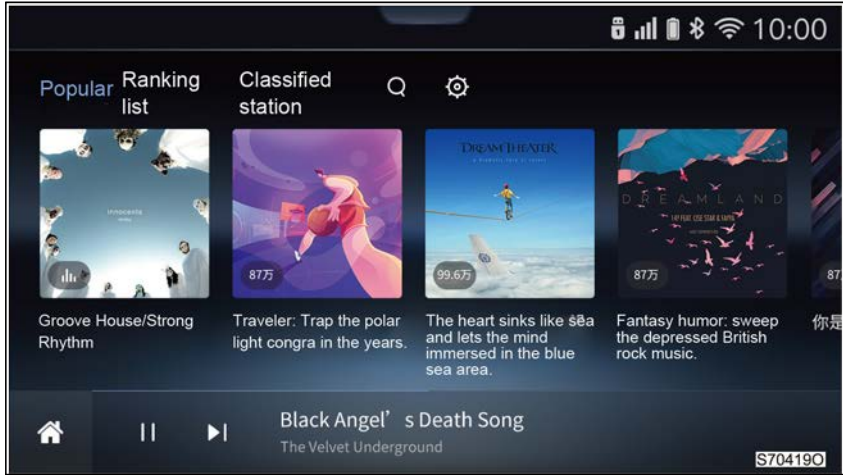
Select the content on the screen to enter the corresponding interface, operate and use as per the system prompts.

5-13. Hongqi Smart Connect *

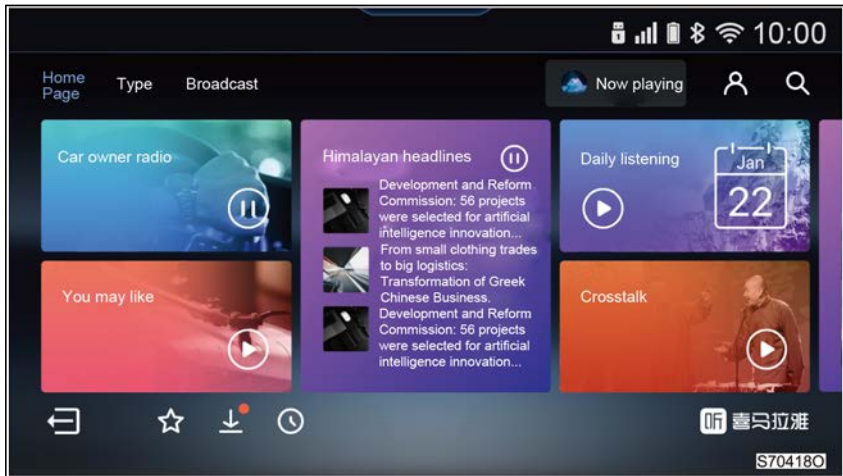
QQ music/Himalaya

QQ Music/Himalaya can provide users with comfortable and convenient personalized services to improve driving pleasure.

■ QQ music



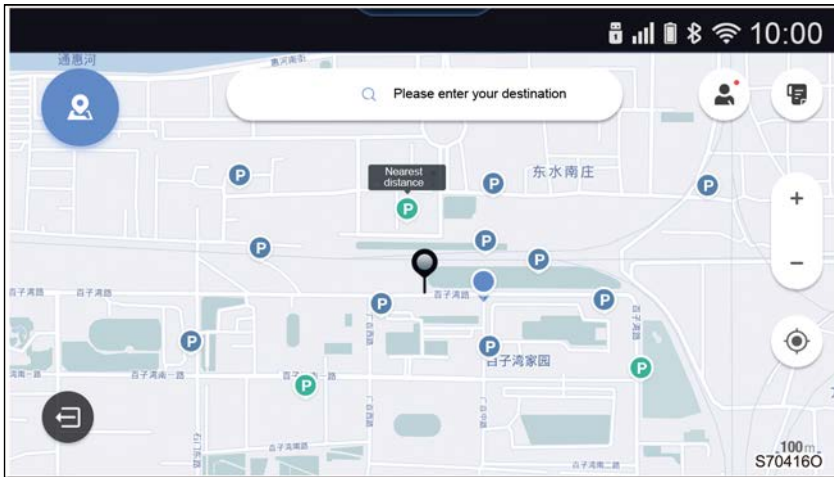
■ Himalaya



Select the content on the screen to enter the corresponding interface, operate and use as per the system prompts.

Stop quick payment

The user can pay the parking fee quickly with the flash pay.



Select the content on the screen to enter the corresponding interface, operate and use as per the system prompts.

Smart home

Users can experience the one-stop and portable smart home landing experiences through smart home.



Select the content in the screen to enter the corresponding interface and carry out the operation based on the system prompts.

5-13. Hongqi Smart Connect *

Electronic manual

The user can quickly learn about the car through electronic manual.



Select the content in the screen to enter the corresponding interface and carry out the operation based on the system prompts.

■ CarLife phone requirements

For specific mobile phone models and system versions, please access <http://carlife.baidu.com>.

Prompts: CarLife's compatibility with Apple phones depends on the version released by Apple's official software.

■ In the course of applying CarLife

If CarLife on the mobile phone is switched to the background during use, the car terminal won't display the real-time interface of mobile phone, but CarLife button will be displayed. After touching it, CarLife on the mobile phone will be switched to the foreground, and CarLife will continue to work normally.

■ CarLife version

Because CarLife versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.

■ Before connecting the phone

Any phone with Android operating system needs to enable USB debugging functions and MTP mode in advance. If not turned on, the phone won't be recognized.

■ Connection stability

The connection stability is related to the quality of mobile phone data cable. If there is a connection problem, please re-plug or replace it with a data cable with better quality.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**

- While driving, avoid operating this system as far as possible.
- Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

■ **While driving**

- When operating the system, do not operate it on a No Stopping area, because doing that would lead to traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, do not be distracted and thus obstruct safe driving due to this feature. Neglecting of roads and traffic might lead to accidents.
- If the foreign matter or water falls into this system and result in abnormal situation, immediately stop using and contact the authorized dealer of FAW HONGQI. If not, it may result in fault.
- Please do not use the screen when a fault occurs to the display or sound system.
- When wiping the multimedia display, set the engine switch to "IG-OFF" mode and use a soft dry cloth. Any thick rag, chemical rag or organic reagent (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.) can damage or deteriorate the panel. Don't use it.
- While driving, the volume shall be adjusted to sufficiently hear what's going on outside. Otherwise, it might lead to accident.

■ **Network connection quality**

- The quality of network connection varies with the change of antenna position, the difference of signal intensity and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitters), which makes it difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.



NOTICES

- **The voice recognition results are only for reference.**
- **Please use standard and clear Mandarin, avoid use the system in a noisy environment to prevent incorrect recognition results.**
- **While driving, try to avoid using the voice recognition function, if you do use it, please try to avoid watching the screen to prevent risks.**
- **To prevent the USB device or its terminal from being damaged**
 - Do not leave the USB device behind in the vehicle. The interior temperature might rise, resulting in damaged USB device.
 - When the USB device is connected, do not press it or impose unnecessary pressure to it.
 - Do not insert any foreign matter to the port.
- **Permission**

When using some functions of the CarLife, the corresponding permission needs to be given and make sure any third-party tool does not forbid the CarLife network privilege, otherwise, the system might not be functional.
- **Compatibility**

Some mobile phones might be unable to properly use all functions of CarLife because of their own compatibility issue.
- **To make sure the system can properly identify the mobile phone**

It is recommended to use USB cable with good quality because poor-quality USB cable could not be identified by the system.
- **When any fault arises**

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

6-1. Using the A/C System

Fully automatic A/C system....	276
Fully automatic A/C system - Front seat control system	277
Fully automatic A/C system - Rear seat control system	287
Rear windshield heating.....	289

6-2. Using the Interior Lamps

List of interior lamps.....	290
-----------------------------	-----

6-3. Using the Storage Units

List of storage units.....	293
----------------------------	-----

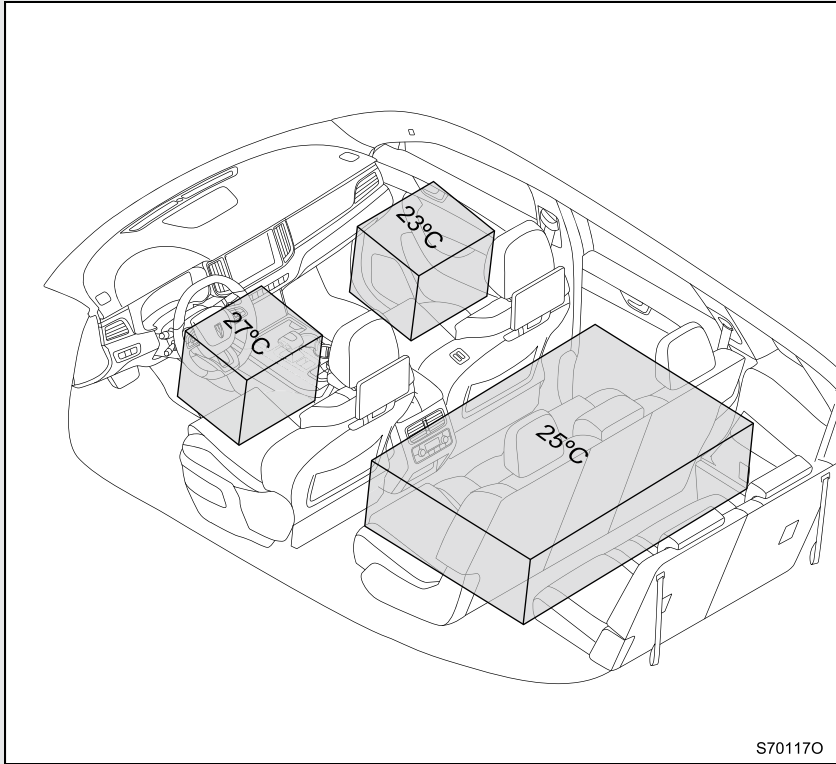
6-4. Other Interior Equipment

On-board wireless charging	298
Sun visor	299
File holder	300
Vanity mirror	301
12V power socket	302
220V power socket	303
Seat temperature control*	304
Rear central armrest	306
Roof grab handle	307
Coat hook.....	308

6-1. Using the A/C System

Fully automatic A/C system

This vehicle is equipped with the dual-zone A/C system, which can set the interior temperature according to passengers in the vehicle by combining with the current interior temperature, environment temperature, sunlamp intensity, vehicle speed, water temperature and other environmental parameters; it can provide a driving and riding environment for passengers by automatically regulating the air outlet temperature, A/C air volume, air outlet mode and air inlet mode.



6-1. Using the A/C System

Fully automatic A/C system - Front seat control system

Automatically select the air outlet and automatically adjust the air flow based on the temperature settings.

► Audio system A/C operation panel



1 OFF button

3 HOME button

5 Sync button

7 A/C button

8 Air volume setting button

2 ON button

4 AUTO button

6 Natural ventilation button

9 Air outlet mode button

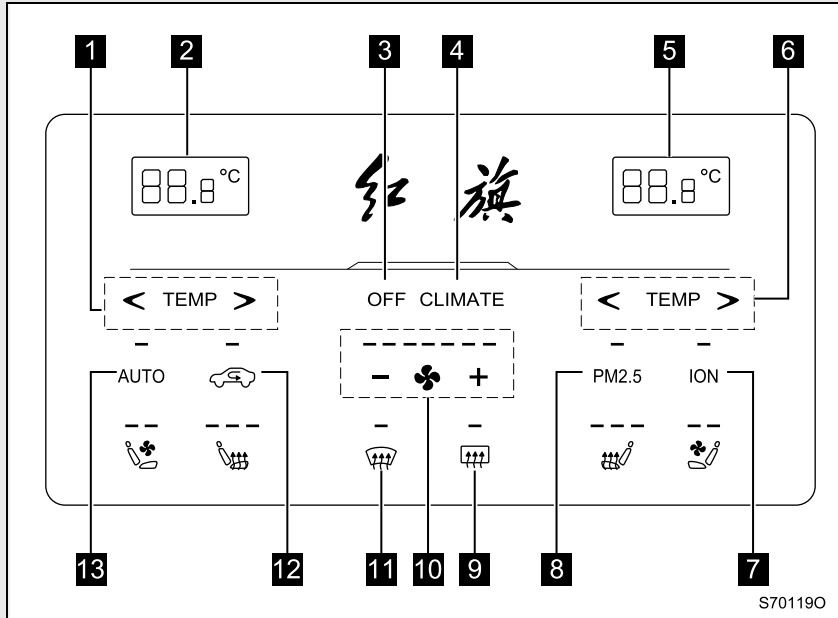
Two methods to enter the air conditioning interface:

Method 1: Click [CLIMATE] button on the central control panel to enter the air conditioning interface.

Method 2: Click [Air Conditioning] button on the screen to enter the air conditioning interface.

6-1. Using the A/C System

► Central control panel A/C operating interface

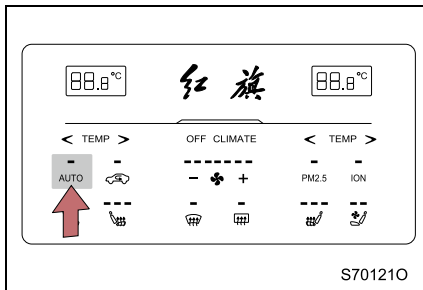


- | | |
|--|--|
| 3 Driver side temperature setting button | 2 Driver side temperature display |
| 3 OFF button | 4 CLIMATE button |
| 5 Front passenger side temperature display | 6 Front passenger side temperature setting button |
| 7 ION button | 9 PM2.5 button |
| 8 Windshield heating button | 10 Air volume setting button |
| 11 Front windshield defroster/defogger button | 13 Internal/external circulation button |
| 12 AUTO button | |

Using the automatic A/C system



Method 1: Click [AUTO] button on the screen to turn on the work indicator and enter the automatic air conditioning mode.



Method 2: After touching [AUTO] button on the center control panel, its operating indicator lights up, and the automatic A/C mode is activated.

In automatic A/C mode, you can set the temperature by touching the temperature setting button according to your personal needs, and the temperature display will display the set temperature at the same time.

■ [AUTO] button indicator

- If the air volume setting or the air outlet mode is operated, the [AUTO] button indicator goes out.

■ Using the automatic mode

The air volume is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- In summer, when selecting the low temperature setting, the system will automatically switch to internal circulation mode.
- After the button pressed, the blower may stay in low-gear operating status and stop for a while. The normal blowing will not be executed until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

6-1. Using the A/C System

Manual regulation

■ Regulation of air volume



Method 1: Operate the air flow setting button on the screen to adjust the air flow at Level 1-7.

Method 1: Click the air flow setting button  on the central control panel to adjust the air flow at Level 1-7.

■ Temperature regulation

Click "Temperature Down" (<) or "Temperature Up" (>) button on the temperature setting button to set the temperature.

Driver side and front passenger side temperatures can be adjusted independently.

If the [A/C] button indicator does not lamp up or the [A/C] button indicator is on but the A/C compressor is not running, the system will blow atmospheric temperature air or heated air to the interior.

■ Switch the temperature zone control mode



By tapping the [SYNC] button, the indicator lights up, it goes to the single-zone control mode, and the temperature at the front passenger side and rear seats will be synchronized with that at the driver's side.

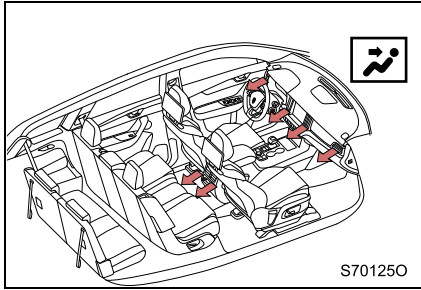
By tapping the [SYNC] button again, the indicator goes out, it goes to the three-zone control mode, and you can independently set the temperatures at the driver's side, the front passenger side and rear seats.

In the single-zone control mode, separately set the temperature at the front passenger side or rear seats, it goes to the three-zone control mode.

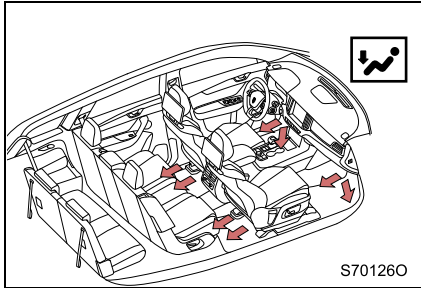
6-1. Using the A/C System

■ Air outlet mode switching

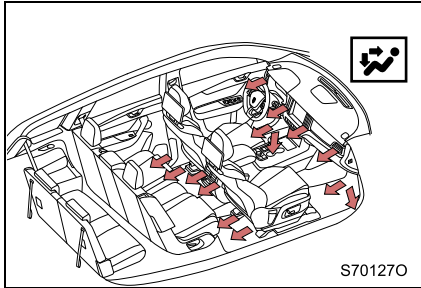
By tapping the air outlet mode setting button on the operating interface, different modes of air outlet can be shifted.



Air is blown to the face.

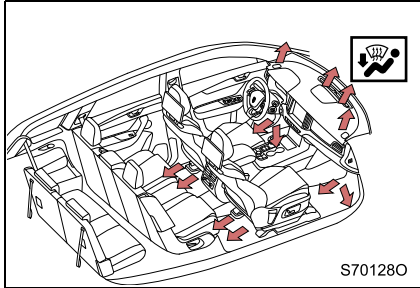


Air is blown to the feet.



Air is blown to the face and feet.

6-1. Using the A/C System



Air is blown to the feet and front windshield.

- **A/C switch**

When the engine is running, by tapping [A/C] button, the button is on, and the A/C refrigeration starts. By tapping [A/C] button again, the active indicator is off, and the A/C refrigeration ends.

- **Internal/external circulation mode switching**

Press the internal/external circulation button to enter the internal circulation mode with the active indicator ON; press it again to enter the external circulation mode with the active indicator OFF.

When it shifts to the automatic A/C mode, the A/C system will automatically switch the internal/external circulation mode.

CAUTIONS

- **Do not use the internal circulation mode in chilly days or rainy days**

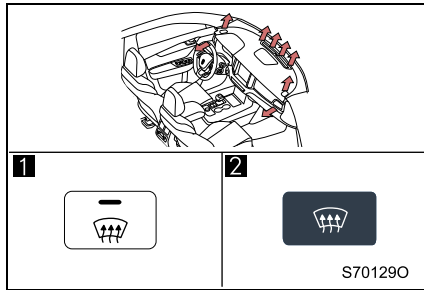
In chilly days or rainy days, use of the internal circulation mode might make windows fog up, which might block your line of sight, leading to serious accidents.


- **When using the internal circulation mode**


The windows might fog up more easily if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

Other functions

■ Front windshield defrosting/defogging



1 Click the middle panel button  to turn on the work indicator and the front windshield defrosting/defogging function.

2 Click the button  on the screen to turn on the front windshield defrosting/defogging function.

When the inner loop mode is used, if the front windshield is defrosted/defogged, the system will be automatically switched to the outer loop mode.

Increase of air volume and rise of temperature can defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

■ Window fogging up

- When the interior humidity raises, windows might fog up easily. By turning on the A/C switch, it will dehumidify the air from the air outlet and effectively defog the windshield.
- If you turn off the A/C switch, windows might fog up more easily.
- In rainy days, windows might fog up.
- The windows might fog up if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

- Do not use the front windshield defroster/defogger mode during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.
- Do not put anything that might cover the air outlet on the dash panel, or it may hinder the air flow, obstructing the defogging process of the front windshield.

■ Natural ventilation function

Click the natural ventilation button on the screen to enter the natural ventilation mode, and switch the intake mode to the outer loop mode; at this time, the compressor will stop for energy saving.

6-1. Using the A/C System

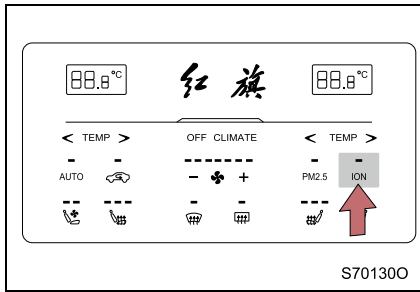
■ ADS anti-fog sensor

When the front windshield is fogged, affecting the safe driving, the air conditioning system will enter the automatic demisting mode to appropriately increase the air flow to the front windward; when the risk is released, the air conditioning system will be automatically switched back to the operation status before defogging. The automatic defogging mode can be released by operating the automatic air conditioning operation button or the outlet mode adjustment button, and the air conditioning system will not restart the mode within a period of time.

Tip:

After entering the automatic defogging mode, A/C system will have a large air volume.

■ ION air purification

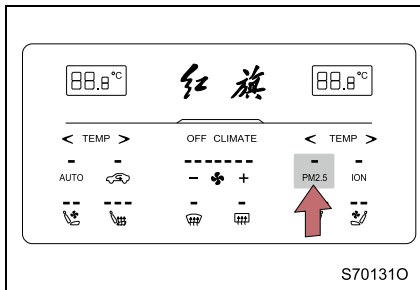


Click ION button on the central control panel to turn on the button indicator and the air purification function; click it again to turn off the button indicator and the air purification function.

Enabled

The system has two purification modes, namely the sterilization operating mode and negative ion operating mode. The car switches automatically between these two modes during the operation of system. When the blower fails to work, the air purifier can't work even if the air purifying function is activated.

■ PM2.5 sensor



Click [PM2.5] button on the center control panel to turn on the button indicator, and measure PM2.5 concentration of the air inside the vehicle. If the concentration reaches the standard value after completing the test, the system will automatically exit the test; if the standard value can't be reached, the system will automatically filter and exit the test after completing the filtration.

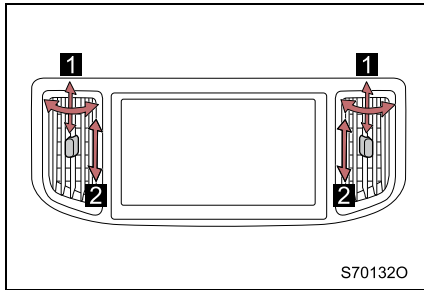
Press and hold [PM2.5] button to directly turn on PM2.5 filter function. When PM2.5 is filtered, the air conditioner will be automatically switched to the inner loop to improve the filtration efficiency.

■ AQS air quality sensor

The system automatically detects the quality of air outside the car. When the air is polluted, A/C system will automatically switch to the inner circulation to prevent the polluted air from entering into the car to ensure the air quality inside the car.

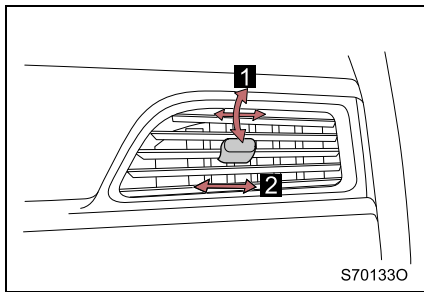
Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

► Front center outlet



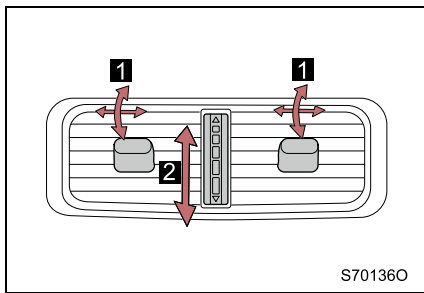
- 1**The air flow will be guided to the left side or right side, top or bottom.
- 2**Turn the knob to open or close the air vent.

► Front air outlet



- 1**The air flow will be guided to the left side or right side, top or bottom.
- 2**Turn the knob to open or close the air vent.

► Rear center outlet



- 1**The air flow will be guided to the left side or right side, top or bottom.
- 2**Turn the knob to open or close the air vent.

6-1. Using the A/C System

■ Remote operation of A/C system

- A/C system can be operated remotely via the mobile APP.

■ Internal/external circulation mode

- While driving on dusty roads (such as tunnels) or heavy-traffic roads, switch to the internal circulation mode. It can effectively prevent outside air into the inside of vehicle. During the refrigeration operation, the internal circulation mode can also effectively reduce the interior temperature.
- The windows might fog up if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

■ Windshield defroster

- At the forced defrosting/defogging mode of windshield, its inner loop mode will automatically switch to outer loop mode.
- The air volume may be increased while the defrosting/defogging function is running. It can defrost/defog the windshield as soon as possible to increase the air volume and temperature.

■ Air conditioning smell

- During the using process, all odours inside and outside of the vehicle might enter and collect in the A/C system. It might lead to smells at the vents.

NOTICES

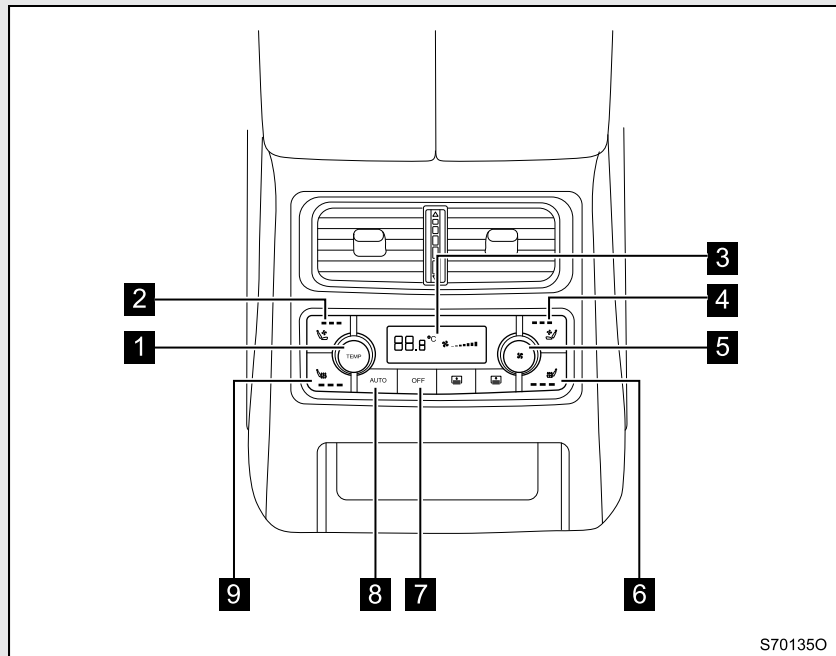
■ To prevent the battery depletion

If the air conditioning system is not required when the vehicle is not started, please turn it off.

6-1. Using the A/C System

Fully automatic A/C system - Rear seat control system

The rear air conditioning control system can be used to adjust the temperature and air flow in the rear area separately or at the same time based on the needs of the occupants.



- 3**Rear seat temperature adjustment knob
- 2**Left rear seat ventilation button
- 3**Rear air conditioning screen
- 4**Right rear seat ventilation button
- 5**Rear seat air regulation knob
- 6**Rear right seat heater button
- 7**OFF button
- 9**AUTO button
- 8**Rear left seat heater button

6

Interior Equipment

6-1. Using the A/C System

Adjustment settings

■ Temperature setting

Turn the rear temperature adjustment knob clockwise (increase the temperature) or counterclockwise (lower the temperature) to set the temperature.

In the automatic mode, the rear row control in the three-zone air-conditioning control should take precedence. When the rear temperature is set to HI or LO, the air flow will be increased to the maximum, and the comfort of the driver and the front passenger will not be considered.

■ Air flow setting

Turn the rear air flow adjustment knob to adjust the air flow of the air conditioning system.

Turn the rear air flow adjustment knob clockwise (increase the air flow) or counterclockwise (decrease the air flow) to set the air flow.

When the engine is started, turn the rear air flow adjustment knob to activate the air conditioning system.

Using the automatic mode

Press AUTO button (to turn on the indicator) to enter the automatic air conditioning mode.

■ [AUTO] button indicator

- If the air flow setting is operated, [AUTO] button indicator will be turned off.

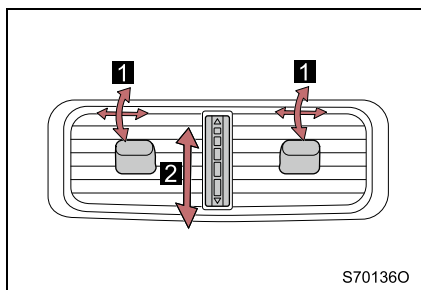
■ Using the automatic mode

The air volume is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- In summer, when selecting the low temperature setting, the system will automatically switch to internal circulation mode.
- After the button pressed, the blower may stay in low-gear operating status and stop for a while. The normal blowing will not be executed until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

► Rear center outlet

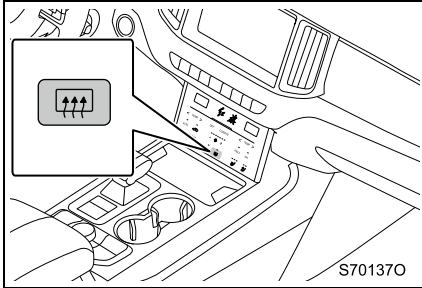



1The air flow will be guided to the left side or right side, top or bottom.


2Turn the knob to open or close the air vent.

6-1. Using the A/C System

Rear windshield heating



By tapping the button , the indicator lights up, and the system starts to heat the rear windshield.

By tapping the button  again, the indicator goes out and the system stops to work.

Tip:

After the system has been operating for a certain period, the system indicator will go out.

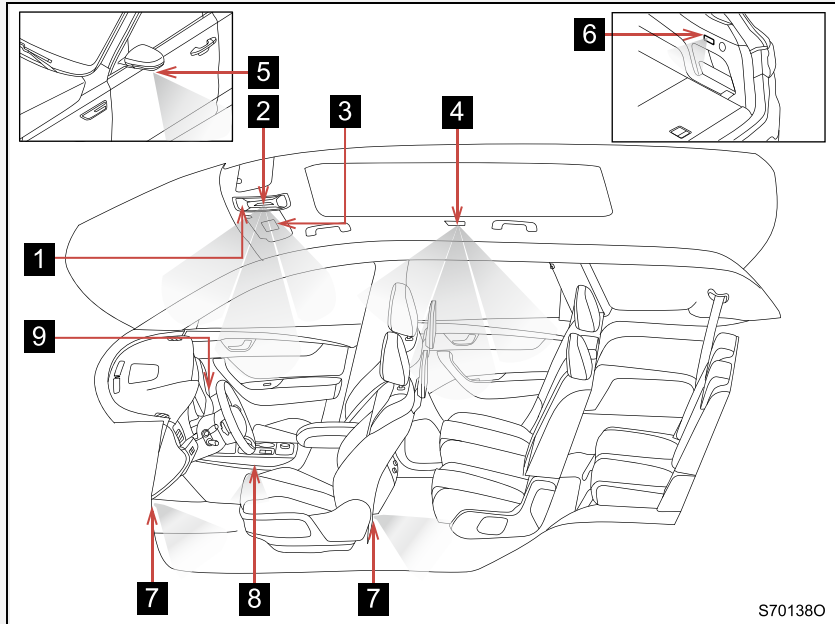
CAUTIONS

■ **During windshield heating**

Do not touch the heated area, because you might get burnt after it is heated up.

6-2. Using the Interior Lamps

List of interior lamps

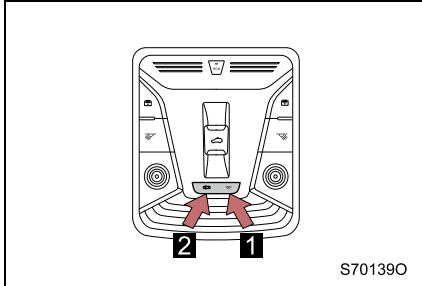



S701380


- 1** Front room lamp (see P.291)
- 2** Front map lamp (see P.291)
- 3** Vanity mirror lamp (see P.292)
- 4** Rear map lamp (see P.292)
- 5** Welcome lamp
- 6** Trunk lamp
- 7** Foot lamp
- 8** Ambience lamp*
- 9** Glove box lamp

6-2. Using the Interior Lamps

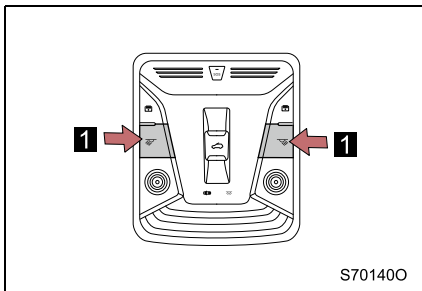
Front room lamp




1 By pressing the  button, turn on the front room lamp; by pressing it again, turn off the front room lamp.

2 By pressing the  button, the indicator is on, and the Door Linkage with the room lamp is turned on; by pressing it again, the Door Linkage with the room lamp is turned off.

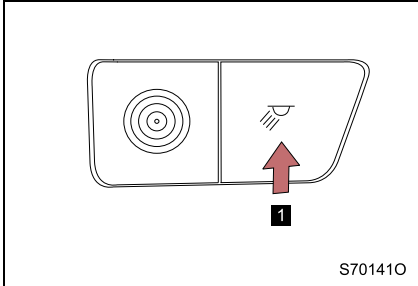
Front map lamp




1 By pressing the  button, turn on the front map lamp; by pressing it again, turn off the front map lamp.

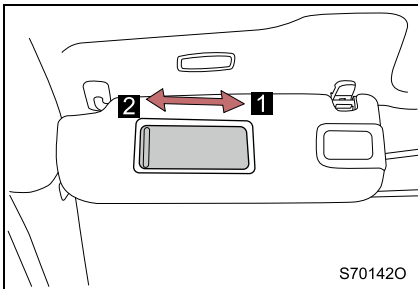
6-2. Using the Interior Lamps

Rear map lamp



1 By pressing the  button, turn on the rear map lamp; by pressing it again, turn off the rear map lamp..

Vanity mirror lamp



1 By opening the sun visor and sliding open the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror lamp is ON.

2 By closing the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror lamp is OFF.

■ Energy-saving

If the front room lamp switch is turned to the Door Linkage position, and the door is open, the lamps will go off automatically after a certain period; turning the IGNITION switch OFF and closing all doors, the room lamp and ambient lamping go off after a certain period.

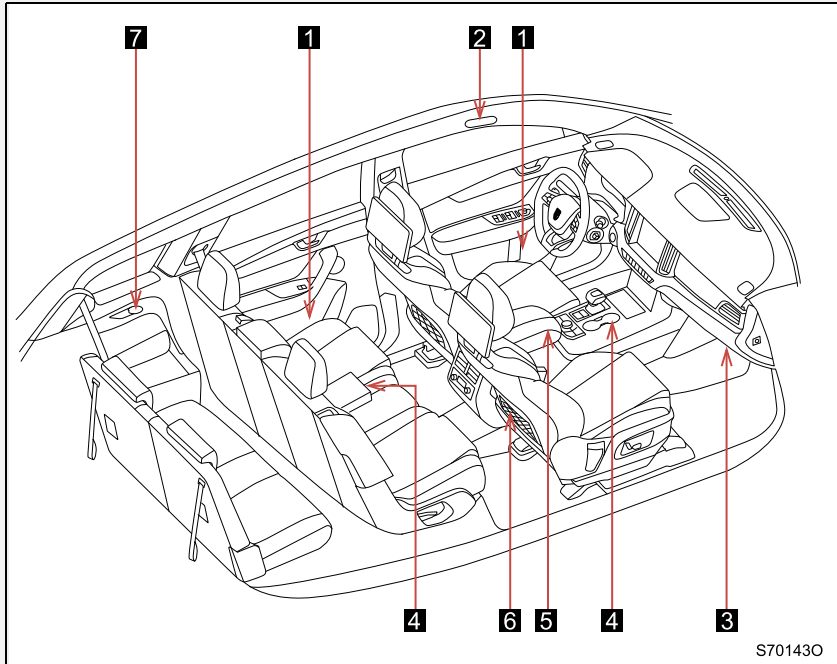
NOTICES

■ To prevent battery depletion

Turn off interior lamps if unnecessary.

Do not leave the vanity mirror cover or doors open for a long time. Because when they are open, the corresponding interior lamps will be lit on, which may lead to battery depletion.

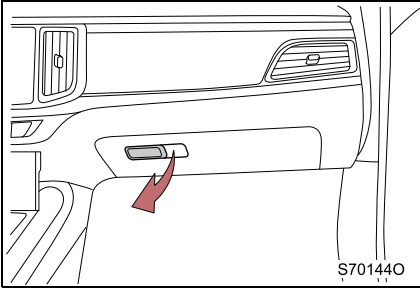
6-3. Using the Storage Units
List of storage units



- 1** Bottleholder and side pocket (door) (see P.296)
- 2** Eyeglasses box (see P.297)
- 3** Glove box (see P.294)
- 4** Cup holders (Front/Rear) (see P.295)
- 5** Front seat center storage compartment (see P.294)
- 6** File pocket (see P.296)
- 7** Bottleholder and side pocket (trunk trim panel) (see P.296)

6-3. Using the Storage Units

Glove box



By pulling the handle, open the glove box, and the glove box lamp will be ON.

When closing the glove box cover, it means securely locked when it "clicks".

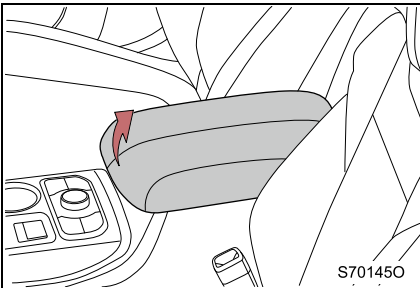
CAUTIONS

■ Precautions when driving

Keep the glove box closed.

Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Front seat center storage compartment



By lifting the lid, you can open the storage compartment.

CAUTIONS

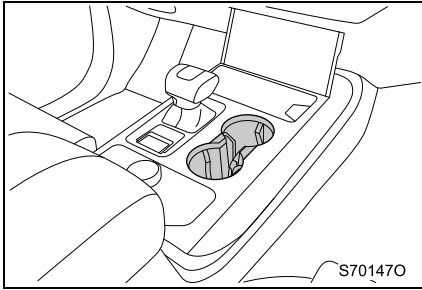
■ Precautions when driving

Keep the storage compartment closed.

Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

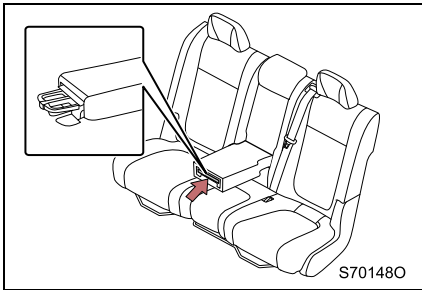
Cup holder

► Front



The front cup holder is located on the side of the shift handle.

► Rear



Lay down the rear seat central armrest, pressing and releasing the cup holder lid, the cup holders will automatically pop up. Put them back when not in use.

■ **When using cup holders to hold cups**

- Please tighten the cup lid.
- Some cups might not be held there because of their size or shape.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ **Items unsuitable for cup holders**

Please do not place any item other than cups or cans in cup holders. Those items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injuries. Tighten the lid on containers with hot liquid inside to prevent burns.

■ **While driving, do not use cup holders to hold containers with hot liquid inside**

While driving, it is very dangerous to use cup holders to hold containers with hot liquid inside. If the hot liquid spills, it might cause burns.

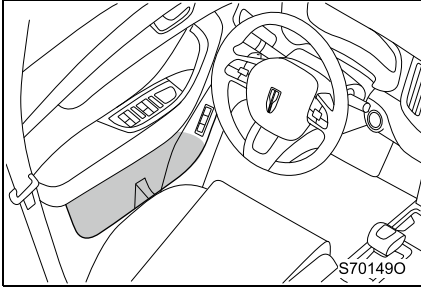
■ **When not in use**

Keep closed when not in use. Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

6-3. Using the Storage Units

Bottleholder and side pocket

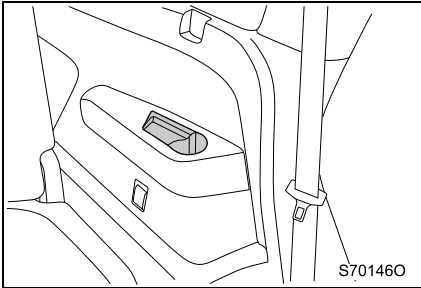
► Doors



Bottleholders and side pockets are located on doors, and used to place bottles, duster cloth or sundries.

When placing bottles, tighten their lids. Some bottles might not be held there because of their size or shape.

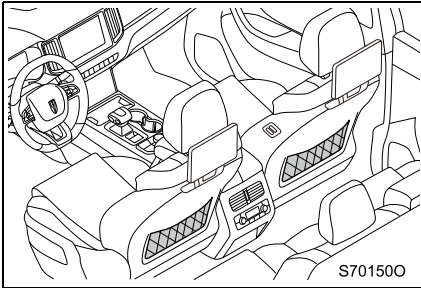
► Trunk trim panel



Bottleholders and side pockets are located on the trunk trim panel, and used to place bottles, duster cloth or sundries.

When placing bottles, tighten their lids. Some bottles might not be held there because of their size or shape.

File pocket

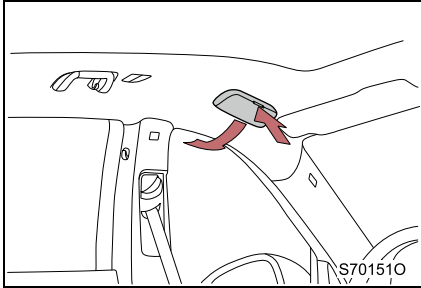


File pockets are located at the lower end of the backs of the driver seat and front passenger seat.

They are used to store newspapers, magazines and other items.

6-3. Using the Storage Units

Eyeglasses box



Pull down the lower case lid edge, the eyeglasses box will open downward.

It is used to temporarily store small items such as sunglasses.

CAUTIONS

■ Items unsuitable for the eyeglasses box

Do not leave the glasses or lamper on it for long.

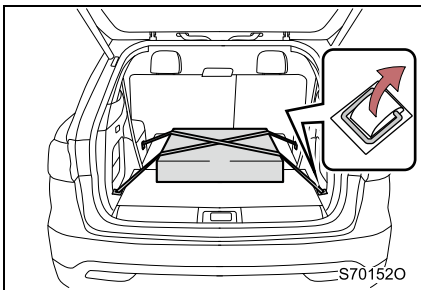
If the interior becomes hot, the lamper may explode and glasses may be distorted due to the heat.

■ Precautions when driving

Keep the eyeglasses box closed when driving.

The items stored in it may be thrown out of the holder in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injuries.

Trunk hook



Lift the hook for immediate use.

The cargo hook is used to secure loose items.

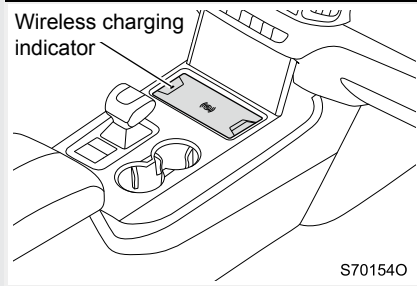
CAUTIONS

■ When not using the trunk hooks, please fold them back to where they belong.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment

On-board wireless charging

A wireless charging system is provided on the front of the center console.



A mobile phone that supports Qi standard wireless charging can be placed directly in the wireless charging area for charging.

A mobile phone that does not support Qi standard wireless charging should be charged with a receiver.

■ Operating conditions for car wireless charging system

The engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

■ Charging status indicator

- When the mobile phone is charged, the wireless charging indicator (green) will be turned on.
- When the mobile phone is away from the charging area and the wireless charging indicator will be turned off.
- The charging system is faulty or there is an abnormal charging, the wireless charging indicator (red) will be turned on.

CAUTIONS

■ Remove all metal objects on the charging board before charging

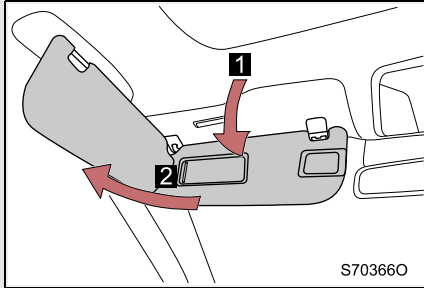
When the mobile phone is charged wirelessly, if any metal object (such as coin, key, ring, or clip) is found between the mobile phone and the charging pad, do not remove it by hand immediately to avoid any finger injury. Please remove the phone first, and then remove the metal items from the charging panel after the panel is cooled.

NOTICES

■ When charging

- Remove all the items from the wireless charging mat. If there is foreign matter on the mat, the system may not charge the mat properly.
 - The phone should be facing up and placed in the middle of mat.
- **Don't place any magnetic card like highway charge card, etc in the wireless charging area, which may cause demagnetization.**

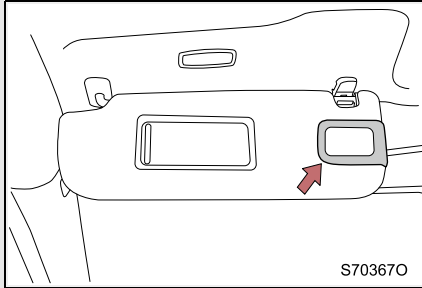
6-4. Other Interior Equipment
Sun visor



- 1** Forward position
Flip the sun visor down.
- 2** Side position
Flip down, unhook, and swing the visor to the side.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment

File holder



The file holder is located on the visor at the driver's side.

It is used to store receipts, cards and other items.

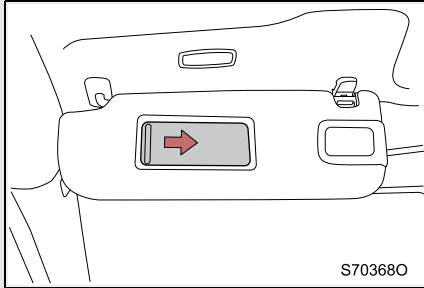


NOTICES

- **To prevent the file holder from being damaged**
Do not put too many items on the file holder.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment

Vanity mirror



Flip down, and slide the cover to open the vanity mirror.

NOTICES

■ **When not in use**

Keep the vanity mirror closed.

■ **To prevent battery depletion**

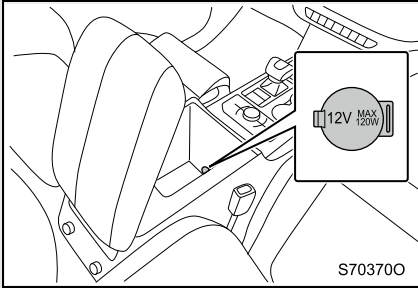
Do not leave the vanity lamps on for extended periods while the vehicle does not start.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment

12V power socket

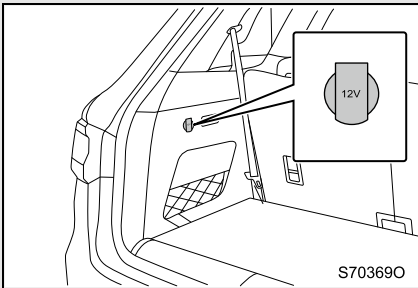
The power socket can be used for 12V accessories that run on less than 10A.

■ Front seat center storage compartment



It is located inside the center storage compartment.

■ Trunk



It is located on the trunk trim panel.

■ The power sockets can be used when

The engine switch is in ACC or IG-ON mode.

NOTICES

■ To prevent damage to the power outlet

Close the power socket lid when the power socket is not in use.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power socket may cause a short circuit.

■ To prevent the fuse from being blown

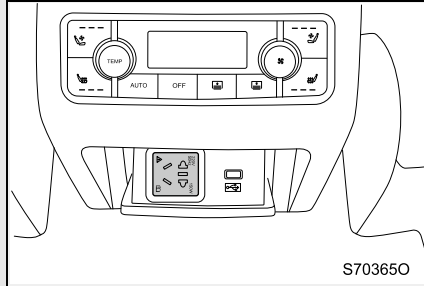
Do not use an accessory that uses more than the rated voltage/current.

■ To prevent the battery depletion

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the vehicle does not start.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment 24V power socket

A 220V power outlet is provided in the rear of the center console.



A 220V power supply is available.
Press 220V power socket and the
upper part of USB port cap to open it.

■ The 220V power sockets can be used when

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

■ Indicator lamp

When it is operated normally, the indicator (green) will be always ON; when there is a fault such as input overvoltage, 220V input overload, short circuit, leakage, over temperature protection, the indicator (red) will flash.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ When 220V power socket is operated, it is under the high voltage status.

- Do not spill any liquid on the power outlet.
- Do not connect the adapter or the attached wire to 220V power socket; otherwise, the built-in child anti-electric shock protection function will be disabled and the socket will be charged continuously.
- Note: Do not insert any conductive object such as knitting needle into the contacts of 220V power outlet.

⚠ NOTICES

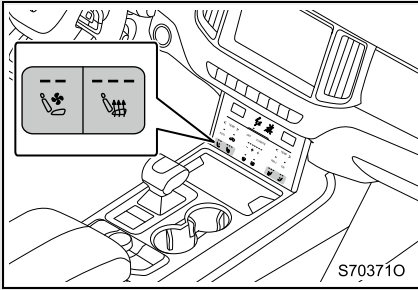
- Connect the electrical devices: Insert the plug into the limit position to unlock the built-in child anti-electric shock protection. The power outlet can be used only when the child anti-electric shock protection is unlocked.
- Must strictly follow the instructions provided by the device manufacturer!
- The power consumption of the electrical devices should not exceed the maximum rated output power of the socket (150W); otherwise, the vehicle electrical system may be damaged.
- Do not insert any electrical device such as power adapter or plug directly into the power outlet.
- Only connect the electrical device that the voltage can be matched with the socket voltage to the power socket.
- If the temperature exceeds a certain value, the output from 220V power outlet will be automatically powered off. When the power consumption or the ambient temperature is too high, the overheat protection function will be activated to cut off 220V output. When the temperature drops to the specified value, 220V power socket will be automatically restored to support the electrical device. When the inverter is overheated, the power supply for the electrical device will be cut off.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment

Rear central armrest

Temperatures of the seats can be adjusted individually.

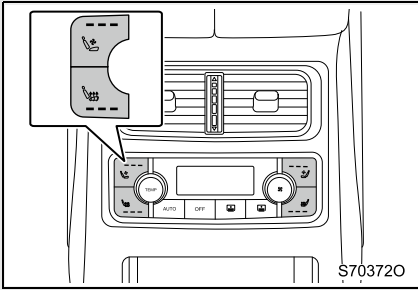
■ Front seat temperature adjusting



By pressing the seat heating and ventilation button, select appropriate heating and ventilation levels.

They can be adjusted among 1-3 levels; and ventilation can realize adjustment between 1-2 levels.

■ Rear seat temperature adjusting



By pressing the seat heating and ventilation button, select appropriate heating and ventilation levels.

They can be adjusted among 1-3 levels.

■ Operating conditions

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode.

 **CAUTIONS**

- **When using the seat heating function, following matters need to be followed**
 - When the persons below are sitting on seats with an operating heater, extra attention shall be paid to prevent burns:
 - Babies, children, seniors, patients and the disabled
 - Persons with sensitive skin
 - Persons who are fatigued
 - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.) that induce sleep
 - Do not cover the seat with anything (blanket, seat cushion, etc.) when using the seat heater or ventilator. Otherwise, it would increase or decrease the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating/overcooling.
 - Do not use seat heater/ventilator more than necessary. Doing so may cause overcooling, overheating or minor burns.

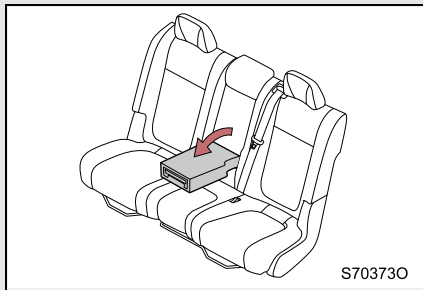
 **NOTICES**

- **To prevent damage to the seat heaters/ventilators**

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on seats and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into seats.
- **When cleaning seats**

When cleaning seats, do not use benzene, gasoline or other organic solution. It would damage the heaters and seat fabrics.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment
Seat temperature control



Pull the central armrest downward before using.

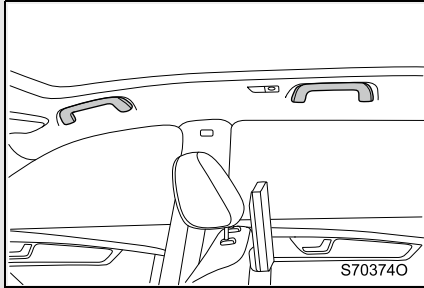


NOTICES

- **To prevent damage to the armrest**
Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment

Roof grab handle



Roof grab handles are located at the front passenger side and the rear outer passengers' sides.

When seating on seats, passengers can support their bodies with the roof grab handles mounted on the roof lining.

CAUTIONS

■ Roof grab handle

When getting on/off the vehicle or getting out of seats, do not use roof grab handles.

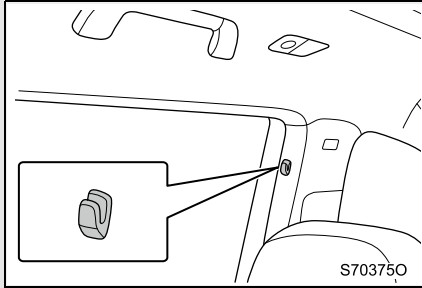
NOTICES

■ To prevent damage to roof grab handles

Do not hang any weight or apply heavy loads onto roof grab handles to prevent damage to them.

6-4. Other Interior Equipment

Coat hook



Hang clothes on coat hooks.

CAUTIONS

■ Items that must not be hung on the hooks

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on coat hooks. If the curtain airbags deploy, these items may fly out and cause death or serious injury.

7-1. Maintenance and Servicing

Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim	310
Cleaning and protecting vehicle interior trim	312

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance notice.....	314
-------------------------	-----

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

Precautions for do-it-yourself maintenance	316
Engine compartment cover	318
Engine compartment.....	319
Battery.....	327
Tire	330
Tire pressure.....	332
Wheel.....	334
A/C filter	335
Replacing the battery key	337
Checking and replacing the fuse	339

Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim

Observing the following operations helps to protect the vehicle exterior trim and keep it in the best condition:

- Flush the body, wheelhouse and vehicle underside with plenty of water from top to bottom to remove dirt and dust.
- Scrub the body with sponge or soft cloth (e.g. suede cloth).
- For traces that are difficult to remove, wash them with car washing agent and rinse them thoroughly with water.
- Wipe the water off completely.
- When the waterproof coating is aged, the vehicle should be waxed.

Do not wax the body until the vehicle surface has no water drops and is cooled down.

■ **Automatic vehicle washing**

- Fold the exterior mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start flushing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are unfolded before driving.
- Brushes used for vehicle washing in the automatic washing station may scratch the surface of the vehicle and damage the paint.

■ **High pressure vehicle washing**

- Do not let the nozzle for vehicle washing too close to the windows.
- Before washing the vehicle, check and confirm if the vehicle's fuel filler cap has been properly closed.

■ **Aluminium wheels**

- Use neutral detergents to remove the dirt immediately if any. Do not use hard brushes or detergents containing abrasives. Do not use highly corrosive or strong chemical detergents.
- Do not use detergents to clean the wheels when they are very hot (e.g. after long distance driving in hot weather).
- Flush the wheels immediately after washing them with detergent.

■ **Bumper**

Do not use detergents containing abrasives.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **When cleaning the vehicle**

Do not flush the inside of the engine compartment with water. Failure to do so may result in a short circuit of electrical components, which may lead to a fire.

■ **When cleaning the vehicle**

The exhaust gases can make the exhaust pipes very hot.

When cleaning the vehicle, do not touch the exhaust pipes before they cool down sufficiently, otherwise it may scald.

 **NOTICES****■ Preventing body and body paint aging, and corrosion of body and parts (aluminum wheels, etc.)**

- The vehicle shall be cleaned immediately after the following circumstances occur:
 - After driving along the seaside.
 - After driving on the saline-alkali roads.
 - If the paint surface is attached with coal tar or resin.
 - If there are dead insects, insect dung or bird dung on the paint surface.
 - After the vehicle is driven in an area polluted by soot, lampblack, mineral dust, iron powder or chemical substances.
 - When the vehicle is heavily dusty or muddy.
 - When liquids such as benzene and petrol splash onto the paint surface.
- If the paint is peeling off or scratched, please repair it immediately.
- In order to prevent wheel corrosion when storing the wheels, remove dirt and choose a place for storage with a lower humidity.

■ When cleaning the flagemblem

Please wipe the flag emblem on the engine hood with clean water or neutral cleaning agent. Do not use alcohol or organic solvents containing such as alcoholic liquids, phenol and anisole to clean it, otherwise cracks will easily occur.

■ When cleaning the lamps

- Be careful when cleaning. Do not use organic detergents or hard brushes for cleaning, otherwise the surface of lamps may be damaged.
- Do not wax the surface of the lamps because wax may damage the lampshades.

Cleaning and protecting vehicle interior trim

Observing the following operations helps to protect the vehicle interior trim and keep it in the best condition:

■ **Protecting the vehicle interior**

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt and dust. Wet the cloth with warm water and wipe off the dirty.

■ **Cleaning the leather parts**

- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt and dust.
- Wet the soft cloth with diluted detergents and wipe off the residual dirt and dust.
- Please use a neutral detergent solution for wool with a diluted concentration of about 5 %.
- Wring out the wet cloth and wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- Wipe the residual water on the surface with a dry soft cloth, and then let the leather dry in a cool and ventilated place.

■ **Cleaning the artificial leather parts**

- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove floating dust.
- Apply a neutral soap to artificial leather.
- Allow the soap solution to soak the leather for a few minutes, then wipe off dirt and soap with a clean wet cloth.

■ **Cleaning the wood parts**

- If there is dust accumulation on the surface of wood trims, it can be gently cleaned and wiped with cotton gauze.
- If the surface of the wooden trims is stained with dirt, it can be lightly wiped with cotton gauze dipped with a little neutral soap solution.

■ **Maintenance of the leather parts**

It is recommended that you clean the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the interior.

■ **Maintenance of the wood parts**

It is recommended that you carry out maintenance on the surface of wood trims at any time according to the surface conditions.

■ **Cleaning carpet**

Use a suitable commercially available foam cleaner to clean the carpet. Apply foams onto a sponge or a brush. Scrub in overlapping circles. Do not add water. Keep the carpet as dry as possible to get the best results.

■ **Seat belt**

Dip cloth or sponge in neutral detergents and lukewarm water for cleaning. And regularly check whether the safety belts are excessively worn, worn or scratched.

 **CAUTIONS****■ Waterproofness inside the vehicle**

- Do not spill the liquid in the vehicle, otherwise it may cause electrical components to malfunction or a fire.
- Do not damp airbag components or wires inside the vehicle.
Electrical failure may result in accidental deployment or malfunction of the airbag, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

■ Clean interior trims (especially the instrument panel)

Do not use polishing wax or polishing detergents. The instrument panel may be reflected onto the windshield, obstructing the driver's vision and causing accidents, which result in serious injuries or even death.

 **NOTICES****■ Detergents**

- Do not use the following types of cleaning agents, otherwise it may discolor the interior of the vehicle or cause stains and grains or damage to the paint surface:
 - Organic solutions containing such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, coloring agents and bleaching agents.
- Do not use polishing wax or cleaning agents, otherwise it may damage the paint surfaces of the instrument panel or other interior parts.

■ Preventing leather surface damage

To prevent leather surface damage and ageing, please observe the following precautions:

- Wipe off the dirt on the leather surface in time.
- The vehicle should not be directly exposed to the sunlight for a long time. Please park it in a shady and cool place, especially in summer.
- Do not place polyethylene, plastic products or wax items on leather trims, because these items may stick to the leather surface when the interior temperature increases greatly.
- If excessive moisture remains on the seat surface, leather will harden and shrink.

■ Floor waterproofness

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

If the electrical components under the vehicle floor come into contact with water, the electrical system may be damaged and the vehicle body may rust.

■ Cleaning the interior side of the rear windshield

- Do not use glass cleaners to clean the rear windshield, otherwise the heating wires of the defroster of the rear windshield may be damaged. Wet the cloth with warm water and wipe gently in the direction parallel to the heating wire.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heating wires.

Maintenance instructions

In order to ensure the safety and economy of driving, daily maintenance and periodic maintenance are very important.

FAW recommends that you take the following maintenance measures:

■ Periodic maintenance

- Please carry out regular maintenance according to the maintenance schedule.

The maintenance interval can be determined according to the mileage or time given in the schedule, whichever comes first.

For maintenance items that have exceeded the last interval, it is also recommended that you carry out maintenance at the same interval.

- Where can I have my vehicle maintained?

It is most ideal to go to an FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for maintenance.

FAW authorized Hongqi Dealers have advanced maintenance tools, equipments and genuine accessories required for maintenance and service of your vehicle, and all after-sales service personnels have received professional management and technical trainings to ensure that the maintenance and repair work is completed quickly and efficiently and that your vehicle always remains a good technical performance.

FAW authorized Hongqi Dealers have invested a large amount of money in special tools and maintenance equipments. This helps to provide you with better service at a lower cost.

FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealers adhere to the concept of efficient, reasonable and value-added service and will do our best to carry out all kinds of vehicle maintenance work.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heating system, braking system and fuel system) shall be inspected by professionals in strict accordance with the maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses may deteriorate over time, causing expansion, wear, or cracking. Therefore, if there are any signs of deterioration or damage of the hoses, please contact an FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for replacement immediately.

■ Self-maintenance instructions

Can I maintain my vehicle by myself?

If you have rich basic knowledge of vehicle construction, inspection and maintenance and have some basic tools, you can carry out daily inspection and maintenance by yourself. A brief description of how to perform self-maintain is given in this section.

It should be reminded that some maintenance work needs special maintenance equipments and professional skills, so it is best to be done by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced professional technician, we still suggest that you go to an FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer for standard maintenance because they will record the maintenance information of your car and help you apply for warranty service.

■ Does your vehicle need repair

Watch out for changes in vehicle performance and sounds, as well as other visual warnings that indicate that the vehicle needs maintenance. Here are some important signs:

- The engine is misfiring, unstable or banging.
- Power reduces obviously.
- The engine has abnormal noises.
- There is liquid leaking at the bottom of the vehicle. (dripping water after air conditioning and from drain holes after exhaust pipe cooling are normal phenomena)
- The exhaust sound is abnormal. (this indicates that there may be a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. In this case, windows must be opened and the exhaust system must be checked immediately)
- Tires become flat, the noise of the tire is too high when turning, and the tire wear is uneven.
- When driving straight on a flat road surface, the vehicle deviates to one side.
- There is abnormal noise related to suspension components.
- Brake fails; the brake pedal feels soft when it is depressed; the pedal almost touches the floor and the vehicle deviates when braking.
- The engine coolant temperature remains high.
- If you find any of the above signs, please contact an FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible because your vehicle may need to be adjusted or repaired.

CAUTIONS

■ If the vehicle is not properly maintained

It may cause serious damage to the vehicle and serious injuries or even death.

■ Precautions for handling batteries

Battery binding posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, which can cause brain damage. Always wash your hands after operation.

■ Old engine oil

According to research, chemicals contained in old engine oil may cause cancer in laboratory animals. Please avoid repeated contact for a long time. To protect your skin, be sure to wash it thoroughly with soap and water.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

Precautions for do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform maintenance by yourself. Please be sure to follow the correct procedures below.

Item	Components and tools
Battery condition (see P.327)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Warm water• Baking soda• Grease• Common wrench (for clamping terminal bolts)
Engine coolant level (see P.323)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Super Long Life Coolant for vehicle• Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (see P.320)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• FAW Genuine engine oil or equivalent• Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding oil)
Brake fluid level (see P.325)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• FAW genuine brake fluid• Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Fuse (see P.339)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fuse with the same rated amperage as the original
Radiator, condenser and intercooler (see P.324)	—
Tire pressure (see P.332)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Tire pressure display• Compressed air source
Washer fluid (see P.326)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Washer fluid with antifreeze (Used in winter)• Funnel

⚠ CAUTIONS

There are a number of mechanical devices in the engine compartment that may suddenly turn, become hot, or start being energized. To avoid serious personal injury, please be aware of the following.

■ When handling components in the engine compartment

- When working under the engine compartment cover, be sure to remove all your jewellery (especially ring, bracelet, watch and necklace) and bow tie, scarf and the similar loose clothing before you approach the engine or the electric fan that may operate at any time if the engine has to be run.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and other components immediately after driving, while they are hot. The engine oil and other fluids are also hot.
- Before opening the engine compartment cover, shut down the engine, apply the electric parking brake, shift the selector lever in P position, turn off the engine switch and carry the key with you and let the engine cool down.
- Keep your hands, clothing, and tools away from the rotating fan and the engine drive belts.
- Do not leave any items in the engine compartment.
- If the inspection or maintenance in the engine compartment finishes, do not leave any tools, cloth, or other items in it. Doing so may cause damage to the engine or catch fire, resulting in accidents.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose open flames to the fuel or the battery.
- Be careful when handling brake fluids, since these fluids may injure your hands or eyes and damage paint surfaces. If you get the brake fluid on your hands or in your eyes, flush your eyes or skin with large quantities of clean water. If you still feel unwell after that, call a physician immediately.

■ When near the electric fan or radiator grille

Make sure the engine switch is in OFF position.

When the engine switch is in the RUN position, the electric fan may run automatically if the air conditioner is turned on or the coolant temperature is high.

■ Safety goggles

Wear safety goggles to prevent objects from flying in your eyes or fluids from splashing in your eyes.

⚠ NOTICES**■ If the air filter has been removed**

If the vehicle is driven after the air filter is removed, the dirt in the air may cause excessive abrasion to the engine. Meanwhile, back fire may also cause the engine compartment to catch fire.

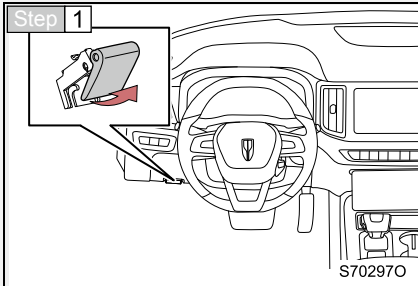
■ If the brake fluid level lowers

When the brake friction plates are worn, the brake fluid level may drop slightly.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

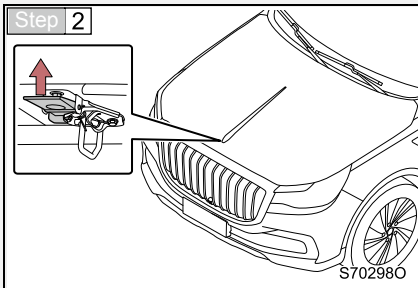
Engine compartment cover

Unlock inside to open the engine compartment cover.



Pull opening handle of the engine compartment cover.

The engine compartment cover will bounce slightly upwards.



Move the opening handle of the engine compartment cover safety hook to the right and lift the engine compartment cover.

CAUTIONS

■ Inspection before driving

Check and make sure that the engine compartment cover is completely closed and locked.

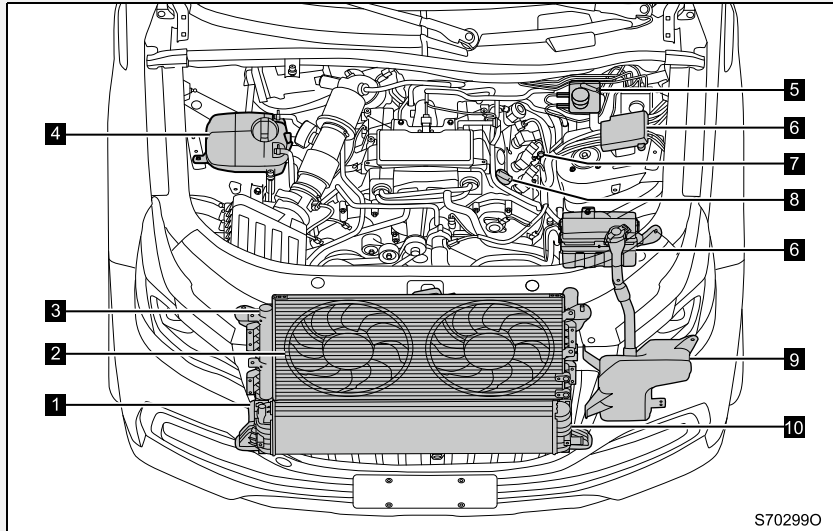
If the engine compartment cover is not properly locked, it may open when the vehicle is moving and cause an accident, resulting in serious personal injury.

NOTICES

■ When closing the engine compartment cover

- Do not apply an excessive force to the engine compartment cover. Doing so may cause damage to the engine compartment cover.
- Make sure that no tools and other objects are left in the engine compartment before closing the engine compartment cover.

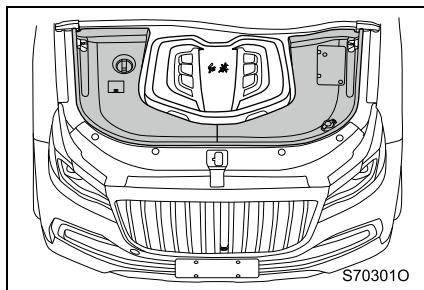
7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance
Engine compartment



- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1 Radiator (see P.324) | 2 Cooling fan |
| 3 Radiator (see P.324) | 4 Coolant reservoir (see P.323) |
| 5 Brake fluid tank (see P.325) | 6 Fuse box (see P.339) |
| 7 Oil dipstick (see P.320) | 8 Oil filler cap (see P.321) |
| 9 Washer fluid (see P.326) | 10 Intercooler (see P.324) |

Engine compartment trim cover

- Remove the engine compartment trim cover



Take off the engine trim from the vehicle.

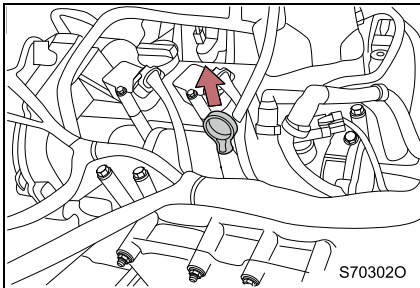
7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

Oil

Check the oil level when the engine reaches operating temperature and the engine switch is turned off.

■ Check the engine oil

Step 1 Place the vehicle on the level ground. Wait 5 minutes or more after shutting off the engine. This will allow the oil to drain down to the bottom of the engine.

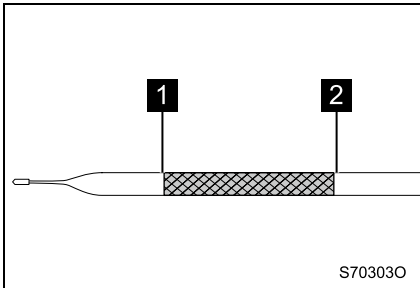


Put a clean rag under the end of the dipstick, then pull out the dipstick.

Step 3 Clean the oil dipstick.

Step 4 Insert the dipstick all the way back in its tube.

Step 5 Put a clean rag under the end of the dipstick, then pull out the dipstick and check the oil level.



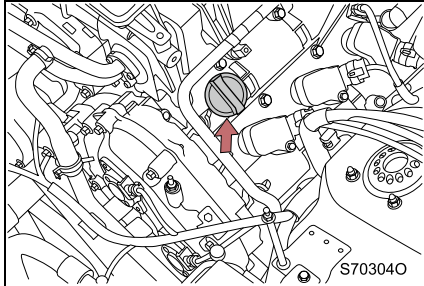
1Low

2Full

The oil level must be between the low and full marks. Actions must be taken timely to deal with the excessive or insufficient oil.

Step 6 Wipe the dipstick with a cloth or paper towel, and then insert it all the way back in its tube.

■ Fill the engine oil

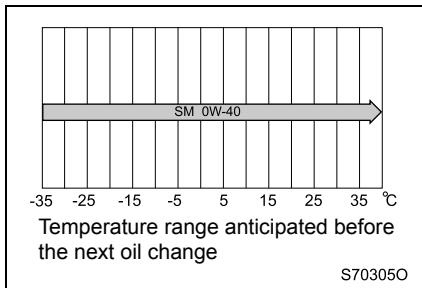


Add oil of the same rating as the existing oil in the engine if the level is at or below the lower mark.

Be sure to determine the oil grade and prepare the required items before adding oil.

- Step 1** Unscrew the oil filler cap counterclockwise and remove it.
- Step 2** Fill the oil slowly and check the oil dipstick.
- Step 3** Install the oil filler cap and turn it clockwise until it is tightened.

■ Recommended oil

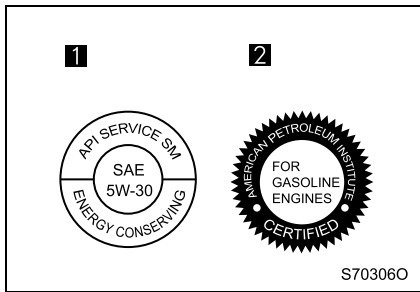


Do not use high-viscosity engine oil at extremely low temperature. Doing so may cause that it is difficult to start the engine. It is recommended to use the recommended engine oil for your vehicle. For more details, please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

■ How to read the oil container label

Some oil containers are marked with one or two API labels for reference when selecting the correct oil.



1 API service label

Top: The API (American Petroleum Institute) Service tells you the service classification of the oil, such as SM.

Middle part: SAE viscosity, such as SAE 5W-30

Bottom: Energy-Conserving tells you that the oil is of fuel-saving property.

2 ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification mark

■ Oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil is consumed during driving. Engine oil consumption may increase if one of the following conditions occurs. Engine oil may need to be added during oil service intervals.

- When a new engine runs, such as the engine in a newly-purchased vehicle or the engine after replacement.
- If inferior oil or oil with poor viscosity is used.
- When the engine runs at high speeds or under heavy load, or when frequent acceleration or deceleration occurs when the vehicle moving.
- When the engine idles for a prolonged time, or when the vehicle frequently travels through traffic congested roads.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for disposal of used oil

- The used oil contains potentially hazardous substances which may cause diseases such as dermatitis and skin cancer. Be sure to avoid contact with the used oil for a prolonged time or frequently. If you get the oil on your skin, flush the skin thoroughly with soap and clean water.
- Be sure to dispose of the used oil and filter in a safe and environmentally-compliant manner. Do not discard the used oil and filter in a trash bin or sewer, or dump it on the ground. For information on oil recovery or disposal, please consult your FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.
- Keep the used oil away from the children.


NOTICES

■ **Prevent severe damage to the engine**

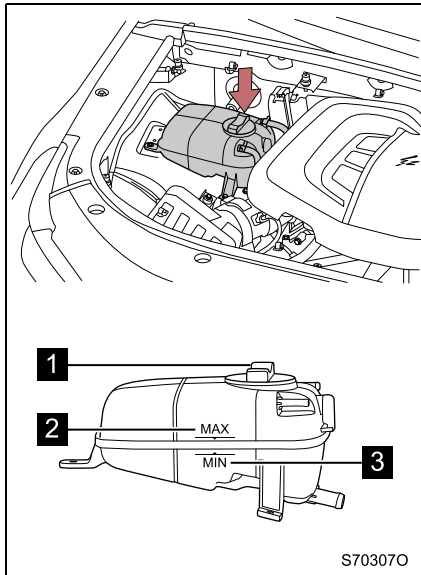
Regularly check the oil level.

■ **Precautions for replacing the oil**

- Take care not to spill oil on the vehicle parts.
- Do not overfill the tank, the engine could otherwise be damaged.
- Whenever adding oil, check the oil level on the dipstick.
- Make sure that the filler cap is tightened properly.

Coolant

If the level of the engine coolant in the fluid reservoir is between the “MAX” and “MIN” marks, the level is correct.



- 1 Fluid reservoir cover
- 2 “MAX” (maximum marking line)
- 3 “MIN” (Minimum tick mark)

If the level is at or below the “MIN” mark, add coolant to bring it up to the correct mark.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

■ If the level drops shortly after the coolant is replenished

Check the radiator, radiator cap and coolant pipe and other component visually for leakage.

If no leakage is detected, please contact your FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to check the cooling system for leaks.

■ Coolant selection

Use the Super Long Life Coolant for the whole year

For more details about engine coolant, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

CAUTIONS

■ Coolant temperature is too high

- Do not add coolant until the engine cools down. The hot engine can be very dangerous. If the engine has ever run, the engine compartment can become extremely hot and seriously scald you.
- Do not remove the coolant reserve tank cap.
- There may be pressure inside the cooling system. Removing the coolant reserve tank cap can cause the hot coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you or resulting in other injuries.

NOTICES

■ When adding the coolant

Add the coolant specified by China FAW to ensure proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling performance. Please read the instructions on the coolant label.

■ If the coolant accidentally spills out

Be sure to flush the spilled coolant with clean water to prevent damage to the components or the vehicle paint.

Radiator, condenser and intercooler

Check the radiator, condenser and intercooler, and remove any foreign objects in it.

If the radiator, condenser or intercooler is particularly dirty or abnormal, please contact your FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to have your vehicle checked.

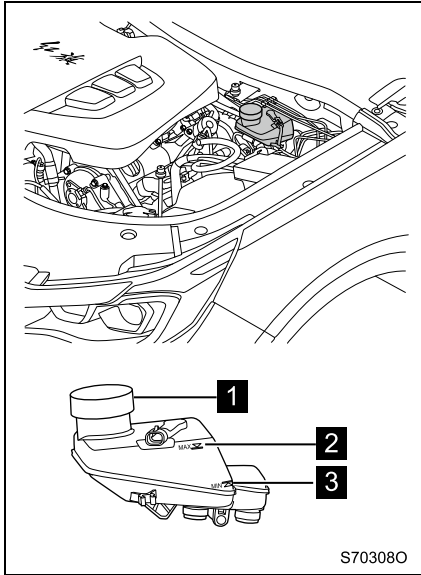
CAUTIONS

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator, condenser or intercooler. Doing so may scald you.

Brake fluid

If the level of the brake fluid in the fluid reservoir is between the “MAX” and “MIN” marks, the level is correct.



- 1 Fluid reservoir cover
- 2 “MAX” (maximum marking line)
- 3 “MIN”(Minimum tick mark)

If the level is at or below the “MIN” mark, add the brake fluid to bring it up to the “MAX” mark.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ **Precautions about brake fluid adding**

- It is very dangerous when the brake fluid is spilled. If brake fluid gets into your eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention as soon as possible.
- Do not spill the brake fluid onto your body or the electrical components in the cabin; otherwise it may cause personal injury or a fire.

■ **Brake fluid level is too low**

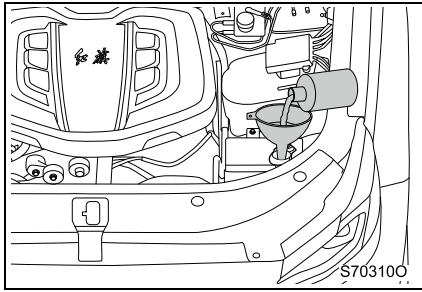
- It is very dangerous that the brake fluid level is below “MIN” mark. If the liquid level is below “MIN” mark, must check the brake system for leakage and the friction plates for wear.
- If the brake fluid level is below “MIN” line, must add the brake fluid to the range between “MIN” and “MAX” marks. Thoroughly clean the area around the reservoir cap before adding brake fluid.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

NOTICES

- The brake fluid may damage the surfaces especially. If the paint is accidentally splashed on you, wipe it off immediately.
- If a non-designated brake fluid is used, it may damage the brake system. It can also cause the system damages to mix different brake fluids.
- For adding or replacing a new brake fluid, please contact China FAW authorized Redflag dealer.

Washer fluid



If any washer fails to run or the alarm message appears on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument, this indicates the washer fluid tank may become empty. Add washer fluid in time.

CAUTIONS

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running. Otherwise, if the washer fluid is splashed on the engine, a fire may be caused by the alcohol in the washer fluid.

NOTICES

■ Do not use any liquid other than the washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of the washer fluid. Doing so may cause sagging of the painted surface on the vehicle.

■ Dilute the washer fluid

If necessary, dilute the washer fluid with water.

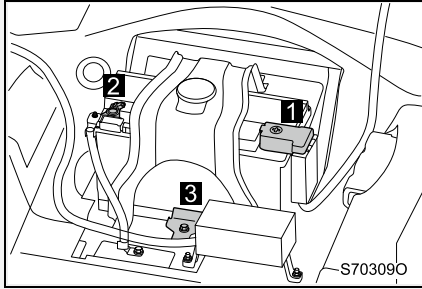
Please refer to the freezing temperature on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

Battery

The vehicle battery is located under the trunk blanket.

- Check the battery exterior



Ensure that the battery terminals are not corroded, the connections are not loosened, the external parts are free of cracks, and the fixing clips are not loosened.

- 1 Positive terminal
- 2 Negative terminal
- 3 Fixing clamp

■ When installing

- When connecting the battery, prevent the terminal cable from being reversely connected. Otherwise, the electrical equipment in the vehicle may be damaged.
- Prevent the positive and negative terminals from being contacted during the storage, handling and installation of the battery. For example, the metal wrench for connecting the cables can easily touch the positive and negative terminals at the same time, and this may cause short-circuit of the battery.
- Since there is a vent hole on the electrolyte plug, to prevent leakage, do not place the battery sideways or upside down during storage, handling or installation.
- When replacing the battery, be sure to replace the battery with the same model as the original.
- When replacing the battery, if the terminal clamp becomes oxidized or dirty, be sure to remove the oxidized layer or dirt with sandpaper or the similar, and then apply Vaseline to the clamp and battery terminal before connecting.
- When installing, connect the positive terminal before the negative terminal. When disassembling, remove the negative terminal before the positive terminal to avoid the chance of short circuit.

■ Before charging

Pay attention to the following matters before charging:

- If the in-vehicle battery is to be charged, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the grounding wire.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is turned off when connecting/disconnecting the charger cable to/from the battery.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

■ When in use

- Prevent the vent hole on the electrolyte plug from clogging. Take care to clean the vent hole.
- The battery performance may be affected if one of the following conditions occurs:
 - The vehicle is used often for a short time and started frequently.
 - The vehicle often travels on traffic congested roads.
 - There are too many electrical consumers for the vehicle.
 - The vehicle has not been used for a long time.
 - The lamps stay on after parking.
 - The doors are not closed fully when parking.
 - With the engine shut down, electrical consumers such as A/C, audio system and lamps keep operating for a long time.
- If the vehicle has been stored for over 30 days, to maintain the battery's normal state of charge, do the following:
 - Disconnect the negative grounding wire to prevent discharge of the battery due to additional current leakage.
 - Charge the battery once every 2045 days.
 - Before the normal use of the vehicle, connect the vehicle to the battery and let it sit for over 4 hours to ensure that the idle start/stop function is used normally.
- When the battery power is too low, in order to ensure the starting performance of the vehicle, some of the comfort functions will be limited by the system; at this time, it will not be operated based on the operation status set by the user. When the battery power is restored to the safe range, the above comfort type functions will be automatically restored to the user's set operating state to function.

 **CAUTIONS****■ Chemicals in the battery**

The battery has toxic corrosive sulphuric acid and may lead to combustible and explosive hydrogen. To reduce the chance of serious personal injury, observe the following requirements when handling the battery or working near it:

- Do not touch the battery terminals with any tool to avoid sparks.
- Do not smoke or use any open fire near the battery.
- Never let electrolytes get into eyes, skin or clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolytes.
- Wear safety goggles when you work on the battery.
- Keep the battery away from children.

■ Safe place for charging battery

Charge the battery in an open place. Do not charge the battery in a poorly ventilated garage or in an enclosed room.

■ Emergency measures for handling electrolyte

- If you get electrolyte accidentally into your eyes
Flush your eyes with clean water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. Immediately call a physician. If possible, continue cleaning your eyes with a water-soaked sponge or cloth on the way to a hospital.
 - If you get electrolyte on the skin
 Flush the skin thoroughly with large quantities of water. If you feel burning and painful, immediately call a physician.
 - If you get electrolyte on the clothes
 It may infiltrate the clothing and stick to the skin. Remove contaminated clothing immediately and take the above measures if necessary.
 - If you swallow electrolyte accidentally
 Drink large quantities of water or milk and then take magnesium oxide milk, chopped raw eggs or vegetable oil, and immediately call a physician.
- Do not disconnect the negative (-) terminal on the body side**
- The disconnected negative (-) terminal may touch the positive (+) terminal, causing a short circuit and serious personal injury or even death.

 **NOTICES****■ Precautions during charging the battery**

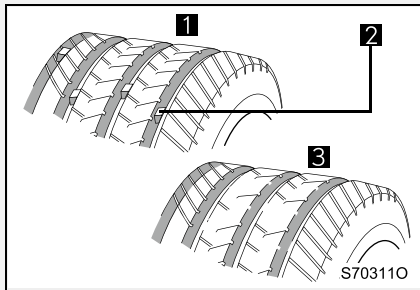
Do not charge the battery when the engine is running. Always switch off all accessories.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

Tire

According to the wear condition of the tire tread, replace the tire or rotate the tires.

■ Check the tires



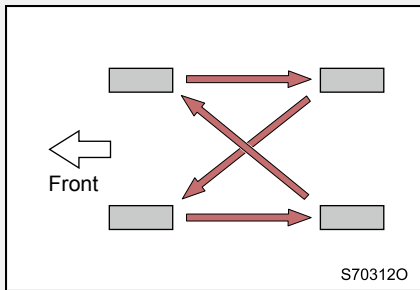
1 New tread

2 Tread wear indicators

3 Worn tread

If it is worn to the tread wear indicators, replace the tire. (The picture is only for reference)

■ Tire rotation



Tires should be rotated in the order shown in the figure.

To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, you should have the tires rotated every 8,000 ~ 10,000km.

Tip:

1. The spare tire is a non-full-sized spare tire, which cannot be used for tire rotation but temporary use.
2. The spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure monitoring sensor.
3. If tire rotation finishes, configure the tire pressure monitoring system. Contact your FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer if necessary.

■ Protective measures for wheel malfunction

- When passing through the curb or similar barriers, the vehicle should drive slowly in the direction vertical to the barrier as far as possible.
- Be sure to prevent the tires from touching grease, oil and/or fuel.
- Regularly check the tires for damage (such as cuts, cracks bulges or other damage), and carefully remove foreign materials embedded in tire treads.

■ Tire storage instructions

- Make mark on the tire before disassembly, mark the tire rotation direction, and reset it according to the mark for installation, so as to maintain wheel rotation direction and dynamic balancing state unchanged.
- The removed wheel or tire should be placed at the cool and dry place, dark without sunlight at best.

■ Concealed damage

- It is difficult to detect damage to tires and rims. If abnormal vibration or pulling to one side is detected when the vehicle moving, it indicates there is a trouble in a wheel. In this case, go to your FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to have your wheel checked as soon as possible.

■ When to replace the tire

Tires should be replaced under any of the following conditions :

- When the tires have cuts, deep cracks or bulging.
- When the tires leak air frequently or when tire damage cannot be repaired.

■ Tire life

Avoid using tires with age over 6 years as possible as you can. If necessary, drive prudently at low speed.

■ Driving on snowy roads

If the snow tire tread wears 4mm or more, the anti-slip performance of snow tires will be significantly reduced.

CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for checking or replacing tires

To avoid damage to the components of the drive train and affecting the handling performance of the vehicle, which may cause accidents and serious personal injuries, follow the following precautions:

- Never combine tires from different manufacturers, or combine tires of the same manufacturer with different models, tread patterns or tread wear profiles at the same time.
- Be sure to use the tires recommended by China FAW only.
- Never use tires with different radial lines, bias-belts or bias-ply.
- Do not mix and match summer, seasonal and winter tires on your vehicle.
- Never use tires used on other vehicles before.

NOTICES

■ Driving on rugged roads

Exercise extreme caution when you need to drive on soft or pitted roads.

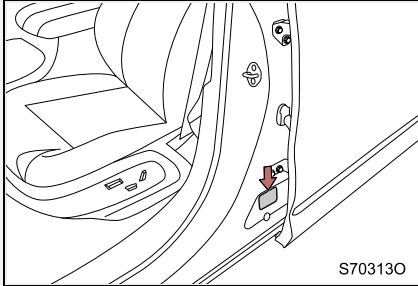
Such roads can cause the tires to bulge due to impact, eventually causing damage to the tires.

■ If the tire pressure becomes lower during driving

Do not continue driving any longer. Doing so may cause full damage to the tires and/or wheels.

Tire pressure

Be sure to maintain proper pressure in the tires. Check the tire pressure once per month at least.



A tire pressure label is affixed below the B-pillar lock pin on the driver's side.

■ Consequences of incorrect tire pressure

Tire pressure too low:

- Rolling resistance is higher than normal, and fuel consumption is increased.
- Vehicle control and stability will decrease.
- Low tire pressure and high temperatures cause flat tires. When tire pressure is extremely low, tires may separate from the rims, creating a safety hazard.
- Tire wear will be uneven.

Tire pressure too high:

- The overall comfort will be lowered.
- The middle part of the tire will be excessively worn.
- High tire pressure will cause internal cracks and flats upon impact.

■ Guide for checking tire pressure

Check tire pressure timely even if your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system that can promptly alert you of tire pressure conditions.

Follow the following precautions for checking tire pressure:

- Check the pressure in the tires when they are cold.
If the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or driven less than 1.5km, an accurate tire pressure reading can be obtained.
- Be sure to use a tire pressure gauge.
The appearance of the tire may sometimes be misleading. In addition, even if it is slightly underinflated, the tire may reduce running smoothness and handling stability.
- Do not deflate or depressurize the tires after driving. Increased tire pressure is normal after driving.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
The weight of the passengers and luggage should be evenly distributed to balance the vehicle.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Proper inflation is the key to protect the tires**

Be sure to maintain proper tire pressure. Failure to do so may cause one of the following conditions:

- Excessive wear
- Unevenly worn
- Poor handling
- Tire bursting due to overheating
- Poor sealing of tire bead
- Deformation of wheel or disengagement of tire from wheel
- Tires are more easily damaged due to poor road conditions

■ **Do not drive the vehicle under incorrect tire pressure**

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle under incorrect tire pressure. Incorrect tire pressure may affect handling stability and cause accidents. Check the pressure in the normal tires, but also check the pressure in the spare tire.

 **NOTICES**

■ **Precautions for checking and adjusting tire pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve cap back.

Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture may enter the valve mouth and the tire may leak air, resulting in an accident.

If the valve cap is lost, install a new one as soon as possible.

Wheel

If the rim is bent, cracked or severely corroded, replace it. Failure to do so may cause the tire to separate from the rim or cause loss of control of the vehicle.

■ Selection of wheel

When replacing a wheel, take care to ensure that the replacement wheel has the same load carrying capacity, diameter, rim width and offset distance as the original wheel.

Contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for alternative wheels.

The following wheels are not recommended by China FAW:

- Wheels of different size or type.
- Old wheel.
- Bent wheels that have been aligned.

■ Precautions for aluminum wheels

- Be sure to use the special wheel nuts and wrench for this aluminum wheel.
- When rotating, repairing or replacing the wheel, check and confirm whether the wheel nuts are tightened.
- When tire chains are used, be sure to prevent the chains from damaging the aluminum rims.
- To balance the wheel, use China-FAW-specified counterweights or the equivalent only.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **When replacing the wheel**

Make sure the wheels are the correct size for your vehicle. Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle.

■ **When installing the wheel nuts**

- Tighten the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel rim slightly.
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
Oil and grease may make the wheel nuts over-tightened, resulting in damage to the bolts or spoke wheels. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident that may lead to serious injury or even death. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts.

■ **Do not use any defective wheel**

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

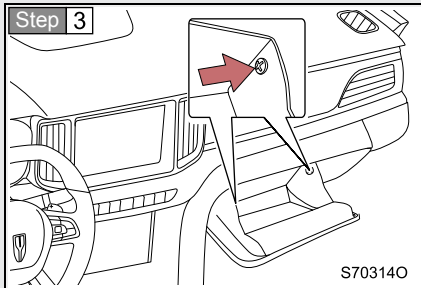
Doing so may cause tire deflation while the vehicle moving, resulting in an accident.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance A/C filter

Replace the A/C filter regularly to maintain air conditioning performance.

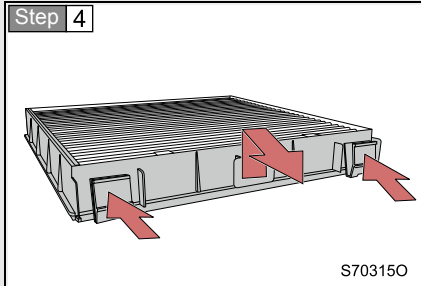
■ Replace the A/C filter

- Step 1** Set the air conditioning system to the inner loop mode.
Do not remove the filter while the system is in the outer loop mode.
- Step 2** Turn the IGNITION switch OFF.

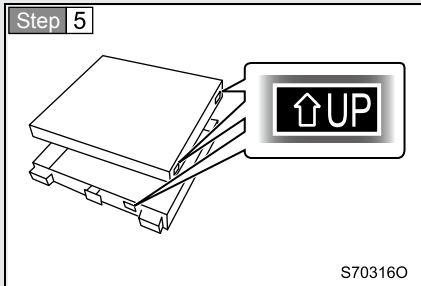


Open the glove box.

Remove the plastic fixing bolts from left and right sides of glove box, disengage the limiter, and turn the glove box down to the position where the filter can be taken out.



Remove the filter housing.



Remove the filter from the filter housing and replace it with a new one with the same model.

↑ UP mark on the filter and the filter housing should be upwards.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

- **Intervals of replacement of A/C filter**

If the vehicle is located or often driven in a dusty area or busy traffic area, the filter should be replaced more often.

- **If the air flow at the vent is significantly weakened**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter, and replace it if necessary.

- **A/C filter**

If the filter needs to be cleaned or replaced, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.



NOTICES

- **When using air conditioning system**

Make sure the filter is installed.

Using an A/C system without filter may cause damage to the system.

- **When removing the filter housing**

Do not replace the air filter while the blower is running. Doing so may cause personal injury.

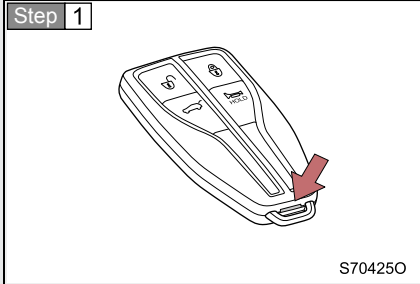
7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance Battery for the smart key

If the battery of the smart key or card key is depleted, replace with a new one.

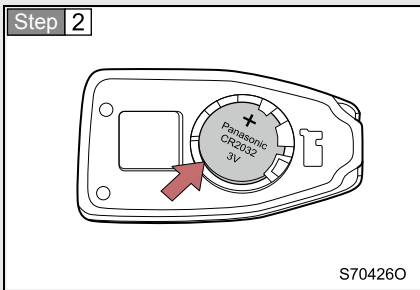
■ The following items are needed:

- Lithium cell

■ Replacing the battery



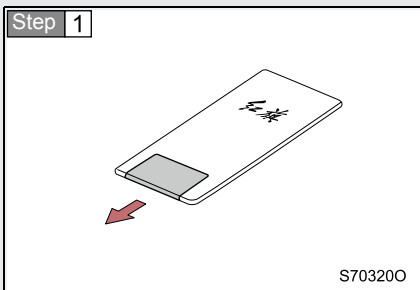
Disengage the key shell.



Remove the old battery from the key panel.

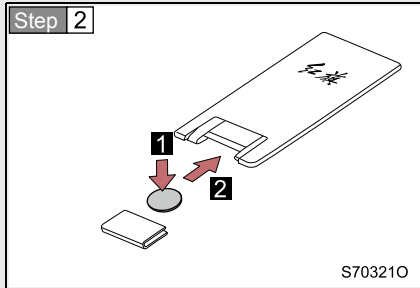
Insert a new cell with its positive pole facing up.

■ Replace the battery of the card key



Pull out the battery compartment with force.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance



- 1** Remove the used cell.
Insert a new cell with its positive pole facing down.
- 2** Install the cell and cell compartment back into the remote control key.

■ If the smart key battery is depleted, the following conditions will occur:

- Wireless remote control fails.
- Effective acting range becomes smaller.
- Passive entry function fails.
- Passive start function fails.

■ Use the lithium cell

- It is recommended to use the same or equivalent product recommended by your FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for replacement.
Battery model for the smart key: CR2032
Battery model for the card key: CR2016
- Dispose of the used cell according to the local regulations.

CAUTIONS

■ Keep the old battery and other parts

Away from the children.

These parts are small. However, if it is swallowed by a child inadvertently, it may cause suffocation.

NOTICES

■ To ensure the remote control key operates properly if the cell is replaced

To avoid accidents, the following precautions shall be observed.

- When operating, both hands shall be dry. Otherwise, the battery may be rust.
- Do not touch or move any other parts inside the remote key.
- Do not bend the battery terminal.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

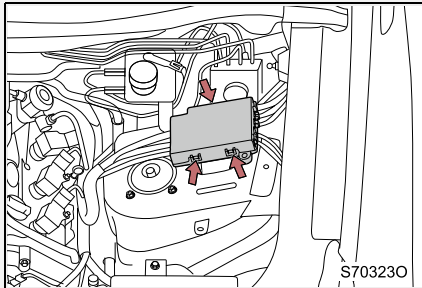
Checking and replacing the fuse

If an electrical component stops functioning, it is possible that a fuse may have blown. Check the fuse and replace it if necessary.

Step 1 Turn the IGNITION switch OFF.

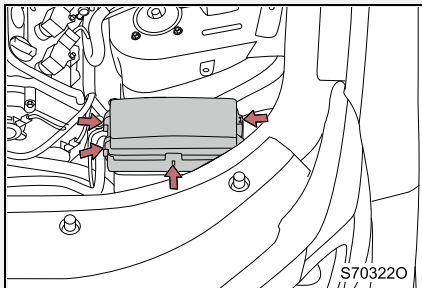
Step 2 The fuses are located in the following positions. Follow the instructions below to check the fuses.

■ Engine compartment (type A)



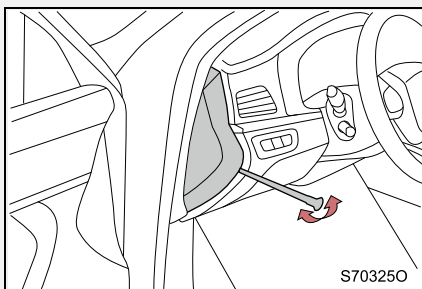
Press the tabs and open the fuse box lid.

■ Engine compartment (type B)



Press the tabs and open the fuse box lid.

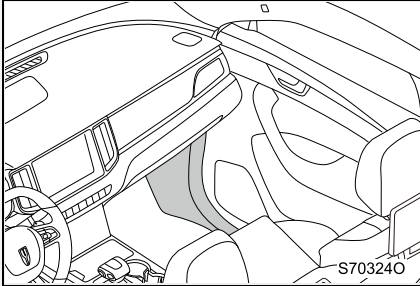
■ Dashboard on the driver side



Remove the left dashboard cover.

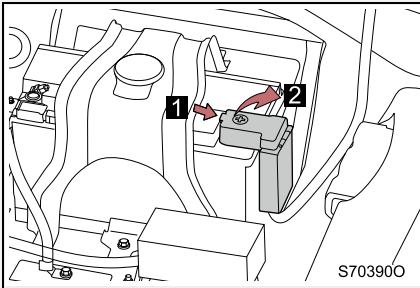
7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

■ Lower right dashboard cover.



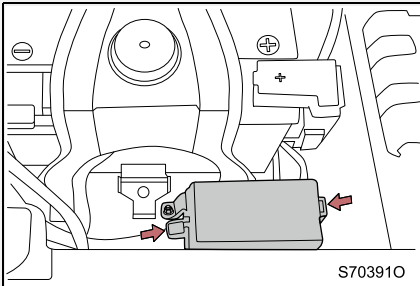
Remove the lower right dashboard cover.

■ Luggage (type A)



Remove the spare tire and open the box lid.

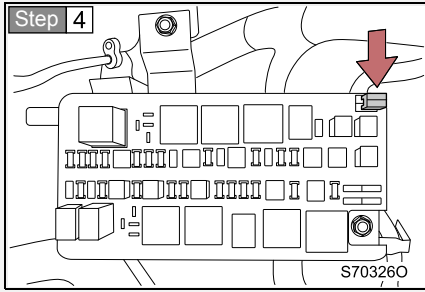
■ Luggage (type B)



Remove the spare tire and the triangle warning tool box and open the box cover.

Step 3 If there is a trouble in the system, contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for specific instructions on which fuses to check.

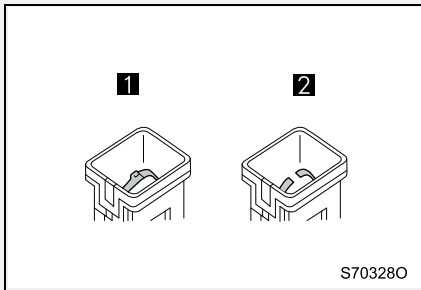
7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance



Remove the fuse with the fuse puller.

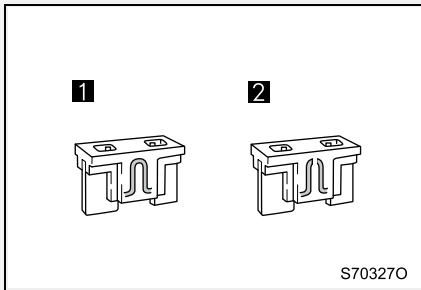
Step 5 Check whether the fuse is blown or not.

► Type A



1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

► Type B



1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Replace the fuse with one of the China-FAW-approved rating amperage.

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

■ Fuse distribution and ampere ratings

For the fuse distribution and ampere ratings, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer for confirmation.

■ After replacing the fuse

- If the electrical function still does not work properly after the fuse is replaced, further inspection may be required. Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.
- If the fuse after replacement is blown again, have FAW authorized Hongqi dealer inspect the vehicle.

■ If the circuit is overloaded

The fuse will be blown, resulting in damage to the entire harness.



CAUTIONS

■ Preventing system failure and vehicle fire

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage / fire to the vehicle or personal injury.

- Do not use fuse higher or lower than the rated amperes.
- Be sure to use the same or equivalent product recommended by your FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.

Do not use a wire instead of fuse. Even temporary replacement is not allowed. Doing so may cause serious damage or even a fire.

- Do not modify the fuse or the fuse box.



NOTICES

■ Before replacing the fuse

Please contact FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer to troubleshoot the electrical overload fault .

8-1. Essential Information

Hazard warning lamps 344

SOS warning..... 345

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in EmergenciesIf the vehicle needs to be towed
..... 346If any abnormality is found on the
vehicle..... 350If a warning lamp turns on or a
warning buzzer sounds 351

In the case of a flat tire..... 357

If the engine cannot be started
..... 365

If the key is lost 366

If the remote key can not function
normally 367

If the battery is low 369

If the vehicle is overheating 372

In case of the vehicle stuck..... 374

If you drive on water-covered
roads 375

In case of a punctured tire 376

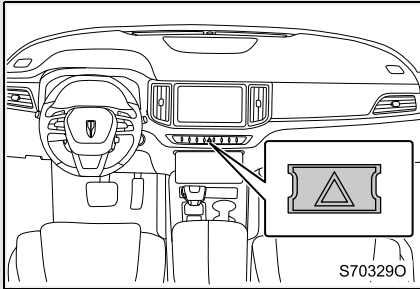
In case of an accident..... 377

Trunk lid emergency open 378

8-1. Essential Information

Hazard warning lamps

Use the emergency flashers and pull over if the vehicle malfunctions; place the warning triangle behind the vehicle while turning on the emergency flashers if the vehicle cannot move due to malfunctions. Wear a reflective vest if necessary.



By pressing the emergency flasher switch, all turn signal lamps will flash; by pressing it again, turn the emergency flashers off.

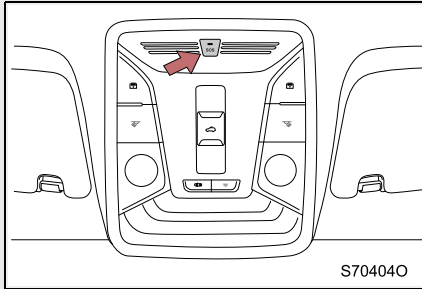
NOTICES

■ **To prevent the battery depletion**

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not operating.

8-1. Essential Information
SOS warning

If you need help in emergency, press and hold SOS alarm switch for 3 seconds to call for emergency rescue, SOS indicator will change from steady light to flashing, and the background service will arrange a proper rescue service after receiving your call for help.



SOS alarm switch is located at the rear of the front indoor light.

 **NOTICES**

- Please use SOS alarm switch as needed.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies If the vehicle needs to be towed

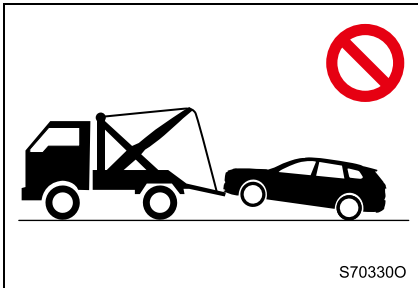
If towing is necessary, FAW recommends having your vehicle towed using a flat bed truck by the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer or a commercial towing service. Use a safety chain system for all towing, and observe all the legal regulations of your country/province/city.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi dealer before towing.

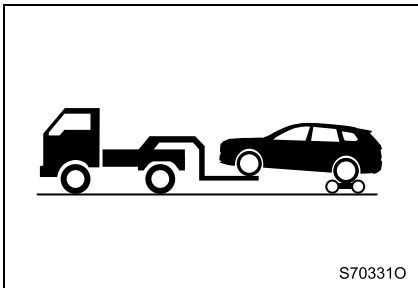
- The engine is operating but the vehicle will not move.
- The transmission makes an abnormal sound or vibration.

Do not use a sling-type truck for towing



Do not use a sling-type truck for towing to prevent damage to the vehicle body.

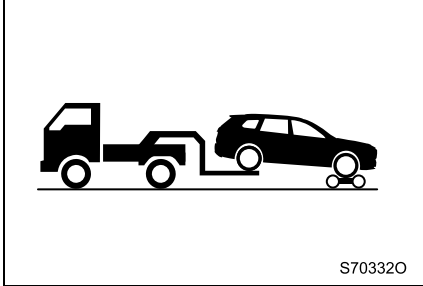
Towing with a wheel-lifting truck from the front



Place the towing vehicle under the rear wheels.

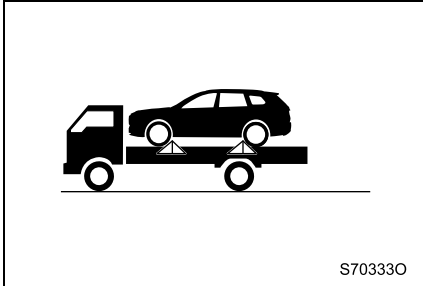
8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Towing with a wheel-lifting truck from the rear



Place the towing vehicle under the front wheels.

Using a flat bed truck



Apply the electronic parking brake, and turn off the engine switch.

Stop blocks should be used under each of the 4 wheels in order to prevent vehicle movement.

As shown in the figure, tie tires on the base plate of the tow truck to secure the vehicle.

Emergency towing

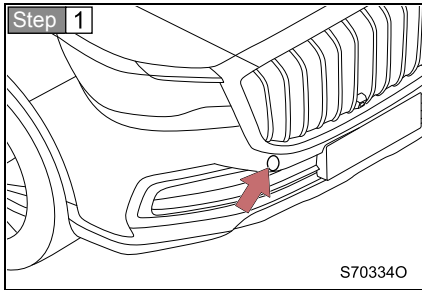
If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by fastening a cable or chain to the emergency towing eyelets and shifting the gearbox to N. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

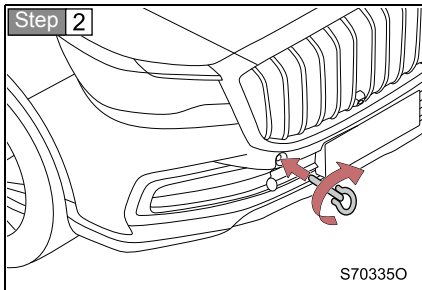
8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Emergency towing procedures

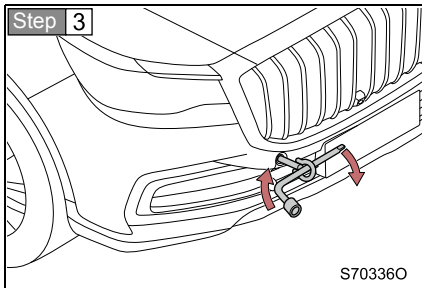
The front towing procedure is used as an example and the rear towing procedure is the same as it.



By pressing the side of the towing eyelet lid, release the towing eyelet lid.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using an auxiliary tool.

Step 4 Firmly secure the towing cable or chain onto the towing eyelet.
Don't damage the body.

Step 5 Go to the vehicle being towed and start its engine.
If the engine can not be started, turn the engine switch to "IG- ON" mode.

Step 6 Release the electronic parking brake, and shift the gearshift to N gear position.

- **While towing**
 - If a trailer cable or chain is used for short-distance towing, must place the shift handle in N position.
 - If the engine does not run, it means the brake and the steering wheel's power assistant system are not working, which makes steering and braking even more difficult.
- **Towing eyelet**
Towing eyelets are stored in the vehicle tool box. (See P.358)

 **CAUTIONS**

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injuries, even death.

- **While towing vehicles**
Make sure to transport vehicles when all four wheels are off the ground unless in an emergency.
If towing a vehicle when its front wheels are on the ground, its power train system and related parts might be damaged.
- **While towing**
 - When towing with a rope, avoid any sudden start, or it would generate excessive tensile force to the towing eyelet or rope.
The towing eyelet or rope might be damaged, and the broken pieces might hit persons and lead to serious injuries.
 - Do not turn the engine switch to the "IG-OFF" mode. The steering wheel might be locked and thus unavailable for any operation.
- **Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**
Make sure the towing eyelets securely installed.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. It may cause an accident as a result.

 **NOTICES**

- **When towing with a wheel-lifting truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle**
When lifting the vehicle, make sure the landing end of the vehicle has enough ground clearance for towing. Otherwise, during towing, the vehicle might be damaged.
- **When towing with a sling-type truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle**
Do not use any sling-type truck for towing no matter from the front or rear section of the vehicle.
- **When towing with a flat bed truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle**
 - Do not drive over the holding blocks, or it would damage the tires.
 - Do not tie the vehicle onto parts (e.g. the suspension) other than tires.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

If any abnormality is found on the vehicle

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.

■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use and from drain hole on the vent pipe is normal.)
- Flat tire or tire wears uneven.
- The coolant temperature of the engine is continuously higher than normal.

■ Audible symptoms

- The exhaust sound is abnormal.
- The tire noise is excessively high around turns.
- Abnormal suspension noise.
- Engine related noise.

■ Operational symptoms








- Engine misfiring, stumbling or running rough.
- Noticeable decrease in engine power.
- Serious braking deviation while braking.
- Serious vehicle direction deviation while driving on a flat road.
- Brake failure, sponginess to brake pedal or pedal nearly in contact with the floor.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies








If a warning lamp turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any warning lamp lamps up or flashes. If the warning lamp lamps up or flashes and goes out subsequently, it does not necessarily mean a system fault. However, if this is going on for a while, have the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer to inspect the vehicle.










List of warning lamps

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p>The drive recorder SD card is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The drive recorder SD card is faulty. <p>→ Replace the driving recorder SD card or contact China FAW authorized Redflag dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Car recorder fault warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indicates that the driving recorder driving recorder is malfunctioning. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>PM2.5 sensor fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indicates a failure in PM2.5. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Engine switch fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indicates a failure in engine (ignition) switch. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Key battery low warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The key battery power is too low. <p>→ Replace the key battery.</p>
	<p>Seat belt reminder lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The driver or occupant seat belt is not fastened properly. <p>→ The driver or the front passenger shall wear their seat belts.</p>
	<p>Bulb fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indicates a failure in exterior lamps. <p>→ Check bulbs and harness connectors of the exterior lighting system for any fault or contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>










8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p>Cleaning fluid level low warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The cleaning fluid level is too low. <p>→ Add the washer fluid or contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Electronic wiper system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in electronic wiper system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Battery charging fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the engine starts, if the warning lamp is still on, it means the charging system is faulty. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Low fuel level warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates insufficient remaining fuel. <p>→ Refuel the vehicle.</p>
	<p>Engine control system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the engine starts, if the warning lamp is still on, it means the engine control system is faulty. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Engine exhaust gas monitoring system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the engine starts, if the warning lamp is still on, it means the exhaust gas monitoring system is faulty. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Abnormal engine oil pressure warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates low engine oil pressure. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Engine immobilizer system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in engine immobilizer system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>





8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p>Coolant high temperature warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Coolant temperature is too high. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Brake system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in brake system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.</p>
	<p>Airbag system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in airbag system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>EPS system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in EPS system. <p>→ Please drive the vehicle with caution and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>EPS system serious fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a serious failure in EPS system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>ABS system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in ABS system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>AUTO HOLD system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in AUTO HOLD system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Transmission system/electronic shifting system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in transmission system/electronic shifting system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Four-wheel system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in four-wheel system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>



8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p>HBB system serious fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in HBB system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Electronic steering column system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in electronic steering column system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>EPB system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in EPB system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Abnormal tire pressure/system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure or abnormal tire pressure in TPMS system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>FCW system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in FCW system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>AEB system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in AEB system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>LDW/LKA system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in LDW/LKA system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>BSD system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in BSD system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>HDC system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in HDC system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p>Passive start system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in passive start system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>IFC advanced driver assistance system camera fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in IHC system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>TSR system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in TSR system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Auto drive lamp/auto wiper function fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The automatic running light/automatic wiper system is faulty. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>ACC system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in ACC system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>SACC system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in SACC system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Seat memory function fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in seat memory function. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Idle start-stop system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in idling start/stop system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Air suspension system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in air suspension system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Air suspension system serious fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a serious failure in air suspension system. <p>→ Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/details/actions
	<p>Headlight height automatic adjustment system fault warning indicator</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The headlamp automatic adjustment system is faulty. <p>→Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>ESC system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in ESC system. <p>→Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Electronic steering column lock fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in electronic steering column lock. <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Driving mode selection system fault warning lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a serious failure in driving mode selection system. <p>→Immediately contact the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer.</p>

Note: when the oil pressure warning lamp and coolant temperature warning lamp lamps up, the warning buzzer rings.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

In the case of a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare.

CAUTIONS

■ **Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire**

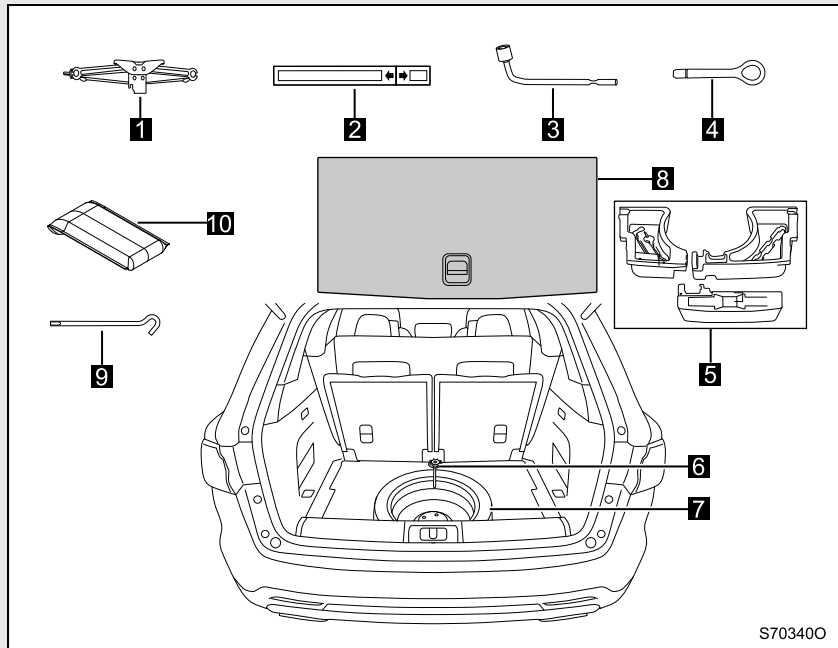
- Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
- Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, causing an accident.

■ **Before jacking up the vehicle**


- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Turn on EPB.
- Move the shift lever to "P" gear.
- Shut down the engine.
- Adjust the air suspension to the lift mode.
- Turn the warning lamp on, and place the warning triangle.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

■ Spare tire and tools provided



- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 Jack | 2 Warning triangle |
| 3 Tire wrench | 4 Towing eyelet |
| 5 Vehicle tool box | 6 Spare tire fasteners |
| 7 Spare tire | 8 Trunk carpet |
| 9 Jack handle | 10 Reflective vest assembly |

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Always replace tires according to the following steps**

If operating improperly, it could be very dangerous. The vehicle might slide from the jack, leading to severe personal injuries.

■ **The vehicle lifted up by the jack**

Do not let any one leave inside the vehicle lifted up by a jack, and it is very dangerous to leave any passenger in it. The passenger might make the vehicle slide, and lead to severe personal injuries.

■ **Using the tire jack**

Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Only use the lifting positions recommended in this manual.

It is very dangerous to use a jack on the position other than the ones recommended in this manual. The vehicle might slide from the jack, leading to severe personal injuries or even death.

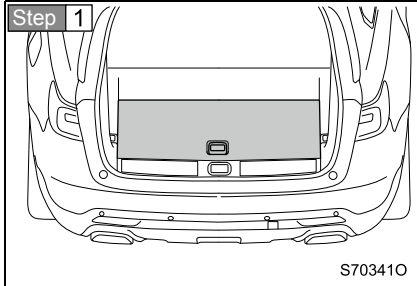
- Do not lift the vehicle on a non-specified position or leave any item on or under the jack. It is very dangerous to lift the vehicle on a non-specified position or leave any item on or under the jack, which would lead to vehicle deformation or vehicle sliding off, resulting in an accident.
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire.
- Do not use the removed tire on other vehicles.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not let any of your body part under the lifted vehicle.

It is dangerous for any of your body part under the lifted vehicle, if the vehicle slides from the jack, it would lead to severe personal injuries or even death.

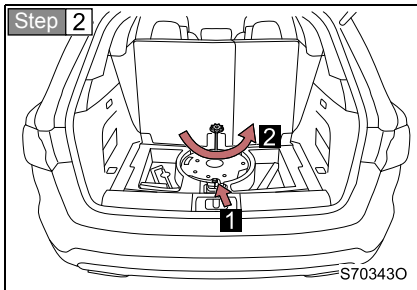
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Taking out the spare tire



Lift the trunk carpet upward and take it out.



- 1 Disconnect the speaker connector.
- 2 Loosen and remove the spare tire fixing parts, and remove the speaker, the tool kit and the spare tire.

In the vehicles with a third row of seats, fold the seat back and pull the cable on the rear right bottom of the seat to flip the seat forward, so as to facilitate the removal of the spare tire.

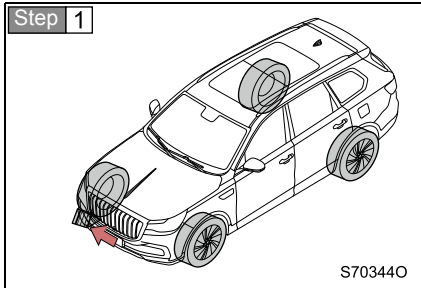
CAUTIONS

■ When accessing the spare tire

Be careful, and do not let your finger or other body part between the spare tire of the vehicle body.

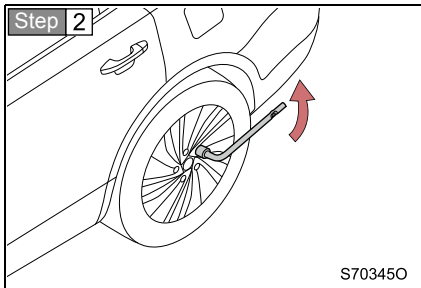
8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Flat tire replacement

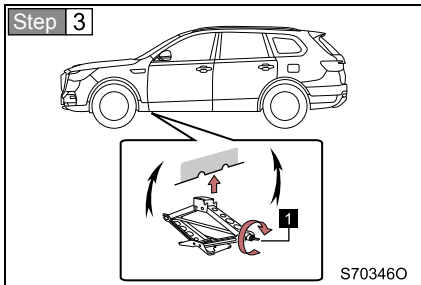


Use holding blocks to wedge the tire.

Flat tire		Tire Block Position
Front wheel	Left	Rear of rear-right tire
	Right	Rear of rear-left tire
Rear wheel	Left	Front of front-right tire
	Right	Front of front-left tire

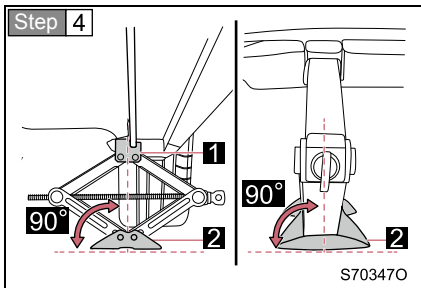


Use the accompanying tire wrench to slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



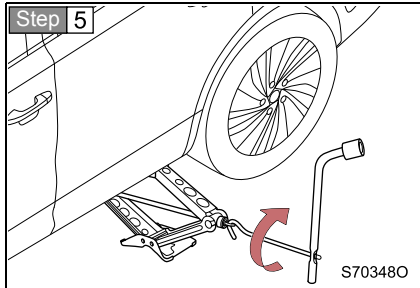
Turn the tire jack portion "1" with your hands until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point marks are under the sill panel. Please support the vehicle according to the jack point positions.

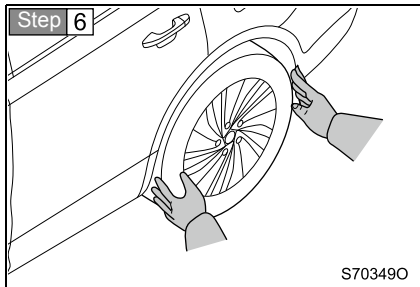


Calibrate the jack positions to make its notch "1" cover the jack point and the base plate "2" flatly attached to ground. At this moment, the base plate "2" must be vertically under the jack point.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies



Insert the jack handle into the hole of the jack. Rotate the jack handle to raise the vehicle and allow the wheels slightly off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the wheel.

When resting the wheel on the ground, place the wheel with the wheel spoke facing upward to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

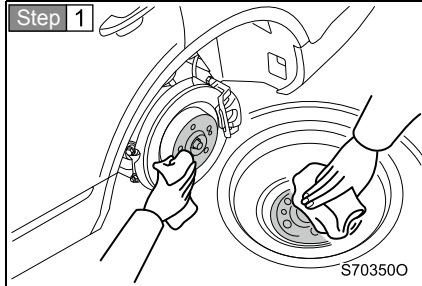
CAUTIONS

■ Replacing a flat tire

- Do not touch the area around the wheels or the brake immediately after driving. After driving, the area around the wheels or the brake will be very hot. When replacing a tire, touching this area with your hands, feet or other body parts could lead to burns.
- If the following notes are not followed, the wheel nuts might be loose and the wheels may come off, thus severe personal injuries even death might occur.
 - After the wheel replacement, tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torques with an torque wrench as soon as possible.
 - Do not install any wheel decorative insert that has been severely damaged, because it might come off from the wheel while driving.
 - When installing the wheels, only use wheel bolts designed for such wheel.
 - If bolts on the wheels have any crack or deformation, have the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer to inspect the vehicle.
- Please correctly and securely tighten the wheel nuts.
It is dangerous when the wheel nuts are improperly tightened or loose. The wheel might wobble or come off. It might make the vehicle out of control and lead to severe accidents.

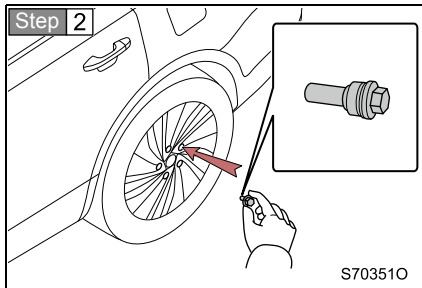
8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Installing the spare tire

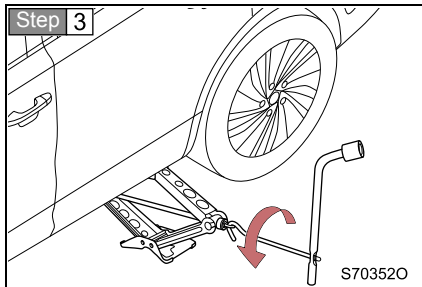


Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

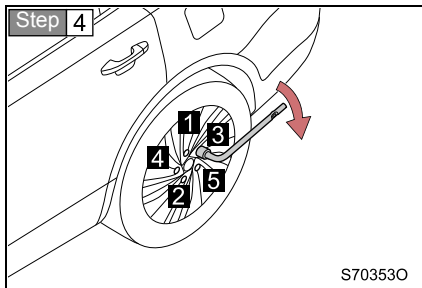
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.



Install the wheel and tighten each wheel bolt by hand with the same force.



Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each wheel nut in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
 $160 \pm 10 \text{ N.m}$

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

CAUTIONS

■ **After using tools and the jack**

Before driving, make sure all tools and the jack are securely fixed on their storage spots to decrease the possibility to cause personal injuries in case of a collision or any emergency braking.

■ **Cleaning before installing wheels**

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

■ **Installation of the spare tire**

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to standard value in the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- Have FAW authorized Hongqi dealer inspect and replace the wheel if the wheel bolt hole is damaged or cracked.

NOTICES

■ **Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, causing an accident.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies If the engine cannot be started

After executing correct starting steps (see P.115), the engine cannot start yet. Please confirm the following reasons.

- The engine will not start even though the starter is normally operating

One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle tank.
- There may be oil spilling off the engine.
- The key may not be able to work properly.
- The engine immobilizer system is faulty.
- The starter rotates slowly, the interior lamps and headlamps are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume

One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery is low.
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.
- The starter is not operating

Electrical failure (e.g. short circuit) may cause engine start failure.

- The starter can not be started, the interior lamps and headlamps do not turn on, or the horn does not sound

One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged.

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

If the key is lost

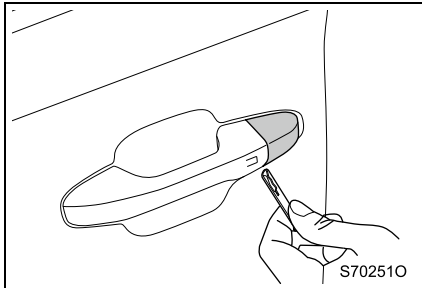
If you lose your keys or the keys are stolen, provide the remaining keys or key number plate to the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible. After rematching the keys, the lost or stolen keys will be invalid. Improper modification or use of unauthorized spare parts may cause system failure.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

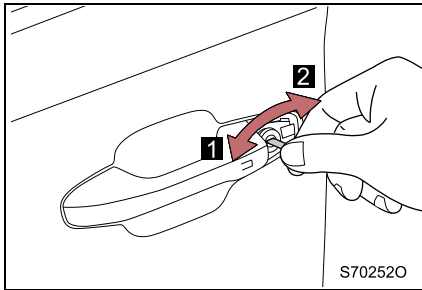
If the remote key can not function normally

If communication between the smart key and vehicle is interrupted (see P.81) or the smart key cannot be used because of depleted battery, the passive entry system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors



Open the door keyhole cover using the mechanical key.



Lock and unlock the vehicle using the mechanical key.

- 1** Lock the door.
- 2** Unlock the door.

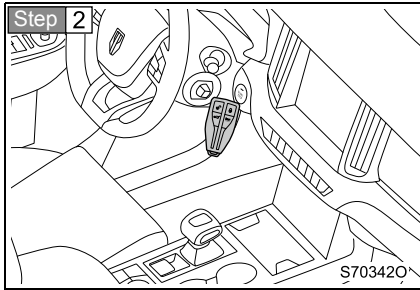
8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

Backup starting mode

Use the backup starting mode if the smart key battery is depleted.

Step 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal. Press the engine "START STOP" switch.

At this time, the multi-function display of combination meter prompts that the key can't be recognized.



Hold the key close to the engine switch

Step 3 Depress the brake pedal and press the engine "START STOP" switch to start the engine.

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer if the engine still can not be started.

■ Replacing the key battery

Replace the smart key battery if it is weak. (See P.337)

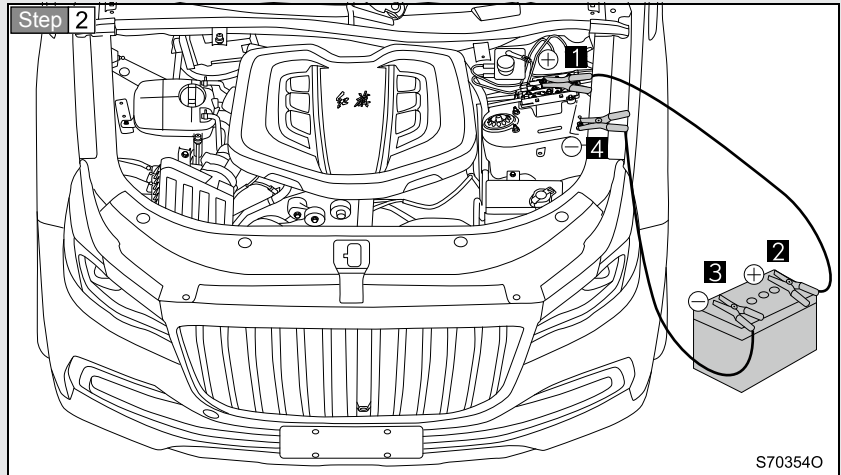
8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies If the battery is low

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer or a qualified repair shop.

If you have a cable and another vehicle with 12V (volt) batteries, you can start your vehicle by the following steps.

Step 1 Open the service port cover of the trim cover on the left side of the engine cabin and remove the fuse box cover.



Connect the jumper cables

- 1** Connect to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.
- 2** Connect to the positive (+) 12V battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 3** Connect to the negative (-) 12V battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 4** Connect to the negative (-) battery terminal on your vehicle.

Step 3 Start the engine of another vehicle. Increase engine speed slightly and maintain it for about 5min, so as to recharge the batteries of your vehicle.

Step 4 Keep the engine of another vehicle running and switch the engine switch of your vehicle to "IG-ON" mode, and then start the engine.

Step 5 Once the vehicle engine is successfully started, remove the spanning cable in exactly the opposite order as it was connected.

Once the vehicle is started, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

■ To prevent battery depletion

- Turn off the headlamps and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off all unnecessary electronics when the vehicle travels at low speeds for a prolonged period of time (such as in traffic jams).

■ When you disassemble the battery or the battery runs out

- The engine may not be started.

■ Battery charging

- Due to self discharge of the battery and loss effects caused by some electrical appliances, electricity stored in the battery will be consumed gradually. If the vehicle leaves unused for a long time, the battery energy will deplete and the engine may not be started. (The battery will be automatically charged while the engine is running.)

■ When replacing batteries

- Use batteries conforming to the genuine standards.



CAUTIONS

■ The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Keep children away from the battery.
- If the battery gets aged, its continued use may cause the foul gas emission of battery, which may harm the occupants' health. Please contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer as soon as possible by then.

 **NOTICES**

■ **When operating the jumper cable**

- When connecting or disconnecting the jumper, do not entangle the cable with the cooling fan or engine belt.
- Only one 12V auxiliary battery can be used. Otherwise, it may damage 12V starter, ignition system, and other electrical components.
- Make sure all jumper cables are connected to the correct terminals, and they will not touch any other terminals except the correct one.
- Do not let the other end of the jumper cable connected to the “+” terminal touch any other parts or metal surfaces (such as a bracket or any non- paint metal) in this area.
- Do not let the “+” clips of the jumper cables to touch the “-” clips.
- Please disassemble the negative (-) battery terminal first. If the disassembled positive (+) battery terminal touches any metal around, it may generate sparks, lead to a fire as well as electric shock, and thus cause severe injuries even death.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

If the vehicle is overheating

Following situations may indicate an overheating vehicle:

- The coolant system has high-temperature warning or you can feel the engine power is dropping.
- Steam rises from under the engine compartment cover.

■ Correction procedures

Step 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the automatic A/C system.

Step 2 Check the source of the steam and shut down the engine.

If you see steam:

Shut down the engine. Carefully lift the engine compartment cover after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine operating and carefully lift the engine compartment cover.

Step 3 Check if the cooling fans are operating.

If the fans are operating:

Wait until the engine coolant temperature decreases (shown on the combination meter) and then stop the engine.


If the fans are not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

Step 4 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Step 5 Add engine coolant if necessary. (See P.323)

Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer if engine coolant is unavailable in an emergency.

 **CAUTIONS**

- **To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the engine compartment cover of your vehicle, observe the following precautions.**
 - If steam is seen coming from under the engine compartment cover, do not open the engine compartment cover until the steam has subsided. The engine may be very hot, causing serious injuries such as burns.
 - Do not approach fan and belt when the engine is operating.
 - Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injuries, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

 **NOTICES**

- **When adding engine coolant**

After the engine is fully cooled, slowly add the coolant to it. When the engine is very hot, fast filling coolant may damage the engine.
- **To prevent damaging the cooling system**

Observe the following precautions:

 - Avoid mixing any foreign matter (such as sand or dust) to the coolant.
 - Do not use any coolant additive.

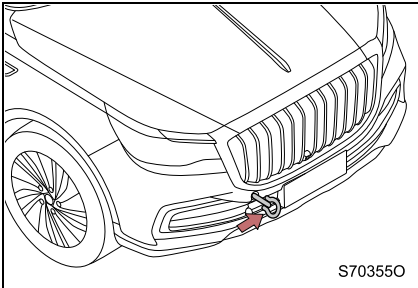
8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

In case of the vehicle stuck

If the wheels spin or the vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, please perform the following procedures.

- Step 1** Shut down the engine. Apply the electronic parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Step 2** Remove the mud, snow or sandy soil around the trapped tire.
- Step 3** Place wooden block, stone or other materials below each tire to increase the road holding force of tire.
- Step 4** Restart the engine.
- Step 5** Shift the gearshift to D or R gear position, and carefully depress on the accelerator pedal to drive away from the obstacle.

■ Emergency towing



- In emergency, tie the emergency towing cable or chain to a second vehicle to tow this vehicle with a towing eyelet if it is stuck or can not move.
- For more details on towing, refer to “If the vehicle needs to be towed” in this chapter. (See P.346)
- Towing other vehicles with this vehicle is not recommended.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If the forward and backward movement method is used to make the car get out of the trap, make sure that the surrounding area is open and smooth, so as to avoid colliding with other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or backward suddenly as it becomes free; please pay extra attention. Please pay extra attention.

■ When operating the shift lever

Do not depress the accelerating pedal by mistake during gear shifting. Otherwise, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and cause serious accidents.

⚠ NOTICES

■ To avoid damage to the transmission and other components

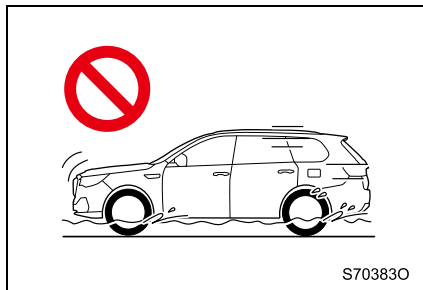
- Do not operate the engine at high speed to prevent wheel spin.
- Towing assistance will be required if the above methods are unsuccessful.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

If you drive on water-covered roads

Have the FAW authorized Hongqi Dealer inspect the vehicle for the following aspects if water enters the vehicle accidentally when driving on water-covered roads:

- Inspect the braking efficiency of the brake.
- Inspect the oil level and oil quality in the engine, transmission and differential (the white and turbid lubricating oil indicates that water is mixed in it and should be replaced).
- Inspect the lubricating situations of drive shaft, all bearings and all connectors.



Driving the vehicle in deep water can cause short circuits from water inflow to electrical parts. Do not try to start the engine after the engine has stalled; otherwise it may cause serious engine damage.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

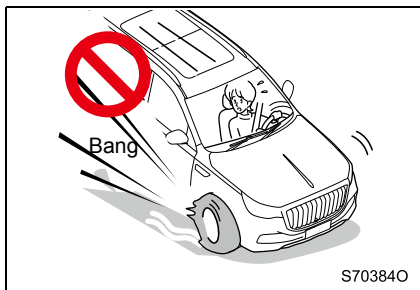
In case of a punctured tire

Stay calm when you have a punctured tire or a broken tire when driving.

While holding onto the steering wheel tightly, depress on the brake pedal slowly to decelerate the vehicle. Emergency braking or quick turns of the steering wheel may make the vehicle go out of control.

The tire may be punctured or broken in the following situations:

- When the steering wheel vibrates.
- When the vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- When the vehicle dips abnormally.

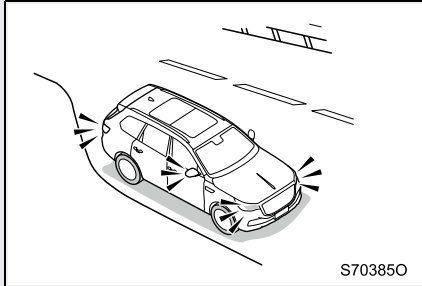


Do not drive with a punctured tire.

Do not continue driving with a punctured tire, otherwise, it might easily cause accidents. In addition, it may damage the tire, wheel rim, suspension and vehicle body. At this moment, contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer immediately.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies In case of an accident

Stay calm and follow the methods below:



- 1**To prevent subsequent accidents. Move the vehicle to a safe area avoiding affecting the traffic, and turn off the engine.



- 2**Adopt emergency treatment measures if someone is injured. First aid should be administered before emergency response arrives. For head injuries, do not move as much as possible; in consideration of prevention of subsequent accidents, it may be necessary to move the wounded to a safe area before help arrives.



- 3**Call the police.

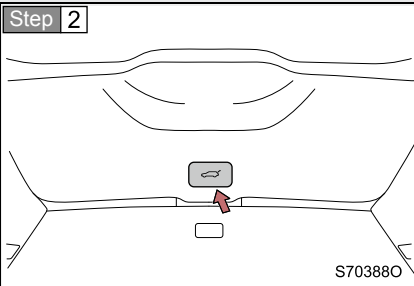
- 4**Communicate with the responsible party and request his/her information (ID, insurance card, phone number).
- 5**Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer and your insurance company.

8-2. Measures to Be Taken in Emergencies

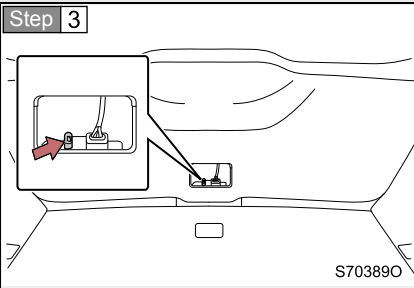
Trunk lid emergency open

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the trunk lid can be opened:

Step 1 You can access the trunk through the folded backrests of the second-row and third-row seats.



Open the emergency release cover on the trunk lid.



Push the unlock pin of the trunk lid lock and open the trunk lid.

NOTICES

When opening or closing the trunk lid in emergency, carefully disassemble the parts to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Be cautious when opening or closing the trunk lid, and make sure no one is within the opening range of the trunk lid.

9.1. Specifications

Maintenance data380

Fuel information392

9.1. Specifications

Maintenance data

Dimensions

- Model No.: CA6500T, CA6500T1

Total Distance		5,035mm
Overall width		1,989mm
Overall height	No-load coil spring including the baggage rack antenna	1,778mm
	No-load coil spring including the baggage rack antenna	1,756mm
Front Overhang		935mm
Rear Overhang		1,092mm
Wheelbase		3,008mm
Wheel Track	Front	
	R19 tire	1,680mm
	R20 tire	1,690mm
	Rear	
	R19 tire	1,680mm
	R20 tire	1,690mm
Approach angle (no load)		21° (Air spring / coil spring)
Departure angle (no load)		22° (Air spring) / 23° (coil spring)

Seating capacity

- Model No.: CA6500T

Seating capacity	5
------------------	---

- Model No.: CA6500T1

Seating capacity	7
------------------	---

9.1. Specifications

Drive mode

Drive mode Timely 4WD

Curb weight

Model No.: CA6500T

Kerb mass		Spring	2,290kg
		Air spring	2,320kg
Maximum permissible total mass		Spring	2,815kg
		Air spring	2,845kg
Full- load axle load	Front	Spring	1,313kg
		Air spring	1,329kg
	Rear	Spring	1,502kg
		Air spring	1,516kg

Model No.: CA6500T1

Kerb mass		Spring	2,325kg
		Air spring	2,355kg
Maximum permissible total mass		Spring	2,870kg
		Air spring	2,900kg
Full- load axle load	Front	Spring	1,313kg
		Air spring	1,5328kg
	Rear	Spring	1,557kg
		Air spring	1,572kg

9

Vehicle Specifications

9.1. Specifications

Emission standards

- Model No.: CA6500T, CA6500T1

Emission standard	China V Ib
-------------------	------------

Total fuel consumption under specified test conditions

Engine model	CA6GV30TD
--------------	-----------

Model No.	5 seats	CA6500T
	7 seats	CA6500T1

Combined fuel consumption (L/100 km)	10.9
--------------------------------------	------

Vehicle Performance

- CA6GV30TD gasoline engine

Maximum net power/speed	240kW/ 5,500 rpm
-------------------------	---------------------

Rated power/engine speed	248kW/ 5,500 rpm
--------------------------	---------------------

Maximum output torque/engine speed	445N•m/ 3,000-5,000 rpm
------------------------------------	----------------------------

Maximum grade ability	≥ 60%
-----------------------	-------

Maximum speed	≥ 230km/h
---------------	-----------

9.1. Specifications

Front wheels alignment (no-load)		
Front-wheel camber angle	Spring no-load	$-6.5' \pm 20'$
	No-load coil spring	$-20' \pm 20'$
Master pin caster angle	Spring no-load	$5^{\circ} 58' \pm 45'$
	No-load coil spring	$6^{\circ} 19' \pm 45'$
Master pin inclination angle	Spring no-load	$5^{\circ} 7' \pm 45'$
	No-load coil spring	$5^{\circ} 16' \pm 45'$
Front wheel toe-in	Spring no-load	$\beta=12.2' \pm 5' \quad 2\beta=24.4' \pm 10'$
	No-load coil spring	$\beta=7.5' \pm 5' \quad 2\beta=15' \pm 10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	Spring no-load	$470.9 \pm 21 \text{ mm}$
	No-load coil spring	$456.1 \pm 10 \text{ mm}$
Rear wheel alignment (no-load)		
Rear-wheel camber angle	Spring no-load	$-1^{\circ} 7' \pm 30'$
	No-load coil spring	$-1^{\circ} 30' \pm 30'$
Rear wheel	Spring no-load	$\beta=9' \pm 5' \quad 2\beta=18' \pm 10'$
	No-load coil spring	$\beta=10' \pm 5' \quad 2\beta=20' \pm 10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	Spring no-load	$468.1 \pm 10 \text{ mm}$
	No-load coil spring	$454.5 \pm 10 \text{ mm}$

9

Vehicle Specifications

9.1. Specifications

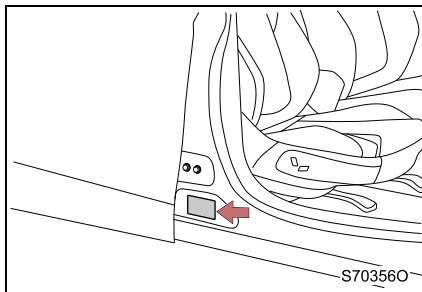
Suspension			
Front suspension	Type		Double-wishbone independent suspension
	Spring type		Coil spring/air spring
	Shock absorber type		Binocular hydraulic gas filled shock absorber/CDC shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Hollow stabilizer bar
Diameter		Φ30 mm	
Rear suspension	Type		Trapezoidal arm independent suspension
	Spring type		Coil spring/air spring
	Shock absorber type		Binocular hydraulic gas filled shock absorber/CDC shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Filled stabilizer bar
Diameter		Φ21.6mm	

New vehicle running-in technical conditions

The new vehicle running-in mileage is 1500km, and the engine speed within in the first 1000km shall not exceed 3/4 of the rated speed; during 1000 km and 1500km, the engine speed can be raised according to the roads till the rated speed is reached.

Vehicle identification

■ Manufacturer's label



As in the figure, the manufacturer's label is located on the right B-pillar.

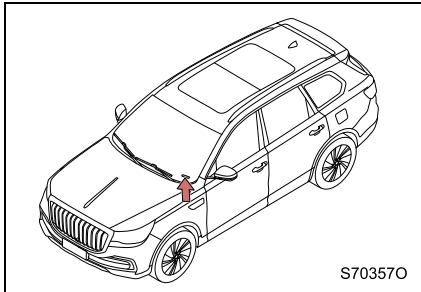
Contents on the manufacturer's label: manufacturer's country, manufacturing plant, vehicle identification number, brand, vehicle model, rated passengers, max. permissible total mass, engine model, max. engine net power, engine displacement and production date.

9.1. Specifications

■ Vehicle identification number

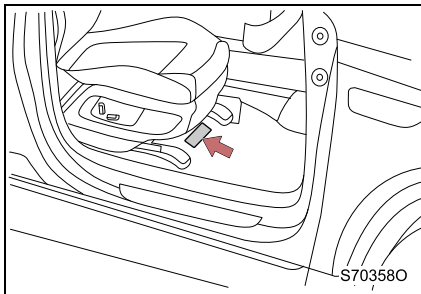
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is a unique code to identify a motor vehicle. This is the main identification code of a vehicle, which is used for vehicle registration.

▶ The upper left of the instrument panel



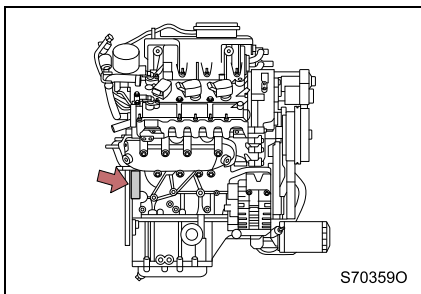
It is stamped under the front windshield to the upper left of the instrument panel.

▶ The bottom of the front passenger seat



It is stamped under the front passenger seat.

■ Engine model and leave-factory number



The numbers are stamped on the engine cylinder body as shown in the illustration.

9.1. Specifications

Engine	
Model	CA6GV30TD
Type	V model, six-cylinder, four-stroke, water-cooling, double overhead camshafts, intake and exhaust VCT, in-cylinder direct injection, and charged gasoline engine
Bore and stroke	82.5×92 mm
Displacement	2.951 L
Fuel	
Fuel type	Gasoline
Octane value	95# or above
Fuel tank capacity (for reference)	75L
Lubrication System	
■ CA6GV30TD gasoline engine	
Oil capacity (drain and refill)	8.5L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil and oil filter	7.7L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil separately	7L
Oil quality grade	SM
Oil viscosity grade	0W-40
The viscosity grade is selected according to the ambient temperature of use	<p>Temperature range anticipated before the next oil change</p> <p>S70305O</p>

9.1. Specifications

Cooling system	
Capacity	12L
Coolant type	Use the super long life coolant for the whole year (G30-91)
Ignition System	
■ CA6GV30TD gasoline engine	
Spark plug type	3707010-39L
Clearance	0.7-0.8 mm
Electrical system	
Battery	12V, 95Ah maintenance-free lead-acid battery
A/C refrigerant	
A/C refrigerant capacity	550±25 g
A/C refrigerant specification	R134a
Transmission	
■ Model No.: CA6500T, CA6500T1	
Transmission fluid type	Automatic transmission
Transmission fluid capacity	10.1 L
Transmission fluid type	AW-1

9.1. Specifications

Four-wheel transfer case

Transfer case oil capacity	1±0.05 L
Transfer case oil specification	MOBIL LT

Front main retarder oil

Main retarder oil capacity	0.395~0.03L
Main retarder oil specification	Castrol SAE75W140

Rear main retarder oil

Main retarder oil capacity	1.26~0.03L
Main retarder oil specification	Castrol SAE75W140

Reasonable use range of the brake friction pair

► Front

Pad thickness	Standard thickness	Aggregate thickness: 17.8 mm	Friction material thickness: 12 mm
	Minimum Thickness	Aggregate thickness: 7.75mm	Friction material thickness: 2mm
Brake disc thickness	Standard thickness	32mm	
	Minimum Thickness	30mm	

9.1. Specifications

► Rear

Pad thickness	Standard thickness	Aggregate thickness: 17.25mm	Friction material thickness: 11.5mm
	Minimum Thickness	Aggregate thickness: 7.75mm	Friction material thickness: 2mm
Brake disc thickness	Standard thickness	24mm	
	Minimum Thickness	22mm	

Braking system

Free stroke of brake pedal	≤ 9mm
Travel of brake pedal	146.6mm
Brake fluid capacity	About 1 L
Type of brake fluid (Conforming to GB 12981-2012)	BASF Hydraulan404, DOT4

Tires and wheels

Tire specifications	255/50R19107W		225/45R20105V	
Wheel size	19*8J		120*8.5J	
Tire pressure kPa (bar)		3 persons	ECO	Full Load
	Front	230 (2.3)	270 (2.7)	240 (2.4)
	Rear	230 (2.3)	270 (2.7)	270 (2.7)
Wheel nut torque	160±107N•m			
Wheel dynamic balance requirements	The residual amount of inside unbalance: ≤ 8g The residual amount of outside unbalance: ≤ 8g			
Spare tire specifications	T145/760R20 105M			
Spare tire pressure kPa (bar)	420 (4.2)			

9.1. Specifications

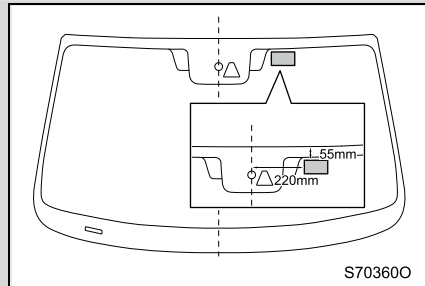
Seat (with a deep cushion)

Front seat	Position at front & rear (from the guide rail rear end position to the front)	120mm
	Backrest angle	25°
Second-row seat	Position at front & rear (from the guide rail rear end position to the front)	90mm
	Backrest angle	25°
Third-row seat	Position at front & rear	Unadjustable
	Backrest angle	25°

The normal service condition of seat backrest: any position within the adjustable range designed for the backrest is the normal service condition.

Microwave window

Recommended microwave exposure
location
(The illustration is taken in the cab)



9.1. Specifications

Bulb				
	Bulb	W	Lamp source type	Lamp color
External lighting and signal device	Front position lamp	36	LED	White
	Low beam	25	LED	White
	High beam	36	LED	White
	Front turn signal lamp	18	LED	Amber
	Front fog lamp	14.1	LED	White
	Side turn signal lamp	1.68	LED	Amber
	Rear position lamp	25	LED	Red
	Brake lamp	14	LED	Red
	Rear fog lamp	6	LED	Red
	Reversing lamp	17	LED	White
	Rear turn signal lamp	15	LED	Amber
	High-level brake lamp	3	LED	Red
	License plate lamp	1	LED	White
	Interior lighting system	Vanity lamp	0.5	LED
Room lamp		20.28	LED	White
Dome map lamp		1.1	LED	White
Auxiliary instrument panel ambient lamp		1.44	LED	Multicolor
Foot lamp		0.24	LED	Yellow
Glove box lamp		0.24	LED	Yellow
Trunk lamp		5	LED	White

9.1. Specifications

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline in your vehicle.

To achieve the best engine performance, you must use unleaded gasoline of 95# or above in your vehicle.

In order to ensure emission control performance and malfunction diagnosability, FAW recommends you use gasoline specified in the local standard of each city.

■ Fuel tank opening specially for motor gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fuelling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on vehicle fuel pumps.

■ If your engine knocks

- Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.
- You may occasionally notice lamp knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.



NOTICES

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use any unsuitable fuel. If you use any unsuitable fuel, the engine might be damaged.
- Unsuitable fuel may lead to the engine or exhaust gas monitoring system malfunction.
- Make sure to clean the fuel system thoroughly and check the engine after adding improper fuels. Contact the FAW authorized Hongqi dealer.

Additional information

10

Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China.....394

10. Additional information

Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China

Navigation, voice recognition, and related functions that need to be connected to the Internet to use the mobile APP and the car APP are temporarily unavailable in other countries and regions except for China, and mainly include the following contents in this manual:

4-5 Using other driving systems

TSR (Traffic Sign Recognition) system* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China

5-2 Settings* (Data network, personal hotspot and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)

5-3 Navigation* (and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)

5-10 Voice recognition* (and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)

5-11 Browser* (and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)

5-12 Mobile phone APP* (and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)

5-13 HONGQI Smart Connect* (and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)

Other Information

List of Abbreviations.....396

List of Abbreviations

List of Abbreviations

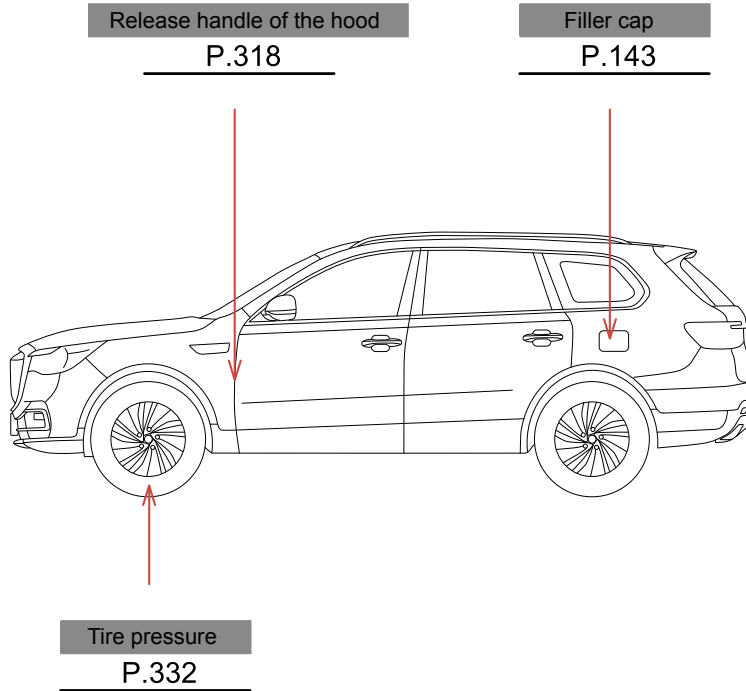
Abbreviations	Meaning
ABP	Automatic Brake Prefill
ABS	Antilock Brake System
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
ADS	Auto Defrost System
AEB	Autonomous Emergency Braking
APA	Auto Parking Assist
AQS	Air Quality System
BSD	Blind Spot Detection
CDC	Continuous Damping Control
CDD-S	Controlled Deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go
CDP	Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake
CO	Carbon Monoxide
DSM	Driver Status Monitoring
EBD	Electronic Brakeforce Distribution
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EMS	Engine Management System
EPB	Electrical Parking Brake
EPS	Electric Power Steering
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
ESS	Emergency Stop Signal
FCW	Forward Collision Warning

List of Abbreviations

GPF	Gasoline Particulate Filter
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist
HBB	Hydraulic Brake Boost
HDC	Hill Descent Control
HHC	Hill Hold Control
IFC	Intelligent Front Camera
IHC	Intelligent High Beam Control
LDW	Lane Departure Warning
LKA	Lane Keeping Assist
MAX	Maximum
MIN	Minimize
MOD	Moving Object Detection
MTP	Media Transfer Protocol
OBD	On-Board Diagnostic
POI	Point Of Interest
SACC	Super Adaptive Cruise Control
TCS	Traction Control System
TPMS	Tire Pressure Management System
TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Networks

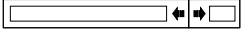
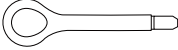
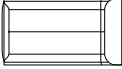


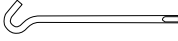
List of Abbreviations
 List of Abbreviations

References For Gas Station



Fuel tank capacity (for reference)	75L
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline (see P.392)
Tire pressure	See P.332
Oil capacity	See P.386
Oil grade	See P.386



List of on-board tools		
Illustration	Name	Quantity
	Warning triangle	1
	Towing eyelet	1
	Reflection vest assembly	1
	Jack	1
	Tire Wrench	1
	Jack handle	1